

点金训练

教师用书

《点金训练》编写组 编

► 英语

选择性必修 第二册

配外研版



四川教育出版社

CONTENTS

目录

Unit 1 Growing up

| | |
|-------|--|
| ○单元概览 | 1 |
| ○探究构建 | Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending 3 |
| | Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points 7 |
| | Section III Using language 12 |
| | Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection 17 |
| ○迁移应用 | Part 1 应用文写作 24 |
| | Part 2 读后续写 25 |
| ○重构拓展 | 27 |

Unit 2 Improving yourself

| | |
|-------|---|
| ○单元概览 | 37 |
| ○探究构建 | Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending 39 |
| | Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points 43 |
| | Section III Using language 48 |
| | Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection 53 |
| ○迁移应用 | Part 1 应用文写作 59 |
| | Part 2 读后续写 60 |
| ○重构拓展 | 62 |

Unit 3 Times change!

| | |
|-------|---|
| ○单元概览 | 72 |
| ○探究构建 | Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending 74 |
| | Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points 78 |
| | Section III Using language 82 |
| | Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection 87 |
| ○迁移应用 | Part 1 应用文写作 94 |
| | Part 2 读后续写 95 |
| ○重构拓展 | 98 |



Unit 4 Breaking boundaries

| | |
|---|-----|
| ○单元概览 | 116 |
| ○探究构建 | |
| Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending | 118 |
| Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points | 122 |
| Section III Using language | 127 |
| Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection | 132 |
| ○迁移应用 | |
| Part 1 应用文写作 | 138 |
| Part 2 读后续写 | 139 |
| ○重构拓展 | 141 |

Unit 5 A delicate world

| | |
|---|-----|
| ○单元概览 | 151 |
| ○探究构建 | |
| Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending | 153 |
| Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points | 157 |
| Section III Using language | 162 |
| Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection | 166 |
| ○迁移应用 | |
| Part 1 应用文写作 | 172 |
| Part 2 读后续写 | 173 |
| ○重构拓展 | 175 |

Unit 6 Survival

| | |
|---|-----|
| ○单元概览 | 185 |
| ○探究构建 | |
| Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending | 187 |
| Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points | 191 |
| Section III Using language | 196 |
| Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection | 202 |
| ○迁移应用 | |
| Part 1 应用文写作 | 208 |
| Part 2 读后续写 | 209 |
| ○重构拓展 | 212 |

单元概览

学习导航

The theme of this unit is humans and self, whose topic is on the understanding, enrichment, and perfection of the self. This unit centres on growth as its primary topic. It encompasses excerpts from the poem “If” to facilitate students’ comprehension of growth and adulthood at various stages, alongside future life planning, reflections on unforgettable moments in their lives, and readings from the novel *The Little Prince*. Through these diverse perspectives, it guides students to grasp the responsibilities and significance associated with growth while addressing their challenges and confusions during this developmental phase. Ultimately, it aims to help students establish a resolute life goal and cultivate a positive attitude towards life.

学习目标

| 核心 素养 | 具体要求 | | |
|----------|--|----|--|
| 语言 能力 | 语言 知识 | 词汇 | 能正确使用与“成长”主题相关的单词和词组。 |
| | | 语法 | 恰当运用将来进行时谈论夏令营的时间安排或对未来的计划。 |
| | | 语篇 | 基于单元内容提供的诗歌、个人访谈、电子邮件、在线留言板、小说节选、书评等多模态语篇,综合运用各种语言技能,读懂与成长相关的语篇内容。 |
| | | 语用 | 听懂并谈论与寄宿生活、成长中的重要时刻相关的对话,讨论并加深对人生中一些关键时刻的认识。 |
| | 语言 技能 | 听 | 1. 听懂会话内容,理解其大意并获取细节信息来完成表格; 2. 运用听力材料中的相关结构表达担忧或者顾虑,并给出鼓励与建议。 |
| | | 说 | 学会表达关心、表示鼓励或提供建议这三类不同的语用功能,进一步感知成长过程中的苦与乐。 |
| | | 读 | 理解课文内容,获取语篇的主要观点与信息,明确作者对成年人的态度并在文中寻找依据予以证明。 |
| | | 写 | 1. 深入思考人在成长过程中的得与失,以及如何保持自己的初心; 2. 运用所学语言知识写一篇书评。 |
| 学习 能力 | 能恰当运用各种学习策略,在自主、合作与探究式学习的过程中,结合单元提供的反思性和评价性问题,不断监控、评价、反思和调整自己的学习内容和进程,激发英语学习的兴趣,提高分析和解决问题的能力及理解和表达能力,最终促进自身语言能力、文化意识、思维品质和学习能力的综合提升。 | | |
| 文化 意识 | 通过学习与成长、发展、理想等相关的词汇和短语,了解西方文化背景,增强文化意识,提高跨文化交际能力。 | | |
| 思维 品质 | 能运用本单元所学知识为自己制订为期一年的自我提升规划,制作个人成长档案,反思自己的成长历程,理解成长的意义,学会面对压力,学会自我激励与积极生活,树立正确的人生观与价值观,实现知识和思维能力的拓展与迁移。 | | |

◦ 必备知识

| | |
|----------|--|
| 必背 单词 | integrity, virtue, licence, loan, election, wage, tax, ambulance, legal, mature, instantly, gradual, approval, librarian, household, commitment, suitable, minimum, varied, routine, chew, digestion, digest, consequence, golf, politics, evidence, airline, bond, conclusion |
| 重点 表达 | have a say, behind the wheel, take responsibility for, in the act of, ponder over, lay aside, devote oneself to, at a glance, distinguish... from..., be concerned with, be pleased to do |
| 重点 知识 | 1. no doubt+从句 2. as if 引导方式状语从句 3. have sth. done |
| 单元 语法 | 将来进行时 |
| 单元 写作 | 书评 |

探 · 究 · 构 · 建

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas— Comprehending

学习任务目标

1. Watch the video, understand the background knowledge related to the rite of passage, and initially perceive the significance of growth.
2. Read the excerpts of the poem “If”, feel the beauty of the poem, comprehend its main idea, and find and summarise the qualities needed to “become a real person”.
3. Discuss what are the most important qualities in the process of growing up and give your opinion.
4. Get the main information of the text by reading the text, accurately understand the meaning of the title according to the text, and choose a suitable title for the text.

○ 自主式预习 ○

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一) 核心词汇

1. virtue *n.* 美德
2. licence *n.* 执照
3. loan *n.* (银行等的) 贷款
4. election *n.* 选举
5. wage *n.* (按小时、日或周计算的) 工资, 薪金
6. tax *n.* 税
7. legal *adj.* 合法的
8. mature *adj.* 成熟的, 明白事理的
9. instantly *adv.* 立即, 马上
10. gradual *adj.* 逐渐的, 逐步的
11. approval *n.* 赞成, 同意
12. suitable *adj.* 合适的
13. commitment *n.* 投入, 花费
14. librarian *n.* 图书馆管理员
15. integrity *n.* 正直诚实
16. in charge of 负责; 主管
17. take responsibility for 对……负责; 承担责任
18. have a say 有发言权

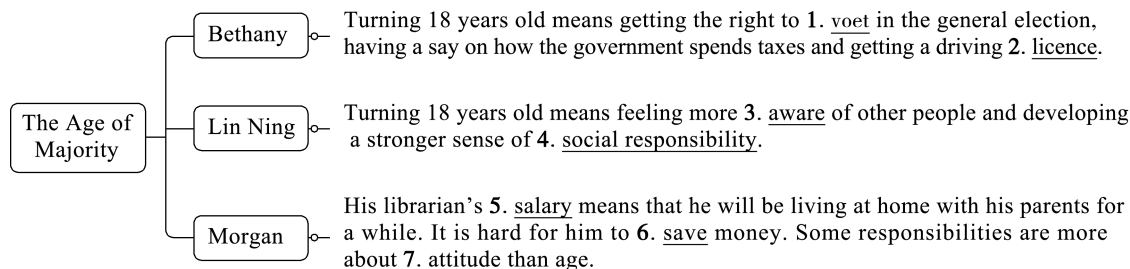
(二) 阅读词汇

1. adulthood *n.* 成年
2. milestone *n.* 重大事件, 里程碑
3. ambulance *n.* 救护车
4. childhood *n.* 童年, 儿童时代
5. selfish *adj.* 自私的
6. steady *adj.* 稳定的
7. household *adj.* 家庭的
8. deposit *n.* 订金
9. obey *v.* 服从; 遵守
10. minimum *adj.* 最小的, 最少的
11. subtle *adj.* 难以察觉的; 微妙的
12. commute *n.* 每天上班的路程
13. behind the wheel 在驾驶汽车
14. tempt sb. to do sth. 引诱某人做某事
15. no doubt 无疑
16. organ donation 器官捐献
17. instead of 代替
18. be aware of 意识到
19. give way to 向……屈服; 向……让步

任务型课堂

文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text.



文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text.

- Why won't Bethany have the right to vote?
 - Because she doesn't earn a wage and pay taxes.
 - Because she doesn't take her driving test.
 - Because she is under 18.
 - Because she may be behind the wheel.
- What's Bethany's mum's attitude towards the age of 18 for getting a driving licence?
 - Disapproving.
 - Supportive.
 - Indifferent.
 - Reasonable.
- What kind of commitment isn't Morgan ready for?
 - To pay the bank loan for his own apartment.
 - To find a new well-paid job.
 - To contribute to the bills of his family.
 - To save more money to buy a house.
- What is the text mainly about?
 - When teenagers have the right to vote.
 - What turning eighteen means actually.
 - What teenagers hope for their future.
 - Why teenagers are eager to be eighteen.

答案: 1~4 CAAB

语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them.

- But I think I'm already mature enough to understand that driving a car also means taking responsibility for my life and the lives of other people.

[句子分析] 本句是一个主从复合句。其中 I'm already... 是 宾语从句, 不定式短语 to understand... other people 作 结果状语, that 引导 宾语从句; 在 that 引导的从句中, driving a car 为动名词短语作 主语, taking responsibility for... people 为动名词短语作 宾语。

[尝试翻译] 但是我认为自己已经足够成熟了, 明白开车也意味着要对自己和他人的生命负责。

- I assumed I'd already have a well-paid job and that I'd be moving into a rented apartment as soon as I turned 18, but how wrong I was!

[句子分析] 本句是一个由 but 连接的并列复合句。前面的分句中, I'd already have a well-paid job 是省略 that 的 宾语从句, 和 that 引导的从句均作动词 assumed 的 宾语; as soon as 引导 时间状语从句。后面的分句中, but 连接 how 引导的 感叹句。

[尝试翻译] 我以为我一到 18 岁就会有一份薪水不错的工作, 并且能搬进自己租的公寓, 但是我大错特错了!

- Because I contribute to the household bills and my commute to work is quite expensive, I find it hard to save any money.

[句子分析] 本句是一个主从复合句。其中 Because 引导 原因状语从句; 主句中 it 作 形式宾语, 不定式短语 to save any money 作 真正的宾语。

[尝试翻译] 因为我要分担家庭账单, 而且我的通勤费用很高, 所以我发现攒钱非常困难。

思维品质培养

Activity 4: Think and answer the following question.

What do people mean when they say “18 marks a new chapter in our lives”?

Turning 18 is a milestone marking the start of

adulthood. When we turn 18, we are allowed to get a full-time job and rent an apartment. Getting a credit card, getting a driver's licence, getting the right to vote, and getting a bank loan are allowed at 18 in China. (回答合理即可)

Unit 1 课后素养评价 (一)

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

I. 阅读理解

At the beginning of Grade Two, I joined the cross-country running team in our school.

When I came to the first practice, I was filled with optimism. But as the distance we ran in each practice gradually increased from three to four, to six miles, I realised with surprise that no matter how hard I tried, I wasn't able to run as fast as others. In fact, I was one of the slowest on the team.

What was the point of putting myself through so much pain? After the first few weeks, I wanted to quit.

Then we had our first cross-country meet.

When we started the race, I felt the great pressure of expectations sink onto my shoulders. And after a while I stopped running and struggled to walk up the hill. But then I heard my coaches shouting my name from the top of the hill. I felt confused and embarrassed; why were they cheering me? I was running terribly! As I tried my best to finish the race, I realised that my coaches didn't care how fast I ran. Neither did my teammates. During the rest of the season, they were always on the sidelines of every race, cheering me just as loudly as they'd cheered the front runner.

From then on, I began to put my effort into supporting my teammates instead of focusing on my own performance. In that way, I celebrated my teammates' victories as if they were my own; I felt their pain and exhaustion as if they were my own.

Cross-country running made me realise I don't need to be the best to be successful in life. It taught

me to value my relationships with people more than my relationship with my ego. It taught me to cheer others even if I don't know their names.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者在二年级加入了学校的越野赛跑队后发现自己跑得很慢,想要退出。然而,在第一次的比赛中,教练和队友们不管自己跑得快慢都为自己欢呼加油,这使得作者意识到自己并不一定要成为最好的,重要的是珍惜人际关系。这一经历教会了作者关心他人和为他人加油。

1. Why did the author want to give up after the first few weeks?

- A. He had much pain in his knees.
- B. He didn't perform well in long-distance running.
- C. He couldn't get along well with others.
- D. He showed no interest in running.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“*But as the distance we ran... one of the slowest on the team.*”以及第三段的内容可知,作者在开始几周后就想放弃,是因为自己在长跑中表现不好。

2. Which of the following can best describe the coaches?

- A. Strict and hard-hearted.
- B. Brave and adventurous.
- C. Considerate and supportive.
- D. Optimistic and humorous.

C 推理判断题。根据第五段中的“*But then I heard my coaches... they'd cheered the front runner.*”可推知,这些教练很体贴,且乐于给予他人支持。

3. What did the author happen to change after his first cross-country race?

- A. He lost himself in victories.
- B. He put more effort into his study.

C. He received more support from his coaches.

D. He started caring about his teammates.

D 细节理解题。根据倒数第二段中的“From then on, I began to put my effort into supporting my teammates instead of focusing on my own performance.”可知,在作者的第一次越野比赛后,他开始关心他的队友。

4. What did the author realise from his experience?

A. The importance of team spirit.

B. The value of competition.

C. The secret of winning a race.

D. The benefits of doing sports.

A 推理判断题。根据最后一段的内容可推知,作者从自己的经历中意识到了团队精神的重要性。

II. 七选五

Get a Thorough Understanding of Oneself

In all one's lifetime it is oneself that one spends the most time being with or dealing with. 1

When you are going upwards in life you tend to overestimate (高估) yourself. It seems that everything you seek for is within your reach. 2 It's likely that you think it wise for yourself to stay away from the outer world. Actually, you may keep the following tips in mind.

Gain a correct view of oneself.

You may look forward hopefully to the future but be sure not to expect too much, for dreams can never be fully realised. You may be brave to meet challenges but it should be clear to you where to direct your efforts. 3

Self-appreciation.

Whether you compare yourself to a tall tree or a piece of grass, a high mountain or a small stone, you represent a state of nature. 4 If you sincerely admire yourself, you'll have a real sense of self-appreciation.

5

In times of anger, do yourself a favour by releasing it in a quiet place; in times of sadness, do yourself a favour by sharing it with your friends; in times of tiredness, do yourself a favour by getting a good sleep.

To get a thorough understanding of oneself is to get a full control of one's life. Then one will find one's life full of colour and flavour.

A. It has its own value.

B. Do oneself a favour when it's needed.

C. Do yourself a favour when you meet with the attack of illness.

D. But it is precisely oneself that one has the least understanding of.

E. Especially if it is well within your reach, you are just too blind to see it.

F. When you are going downhill you tend to underestimate yourself for not being qualified.

G. So long as you have a perfect knowledge of yourself, there won't be difficulties you can't overcome.

答案:1~5 DFGAB

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas— Language points

学习任务目标

1. Further understand the text, master the usage of important words and phrases, and understand some long, difficult sentences.
2. Accurately obtain key information, learn to distinguish between facts and opinions, and further understand the content of the text.
3. Experience the significance and responsibilities of adulthood, think about how to improve themselves, and establish a correct and positive outlook on life.

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. The injured were rushed to the hospital in an **ambulance**. 救护车
2. These people earn a living **wage** for their professional knowledge and skills. 工资, 薪金
3. A person's **childhood** is the period of his life when he was a child. 童年, 儿童时代
4. If you have **integrity**, you are honest and firm in your moral principles. 正直诚实
5. He already pays 40% **tax** on his income. 税
6. How much interest do they charge on **loans**? 贷款
7. This company produces various **household** products, such as televisions, refrigerators, and washing machines. 家用的

II. 拓展词汇知变形

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| <u>virtue</u> <i>n.</i> 美德 | <u>virtuous</u> <i>adj.</i> 善良的; 有道德的 |
| | <u>virtuously</u> <i>adv.</i> 合乎道德地; 善良地 |
| <u>licence</u> <i>n.</i> 执照 | <u>licensed</u> <i>adj.</i> 得到许可的 |
| <u>legal</u> <i>adj.</i> 合法的 | <u>illegal</u> <i>adj.</i> 非法的; 不合规定的 |
| <u>mature</u> <i>adj.</i> 成熟的, 明白事理的 | <u>maturity</u> <i>n.</i> 成熟; 到期 |
| <u>approval</u> <i>n.</i> 赞成, 同意 | <u>approve</u> <i>v.</i> 赞成, 同意; 批准; 认可 |

续表

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| <u>librarian</u> <i>n.</i> 图书馆管理员 | <u>library</u> <i>n.</i> 图书馆, 藏书室 |
| <u>commitment</u> <i>n.</i> 投入, 花费 | <u>commit</u> <i>v.</i> 犯罪; 承诺, 保证; (全心全意) 投入 |
| | <u>committed</u> <i>adj.</i> 忠诚的, 坚定的 |
| <u>suitable</u> <i>adj.</i> 合适的 | <u>suit</u> <i>v.</i> 适合; 使适应 <i>n.</i> 套装 |
| <u>minimum</u> <i>adj.</i> 最小的, 最少的 | <u>minimally</u> <i>adv.</i> 最低限度地, 最低程度地 |
| | <u>minimise</u> <i>v.</i> 将……减到最少 |

III. 补全短语

1. have a say 有发言权
2. behind the wheel 在驾驶汽车
3. in charge of 负责; 主管
4. take responsibility for 对……负责; 承担责任
5. instead of 代替
6. be aware of 意识到
7. give way to 向……屈服; 向……让步
8. contribute to 贡献; 捐助; 促成; 为……写稿
9. no doubt 无疑
10. tempt sb. to do sth. 引诱某人做某事

IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: as if 引导方式状语从句

I expected to feel instantly different, as if I had closed the door on my childhood and stepped into a whole new adult world.

我期待马上会有不一样的感觉,就好像我已经关闭了自己童年的大门,踏进了一个全新的成人世界。

2. 句型公式: no doubt + 从句

Of course, I would like to have more freedom with money and no doubt I will be getting a credit card at some point, but I currently don't have a steady income, so getting a credit card might tempt me to spend more money than I have!

当然,虽然我想在花钱方面更为自由,而且毫无疑问我将在某个时候获得一张信用卡,但是我现在没有稳定的收入,所以获得一张信用卡可能会

诱使我透支!

3. 句型公式: way 作先行词的定语从句

Turning 18 also changed the way that society viewed me.

年满 18 岁也改变了社会看待我的方式。

4. 句型公式: find it + adj. + to do sth.

Because I contribute to the household bills and my commute to work is quite expensive, I find it hard to save any money.

因为我要分担家庭账单,而且我的通勤费用很高,所以我发现攒钱非常困难。

任务型课堂

1. instantly adv. 立即, 马上

[教材原文] I expected to feel **instantly** different, as if I had closed the door on my childhood and stepped into a whole new adult world.

我期待马上会有不一样的感觉,就好像我已经关闭了自己童年的大门,踏进了一个全新的成人世界。

[归纳拓展]

(1) instantly = immediately 立即, 马上

(2) instant *n.* 瞬间; 片刻

for an instant 片刻; 一瞬间

the instant (that) = as soon as 一……就……

at any instant 随时; 在任何情况下

in an instant 立刻

(3) instant *adj.* 立刻的; 即食的; 方便的

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① I am going to the supermarket and will be back in an instant.

② Just for an instant I wanted to go to the library.

③ He told me the news the instant (that) he met me.

(2) 写作微练

(读后续写之情绪描写) 当他看到久别重逢的朋友时, 立刻满心欢喜。

He was instantly filled with joy when he saw his long-lost friend.

2. approval *n.* 赞成, 同意

[教材原文] Of course I asked my parents for their **approval** first.

当然, 我先争取了父母的同意。

[归纳拓展]

(1) approve *v.* 赞成, 同意; 批准; 认可

approve of sb./sb.'s (doing) sth. 同意某人(做)某事

(2) give one's approval to 批准某人……

名师点拨

approve 用作及物动词时, 表示“批准; 通过”; approve 用作不及物动词时, 表示“赞成, 同意”。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① Many doctors had been afraid their parents wouldn't approve of their going to the disaster area, but in fact, their parents supported them.

② Hope the arrangements meet with your approval (approve).

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之社会现象分析) 大多数父母 认可他们的孩子帮忙做家务。

Most parents approve of their children helping with household chores.

3. suitable *adj.* 合适的

[教材原文] Choose another **suitable** title for the passage and give your reasons.

为文章选择另一个合适的标题并给出你的理由。

[归纳拓展]

(1) be suitable for sth./sb. 对某物/某人适合的

be suitable to do sth. 适合做某事

(2) suit *v.* 适合; 使适应 *n.* 套装

suit... to... 使……适合/适应……

suit sb. (fine) (很)合某人的意; 对某人(很)合适

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① Some experts are skeptical about 3D food printers, believing they are better suitable (suit)

for fast food restaurants than homes and high-end restaurants.

② If it is convenient for you, let's meet at 8:30 outside the school gate. If not, let me know what time suits (suit) you best.

③ A good speaker is always trying to suit his speech to his audience.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之申请信) 因为我精通英语, 我的确认为我适合这项志愿者工作。

① I do believe this voluntary work suits me, because I have a good knowledge of English.

② I do believe I am suitable for this voluntary work, because I have a good knowledge of English.

4. no doubt 毫无疑问

[教材原文] Of course, I would like to have more freedom with money and **no doubt** I will be getting a credit card at some point, but I currently don't have a steady income, so getting a credit card might tempt me to spend more money than I have!

当然, 虽然我想在花钱方面更为自由, 而且毫无疑问我将在某个时候获得一张信用卡, 但是我现在没有稳定的收入, 所以获得一张信用卡可能会诱使我透支!

[归纳拓展]

in doubt 感到疑心, 拿不准

without doubt 毫无疑问

There is no doubt that... 毫无疑问……

There is some doubt whether...

是否……是有些疑问的。

名师点拨

doubt 可用作动词和名词。在否定句和疑问句中, doubt 后接 that 引导的宾语从句或同位语从句; 在肯定句中, doubt 后接 whether/if 引导的宾语从句或 whether 引导的同位语从句。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① There is some doubt among the people whether John will come on time.

② I never doubt that a small group of thoughtful, committed citizens can change the world.

③ No doubt you'll want to have a rest before dinner.

④ She is, no/without doubt, the best student I have ever taught.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之推荐信) 毫无疑问他是这个职位的

最佳候选人。

There is no doubt that he is the best candidate for the position.

5. as if 引导方式状语从句

[教材原文] I expected to feel instantly different, **as if** I had closed the door on my childhood and stepped into a whole new adult world.

我期待马上会有不一样的感觉, 就好像我已经关闭了自己童年的大门, 踏进了一个全新的成人世界。

[句式分析] 本句中 as if 引导方式状语从句, 句中的 had closed 是对过去的虚拟。

[归纳拓展]

as if 引导的方式状语从句在所述情况与事实不符或是不太可能发生的事情时, 使用虚拟语气。此时, 从句中谓语动词有以下三种形式:

(1) 如果从句所述情况与现在事实相反, 谓语动词用过去式。

(2) 如果从句所述情况与过去事实相反, 谓语动词用“had+过去分词”。

(3) 如果从句所述情况与将来事实相反, 谓语动词用“would/should/could/might+动词原形”。

[即学即练]

(1) 用 as if 引导的方式状语从句补全句子

① 这位老太太对待这个女孩就好像她是自己的女儿一样。

The old lady treats the girl as if she were her own daughter.

② 这个受伤的男子行动起来就像什么也没发生似的。

The injured man acted as if nothing had happened to him.

③ 突然一个女人闯进了他的小屋, 犹如被大风刮进来一般。

Suddenly a woman burst into his shed, as if she had been blown in.

(2) 写作微练

(读后续写之人物描写) 他说话的样子, 好像他知道她在哪里似的。

He talks as if he knew where she was.

多义词汇 专练

1. integrity: A. n. 正直诚实 B. n. 完整

① He's a man of **integrity**, so he won't break his promise. A

② The **integrity** of the historical building was carefully preserved, maintaining its original design and structure. B

2. **tax**: A. *n.* 税 B. *v.* 使纳税 C. *v.* 使大伤脑筋

① The government has **taxed** the sugary drinks to encourage healthier consumption habits. B

② The complex maths problem **taxed** my brain to

the limit, leaving me feeling exhausted. C

③ Sales **tax** is added to the price of goods and services at the point of purchase. A

Unit 1 课后素养评价 (二)

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points

I. 单句语法填空

- Can you share with us some of the memories that made the deepest impression on you when you think of China?
- China's image is improving steadily (steady), with more countries recognising its role in international affairs.
- The test and approval (approve) of new drugs will be carried out soon.
- The reason is that our industry and technology are constantly changing.
- The bank manager gave a lecture on how to get (get) a bank loan easily.
- I figured that this would be easy. It turned out to be a little harder than I imagined.
- He wanted to decide for himself instead of only obeying (obey) his parents' advice.
- It's quite easy to make quite small changes to the way that you study.
- The instant you get on the airplane, start adjusting your biological clock to the local time.
- Some students find it hard to adapt (adapt) themselves to the new environment.

II. 短语填空

in charge of; contribute to; take responsibility for;
be aware of; have a say

- I think everyone has a say on how the club should operate.
- It is the workers who take responsibility for the terrible mess in the company.
- The project will contribute to developing the economy and reducing poverty when it is completed.
- He can't be in charge of the computer company because it is beyond his ability.
- Not all people are aware of the various effects of global warming on Earth.

III. 完成句子

- He can't wait to gain independence.
他迫不及待地想自立。
- There is no doubt that growing up means not only getting complete freedom but also taking responsibility.
毫无疑问,长大不仅意味着获得完全的自由还意味着承担责任。
- I feel angry about the way that he has treated me.
我对他对待我的方式感到气愤。
- Without my mother taking care of my daily life, I found it hard to live a comfortable life.
没有妈妈照顾我的日常生活,我发现过舒适的生活很难。
- I can remember our wedding as if it were yesterday.
我记得我们的婚礼,它好像就发生在昨天一样。

IV. 完形填空

Tanner and Brandon have been good friends for many years. However, Brandon has a 1 time getting through the hallways. Since Brandon uses a push wheelchair, he says his arms start to 2 after using it for a longer time.

3 spending his hard-earned cash from his part-time job, Tanner determined to buy Brandon an electric 4 model. Little did he know Tanner has spent the last two years 5 saving up money. Tanner finally managed to buy the wheelchair last month. When he used it to 6 Brandon in class last month, the shocked teenager could barely 7 his emotions.

"They came in together and my face just blew up," Brandon said. "I was just 8 everywhere. I can't 9 he did that for me." "It's been my 10 to just have one of these," Brandon added, "and my dream came true."

The boys have been happy to receive 11 from people for the moving story, especially

Tanner. “Tanner had had some 12 experiences over the last year, so his being able to 13 somebody else has really brought him out—being able to know that he made a great 14,” Carmack, Tanner’s mother said. “And I can see a difference in him—like wanting to 15 and do more.”

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了 Tanner 偷偷攒钱为朋友 Brandon 买了一台电动轮椅,在改变别人生活的同时也让自己走出了困境。

1. A. shorter B. tougher
C. sadder D. prouder

B 根据下文的“Since Brandon uses a push wheelchair...”可知,行动不便的人用手推式轮椅过走廊应该会有困难,呼应下文“他的手臂在长时间推轮椅后开始疼痛”。故选 B。

2. A. stretch B. bend C. twist D. hurt
D 根据下文的“after using it for a longer time”可知,他的手臂在长时间推轮椅后开始疼痛。故选 D。

3. A. Rather than B. Due to
C. In spite of D. Apart from
A 根据下文的“Tanner determined to buy Brandon an electric 4 model.”可知,Tanner 决定用他从兼职工作中辛苦赚来的钱给 Brandon 买一台电动轮椅,而不是把钱花掉。故选 A。

4. A. toy B. car
C. wheelchair D. bike
C 上文的“a push wheelchair”和下文的“buy the wheelchair”为原词复现。故选 C。

5. A. easily B. secretly
C. randomly D. carefully
B 根据下文的“When he used it to 6 Brandon in class last month, the shocked teenager...”可知,Brandon 收到轮椅时很惊讶,说明 Brandon 不知道 Tanner 攒钱给自己买轮椅一事。由此可推断出,Tanner 在过去的两年里一直在偷偷攒钱。故选 B。

6. A. inspire B. amuse
C. examine D. surprise
D 根据下文的“the shocked teenager”可知,Brandon 收到轮椅时很震惊,说明 Tanner 想给 Brandon 一个惊喜。故选 D。

7. A. contain B. express
C. encounter D. release
A 根据上文的“When he used it to 6 Brandon in class last month...”可知,Brandon 不

知道 Tanner 攒钱给自己买轮椅一事,看到 Tanner 送给自己的惊喜后,Brandon 几乎无法抑制自己的情绪。故选 A。

8. A. running B. hiding
C. crying D. riding

C 根据上文的“the shocked teenager could barely 7 his emotions”可知,Brandon 无法抑制自己的情绪,感动得直想哭。故选 C。

9. A. understand B. believe
C. hope D. deny

B 根据上文的“When he used it to 6 Brandon in class last month...”可知,这台电动轮椅对 Brandon 来说是一个大大的惊喜,他不敢相信 Tanner 为自己所做的事情。故选 B。

10. A. promise B. honour
C. fortune D. dream

D 下文的“and my dream came true”中的 dream 为原词复现。故选 D。

11. A. praise B. requests
C. tips D. donation

A 根据上文的内容可知,Tanner 偷偷攒钱为 Brandon 买了一台电动轮椅,这是件令人感动的事情,所以人们对此大加赞扬。故选 A。

12. A. rewarding B. moving
C. bad D. shameful

C 根据下文的“so his being able to 13 somebody else has really brought him out”可知,因为帮助别人,Tanner 也走出了困境,说明 Tanner 在过去的一年里有过一些不好的经历。故选 C。

13. A. save B. help
C. fund D. impress

B 根据上文的内容可知,Tanner 偷偷攒钱为 Brandon 买了一台电动轮椅,这是帮助他人的表现。故选 B。

14. A. difference B. achievement
C. decision D. effort

A 根据上文的内容可知,Tanner 偷偷攒钱为 Brandon 买了一台电动轮椅,减轻了他使用手推式轮椅过走廊的不便,也就是说 Tanner 的善行对 Brandon 的生活产生了影响。故选 A。

15. A. speak up B. come over
C. take off D. get out

D 根据上文的“being able to 13 somebody else has really brought him out”可知,Tanner 在帮助别人的同时也让自己走出了困境。故选 D。

Section Ⅲ Using language

学习任务目标

- 1. Become familiar with and able to use the future continuous tense.
- 2. Listen to the conversation content, understand its general idea and obtain details to complete the form.
- 3. Use the relevant structures in the listening material to express worries or concerns, and give encouragement and suggestions.
- 4. Share one of the most memorable moments of your life with your partner.

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- 1. As a student, you should observe school **routines**.
惯例, 习惯
- 2. When you have such a friend, **cherish** your friendship.
重视, 珍视
- 3. If you describe an experience as **bittersweet**, you mean that it has some happy aspects and some sad ones.
苦乐参半的

II. 拓展词汇知变形

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|--|---|
| <u>boarder</u> <i>n.</i> 寄宿生, 住校生 | <u>board</u> <i>v.</i> 提供膳宿; 寄宿 |
| <u>varied</u> <i>adj.</i> 各种各样的 | <u>vary</u> <i>v.</i> 相异; 变化 |
| | <u>variety</u> <i>n.</i> 多样性 |
| | <u>various</u> <i>adj.</i> 各种各样的 |
| <u>related</u> <i>adj.</i> 相关的; 有亲属关系的; 属于同一种类(或组别)的 | <u>relate</u> <i>v.</i> 有联系; 有关联; 证明……有联系; 把……联系起来; 叙述 |
| | <u>relation</u> <i>n.</i> 关系; 联系; 亲戚 |
| <u>presentation</u> <i>n.</i> 介绍, 讲述; 授予, 颁发 | <u>present</u> <i>n.</i> 礼物; 现在 <i>v.</i> 描述; 展现; 赠送 |
| | <u>present</u> <i>adj.</i> 出席的; 现在的; 目前的, 存在的 |

续表

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|---|---|
| <u>regularly</u> <i>adv.</i> 有规律地; 定期地; 经常地 | <u>regular</u> <i>adj.</i> 有规律的; 定期的; 经常的; 整齐的; 规则的 |
| | <u>regulation</u> <i>n.</i> 管理; 规章; 规则 |

III. 补全短语

- 1. be based on 以……为基础或根据
- 2. be related to 与……有关联
- 3. in the long term 从长远来看
- 4. be presented with 被授予
- 5. stick at sth. 坚持不懈地做某事
- 6. ups and downs 起伏; 兴衰

IV. 补全句子

- 1. 句型公式: will be doing
I'll be attending the welcoming ceremony. What will you be doing at 9:30?
我将参加欢迎仪式。9点半时你将在做什么呢?
- 2. 句型公式: have been doing/now that
You asked if I have been thinking a lot about the future now that I'm 17.
你问我, 既然我 17 岁了, 是否对未来有很多想法。
- 3. 句型公式: It's likely that...
As students, it's likely that those moments are mainly about school life, such as sitting a major exam, giving a presentation, or becoming a boarder for the first time.
作为学生, 那些时刻很可能主要与学校生活有关, 比如参加一场重要的考试, 发表一次演讲, 或第一次成为寄宿生。

任务型课堂

related *adj.* 相关的;有亲属关系的;属于同一种类(或组别)的

[教材原文] After graduation, I will look for a job **related** to law.

毕业后, 我将找一份与法律相关的工作。

[归纳拓展]

(1) be (closely/strongly/directly) related to
与……有(密切/直接)关系/关联

(2) relate *v.* 有联系;有关联;证明……有联系;
把……联系起来;叙述

relate to 涉及;与……相关

relate... to... 把……与……联系起来

(3) relation *n.* 关系;联系;亲戚
in relation to 关于;与……相比

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① I have a lot to say in relation to this affair.

② We shall discuss the problem as it relates to our specific case.

③ It was not clear whether the house collapse (倒塌) was related (relate) to the heavy rain.

④ We need to examine all the costs involved in the project first.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之传统文化) 与当地文化相关的传统被一代一代地传承下来。

The traditions related to local cultures are passed down from generation to generation.

语法研习课

将来进行时

语法感知

① I **will be signing** an organ donation agreement this time tomorrow.

② ... I **won't be voting** in the next general election.

③ Tom **will cut** the grass tomorrow.

④ We **will catch** the 3:30 train.

以上句子中, 句子①和②的时态是将来进行时; 句子③和④的时态是一般将来时。

语法精讲

一、将来进行时的构成

1. 将来进行时由“shall/will + be + 现在分词”构成, 具体形式见下表:

| 人称 | 单数 | 复数 |
|------|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 第一人称 | I shall/will be leaving. | We shall/will be leaving. |
| 第二人称 | You will be leaving. | You will be leaving. |
| 第三人称 | He/She/It will be leaving. | They will be leaving. |

I'll **be doing** some housework tomorrow.
明天我将要干些家务活。

I'll **be staying** late at the office this evening.

今天晚上我将在办公室里待到很晚。

I'll **be taking** my holidays soon.

我不久就要去度假了。

2. 将来进行时的否定句

句型: 主语 + shall/will + not + be + 现在分词

The train **won't be leaving** until one.

火车1点钟才开。

We **will not be having** class at this time tomorrow.

明天这个时候我们不上课。

二、将来进行时的主要用法

1. 将来进行时表示将来某一时间正在进行的动作, 常与 this time tomorrow, at... o'clock tomorrow afternoon 等类型的时间状语连用。

Hurry up! The train **will be leaving** in a second!

快点! 火车马上就要开了!

A space vehicle **will be circling** Jupiter in five years' time.

这个航天器5年后将绕木星飞行。

Don't phone me between 5 and 6. We'll **be having** dinner then.

5点至6点之间不要给我打电话。那时我们正在吃晚饭。

When I get home, my wife **will** probably **be watching television**.

当我到家时,我的太太可能会在看电视。

2. 将来进行时表示一种已经决定或肯定会发生的动作及情况,或表示某动作将正在按计划发生而未完成。

I **will be seeing** you next week.

我下个星期来看你。

We **shall be going** to London next week.

下周我们要去伦敦。

We'll **be spending** the winter in Australia.

我们将在澳大利亚过冬。

Professor Craig **will be giving** a lecture on global warming tomorrow evening.

克雷格教授明晚将做关于全球变暖的演讲。

三、将来进行时与一般将来时的区别

1. 两者基本用法不一样:将来进行时表示将来某时正在进行的动作,一般将来时表示将来某时将要发生的动作,或将来某一段时间内经常发生的动作或状态。

What **will** you **be doing** this time tomorrow?

明天这个时候你会在做什么呢?

What **will** you **do** tomorrow?

你明天做什么?

2. 两者均可表示将来,但将来进行时语气更委婉。

When **will** you **finish** these letters?

你什么时候完成这些信件?(直接询问,如上司对下属)

When **will** you **be seeing** Mr White?

你什么时候见怀特先生?(委婉地询问,如下属对上司)

When **will** you **pay** back the money?

你什么时候还钱?(直接讨债)

When **will** you **be paying** back the money?

这钱你什么时候还呢?(委婉地商量)

3. 有时一般将来时中的 **will** 含有“愿意”的意思,而用将来进行时则只是单纯地谈未来的情况。

Mary **won't pay** this bill.

玛丽不肯付这笔钱。(表示意愿)

Mary **won't be paying** this bill.

不会由玛丽来付钱。(单纯谈未来的情况)

语法冲关

I. 用所给动词的适当形式填空

1. He will be lying (lie) on one of the sunny beaches in Hawaii all day when he spends his holiday there.
2. Don't call me between 2:00 and 4:00 this afternoon. I shall/will be having (have) a test then.
3. I feel so excited! At this time tomorrow morning, I will be flying (fly) to Shanghai.
4. Just think! This time next week we will be sitting (sit) in the sun in the south of France.
5. If you plant watermelon seeds in spring, you will be eating (eat) fresh watermelons in summer.
6. Don't go to see your uncle at nine tomorrow morning. He will be making (make) a speech to the workers.
7. You can't miss him. He will be wearing (wear) a dark green suit and a yellow tie waiting for you.
8. I'm afraid I won't be available. I will be seeing (see) a friend off at three o'clock this afternoon.
9. Will you be using (use) your computer this time tomorrow?
10. The train will be going (go) at the present speed until it reaches Chicago at eleven o'clock tonight.

II. 完成句子

1. After you take the medicine, you will be feeling much better.
服药之后,你会感觉好得多。
2. I feel so excited! I will be seeing my sister and her family in two days.
我非常兴奋!两天后我就要见到我的姐姐和她的家人了。
3. Stop the child or he will be falling over.
制止那个孩子,要不然他会摔倒。
4. My duties will be ending in July, and I'll be returning to New York.
我的工作将在7月结束,然后我会回纽约。
5. If you don't do so, you will be facing great difficulties.
你如果不这样做就会面临很大的困难。
6. Shall I be interrupting you if I stay here for a while?
要是我在这儿待一会儿,会打扰你们吗?

Unit 1 课后素养评价 (三)

Section III Using language

I. 词语填空

be based on; stick to; routine; vary; be related to

1. The key is to develop a balanced and varied routine that's fun as well as progressive.
2. This is where you'll schedule your daily workout routine(s).
3. Much to the family's surprise, Dennis stuck to his promise.
4. The figures were based on a survey of nearly 9,000 children across China.
5. Much of the crime in this area is related to drug abuse.

II. 单句语法填空

1. We are more than pleased to hear from the editor.
2. It is essential that your diet is varied (vary) and balanced.
3. The tourists will be tasting (taste) the local food at 8 am tomorrow.
4. It is for these reasons that we firmly believe that this rule will promote the learning atmosphere and our teamwork spirit.
5. Learning is not always easy, but it is always beneficial in the long term.
6. The figures need to be checked again before we draw a conclusion (conclude).
7. Once you get to Hangzhou, you will fall in love with it immediately.
8. Now that we have grown up, we should wash clothes by ourselves.
9. It is assumed that mental health is related to physical health.
10. The famous professor will be giving (give) a lecture on English literature this time tomorrow evening.

III. 阅读理解

Alexia suffered from a severe disease in her brain at an early age. Despite that, she refused to be easily defeated. Instead, she chose to spread light to

everyone around her.

Alexia started a series of small gatherings for the kids in the neighbourhood. It was her way of enhancing connections among her neighbours. For those who couldn't attend, she made funny videos and shared her artworks on the social media. She loved to use her creativity to make ordinary things beautiful.

Her mother recalled, "Somebody said Alexia was an actress and the world was her stage. She was a representative of joy." When it was time for her to receive another operation—she had fifteen in all—Alexia could go about it with failure. No complaining and no crying, she just got through it and got back to living. Her teachers remembered her as an inspiring girl everyone wanted to be around. With an infectious (有感染力的) smile and an incredible passion for life, she approached each day as a new opportunity to conquer her illness and make a difference.

Sometimes it happens that a very special person comes into our life to welcome each day with gratitude, to cherish the moments of joy, to brave life's challenges, and to lighten up the lives of people around. Alexia's artworks made people happy. Her videos made people suffering hard things focus on good things and stay optimistic. Her positive mindset brought a sense of hope to those facing similar challenges.

Without any good luck, Alexia passed away at the age of 16. "She made a choice to live her life with joy and optimism," said her father. That spirit continued with her family founding an organisation called Alexia's Flight, which committed to inspiring others to live life as she did. The organisation raised money for medical research and also celebrated life by sharing the message: Spread your wings and shine your light.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。从小身患重病的 Alexia 在勇敢地与疾病作斗争的同时,也以积极乐观的人生态度,组织各种形式的活动来影响着身边的人。

1. How did Alexia live her life when facing her serious disease?

- A. She lost faith in life for her disease.
- B. She was actively involved in her life.
- C. She made videos and created artworks to make profits.
- D. She hardly interacted with the kids in the neighbourhood.

B 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“Despite that, she refused to be easily defeated. Instead, she chose to spread light to everyone around her.”和第二段的内容可知,Alexia 虽然身患重病,但仍为周边街区的孩子多次组织小型聚会,以此来加强邻里之间的联系,用自己的创造力把平凡的东西变得美丽,由此推断 Alexia 积极地投入到她的生活中。

2. What can we infer from Paragraph 3 about Alexia?

- A. She knew very little about her disease.
 - B. She showed a talent for acting and art.
 - C. She had fifteen successful operations.
 - D. She was highly thought of by others.
- D 推理判断题。根据第三段中的“Somebody said Alexia was an actress and the world was her stage. She was a representative of joy.”和“Her

teachers remembered her as an inspiring girl everyone wanted to be around.”可知,Alexia 身边的人对她的评价很高。

3. Why did Alexia's family found Alexia's Flight?

- A. To attract more people to befriend her.
- B. To raise more money for her treatment.
- C. To tell people to face life in a right way.
- D. To remind people to achieve their dreams.

C 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“‘She made a choice to live her life with joy and optimism,’ said her father. That spirit continued with her family founding an organisation called Alexia's Flight, which committed to inspiring others to live life as she did.”可推知,Alexia 的家人创立 Alexia's Flight 的目的是激励他人像 Alexia 一样快乐积极地生活。故选 C。

4. Which of the following can best describe Alexia?

- A. Bright and creative.
- B. Strong and humorous.
- C. Talented and honest.
- D. Organised and sensitive.

A 推理判断题。根据第一段中的“Instead, she chose to spread light to everyone around her.”可知,从小身患重病的 Alexia 是积极的。根据第二段中的“Alexia started a series of small gatherings for the kids in the neighbourhood.”以及第四段中的“Her videos made people suffering hard things focus on good things and stay optimistic.”可推知,她是一个有创造力的女孩。

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

学习任务目标

1. Understand the author and the writing background of *The Little Prince* by reading the author's biography.
2. Through the questioning strategy based on solo theory, sort out the general idea of the text and clarify the differences between children and adults in seeing the world.
3. Analyse the reasons for the differences by comparing children's and adults' views of the world.

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

续表

1. Some books are to be tasted, others to be **swallowed**, and some few to be chewed and digested. 吞下,咽下
2. In some cultures friendship means a strong lifelong **bond** between two people. 纽带,关系
3. **Golf** is a game played on a large open course with 9 or 18 holes. 高尔夫球运动
4. It's said that the **airline** operates flights to 25 countries. 航空公司
5. As is known to all, *Robinson Crusoe* is a **masterpiece** of Daniel Defoe. 杰作

II. 拓展词汇知变形

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|---|---|
| <u>digestion</u> <i>n.</i> 消化(过程) | <u>digest</u> <i>v.</i> 消化(食物) |
| <u>disheartened</u> <i>adj.</i> 沮丧的,灰心的 | <u>dishearten</u> <i>v.</i> 使沮丧,使灰心,使气馁 |
| | <u>disheartening</u> <i>adj.</i> 令人沮丧的 |
| <u>tiresome</u> <i>adj.</i> 烦人的,令人厌烦的 | <u>tiresomely</u> <i>adv.</i> 累人地;令人厌倦地 |
| <u>consequence</u> <i>n.</i> 后果 | <u>consequent</u> <i>adj.</i> 随之发生的,作为结果的 |
| | <u>consequently</u> <i>adv.</i> 结果,必然地,因此 |
| <u>intimately</u> <i>adv.</i> 亲密地;密切地 | <u>intimate</u> <i>adj.</i> 亲密的;秘密的,私人的 |

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|----------------------------------|--|
| <u>politics</u> <i>n.</i> 政治 | <u>political</u> <i>adj.</i> 政治的,政权的,政党的 |
| | <u>politician</u> <i>n.</i> 政客,政治家,政治人物 |
| <u>evidence</u> <i>n.</i> 证据 | <u>evident</u> <i>adj.</i> 显然的;清楚的 |
| <u>memorable</u> <i>adj.</i> 难忘的 | <u>memory</u> <i>n.</i> 记忆;回忆 |
| | <u>memorise</u> <i>v.</i> 记住,记下 |
| <u>conclusion</u> <i>n.</i> 结论 | <u>conclude</u> <i>v.</i> 结束;推断出 |

III. 补全短语

1. at a glance 一瞥,看一眼
2. distinguish... from ... 区别,辨别
3. fall in love with 爱上
4. be concerned with 关心;与……有关
5. devote oneself to 致力于,献身于
6. close at hand 就在眼前
7. be obsessed with 痴迷于……
8. lay aside 把……搁置一边

IV. 补全句子

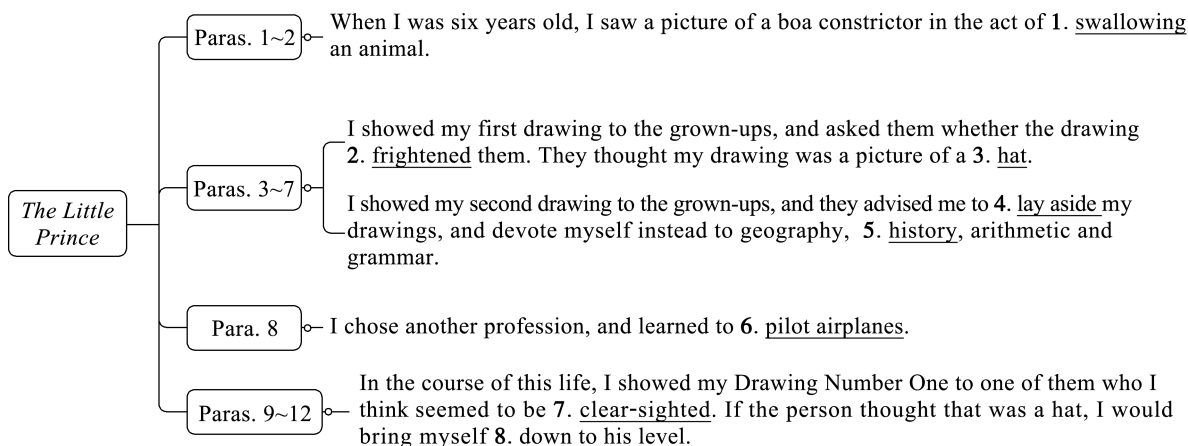
1. 句型公式: have sth. done
They always need to have things explained.
他们总是需要请别人解释事情。
2. 句型公式: That is why...
That is why, at the age of six, I gave up what might have been a magnificent career as a painter.
这就是为什么,在六岁的时候,我放弃了画家这个可能会很了不起的职业。

任务型课堂

Part 1 课文理解

文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text.



文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text.

- How did the adults respond after seeing the writer's first two paintings?
 - They admired his gift for good paintings.
 - They felt frightened by his paintings.
 - They considered his paintings valuable.
 - They advised him to give up painting.
- What does the writer think of the grown-ups at first?
 - They can't understand children at all.
 - They are often fed up with children.
 - They are more knowledgeable than children.
 - They have more imagination than children.
- Why does the writer always keep his Drawing Number One?
 - To show off his good drawing.
 - To know who truly understands life.
 - To make other people pleased.
 - To bring himself down to a low level.
- What does the writer think a child's most valuable trait is?
 - Imagination.
 - Honesty.
 - Generosity.
 - Knowledge.

答案: 1~4 DABA

语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them.

- But since the grown-ups were not able to

understand it, I made another drawing: I drew the inside of the boa constrictor, so that the grown-ups could see it clearly.

[句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句。其中 since 引导原因状语从句, since 意为“由于, 因为”; so that 引导目的状语从句。

[尝试翻译]但由于大人们不能理解它, 我画了另一幅画: 我画出了蟒蛇身体的内部, 这样大人们就能看清楚了。

- Whenever I met one of them who seemed to me at all clear-sighted, I tried the experiment of showing him my Drawing Number One, which I have always kept.

[句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句。其中 Whenever 引导时间状语从句; who 引导定语从句, 修饰代词 them; which 引导非限制性定语从句, 修饰名词 Drawing Number One。

[尝试翻译]每当我遇到他们中一个看上去头脑完全清楚的人, 我就试着给他看我一直带着的“一号画作”。

思维品质培养

Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions.

- Suppose the author asked for your opinion of his Drawing Number One and Drawing Number Two, what would you say to him?
略
- During the course of your growth, what have you lost just because your parents or adults around you didn't understand or support you?
略

Part 2 语言梳理

1. devote oneself to 致力于, 献身于

[教材原文] The grown-ups' response, this time, was to advise me to lay aside my drawings of boa constrictors, whether from the inside or the outside, and **devote myself** instead **to** geography, history, arithmetic and grammar.

这次, 大人的回答是建议我把不管是蟒蛇内部还是外部的画都放到一边, 然后转而专心学习地理、历史、算术和语法。

[归纳拓展]

- (1) devote... to (doing) sth. 把……献给(做)某事
devote oneself to = be devoted to 致力于, 献身于
(2) devoted *adj.* 忠实的; 深爱的
(3) devotion *n.* 奉献; 关爱

名师点拨

devote... to... 中的 to 为介词, 后跟名词或动词等。类似的短语:

look forward to doing sth. 盼望做某事

object to doing sth. 反对做某事

get down to doing sth. 开始做某事

pay attention to doing sth. 注意做某事

be/get used/accustomed to doing sth. 习惯于做某事

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① If I am chosen, I will devote myself to being (be) a qualified volunteer.

② We appreciated his devotion (devote) of time and money to the project.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之传统文化) 他们致力于保护传统文化, 因此积极参与各种文化活动。

Devoting themselves to/Devoted to preserving the traditional culture, they actively participate in various cultural activities.

2. at a glance 一瞥, 看一眼

[教材原文] **At a glance** I can distinguish China from Arizona.

我一眼就能分辨出中国和亚利桑那州。

[归纳拓展]

(1) glance through/over 浏览

glance at 瞥一眼(强调动作)

(2) at first glance/sight 初看起来, 乍一看

take/have a glance (at) (对……) 匆匆看一下

at a (single) glance (只) 看一眼就; 立刻

【易混辨析】glance at, gaze at, glare at, stare at

| 易混词组 | 区别 |
|-----------|--|
| glance at | “瞥一眼, 看一下”, 强调动作的短暂 |
| gaze at | “凝视, 注视”, 因惊异或赞赏而长时间无意识地凝视某人或某事物 |
| glare at | “怒视”, 带有敌对或威胁的态度 |
| stare at | “盯着看, 凝视”, 强调看得仔细, 有时也带有吃惊的意味或含有无礼或粗俗的意味 |

[即学即练]

(1) 用 glance/gaze/glare/stare 的适当形式填空

① They stood at the top of the hill, gazing at the splendid sunset.

② The manager glanced at the document and signed down his name.

③ The dog glared at the stranger and barked.

④ She stared at the painting, wondering where she had seen it.

(2) 写作微练

(读后续写之环境描写) 我们凝视着美丽的日落, 享受着这宁静的时刻。

We stared at the beautiful sunset, enjoying the moment of peace.

3. evidence *n.* 证据

[教材原文] Choose the author's attitude towards grown-ups and find **evidence** to support your choice.

选择作者对大人的态度, 并找到证据支持你的选择。

[归纳拓展]

(1) provide/give evidence for 提供……的证据

There is some/no evidence that... 有/没有证据表明……

(2) evident *adj.* 显然的; 清楚的

It's evident that... 很明显……

名师点拨

在“There is some/no evidence that...”句型中, that 引导的是同位语从句, 说明 evidence 的具体内容, 且 There 不可以改为 It。

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

① There's some evidence that outdoor activities are good for us.

② It is evident that smoking is harmful to health.

③ At present we have no evidence(evident) of life on other planets.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之劝说信)科学家们发现了新的证据来支持进化论。

Scientists have found new evidence that supports the theory of evolution.

4. conclusion n. 结论

[教材原文] Conclusion and recommendation
结论和建议

[归纳拓展]

(1) draw/reach/come to/arrive at a conclusion 得出结论

in conclusion 最后;总之;总而言之

(2) conclude v. 结束;推断出

conclude... from... 从……中推断出……

conclude (from sth.) that... (从某事中)推断出……;(从某事中)断定……

conclude sth. with.../by doing... 以(做)……结束某事

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

① We will have a further discussion before we draw a final conclusion (conclude).

② In conclusion, I would like to say the film is worth seeing.

③ (2023·新课标 I 卷) Part one concludes by introducing my suggested method for adopting this philosophy.

④ What can we conclude from the conversation?

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之环境保护)总之,我们应该立即采取行动保护环境。

In conclusion, we should take immediate action to protect the environment.

5. have sth. done 让某事被做;请别人做某事;遭遇某种(不幸的)事情

[教材原文] They always need to **have things explained**.

他们总是需要请别人解释事情。

[句式分析] 本句中 have things explained 是 have sth. done 结构的应用,此结构中的宾语与宾语补足语之间是动宾关系。

[归纳拓展]

have sb. do sth. = get sb. to do sth. 让某人做某事
have sb./sth. doing sth. 使某人/某物持续地做某事(常用于肯定句中);允许某人/某物做某事(常用于否定句中,与 can't 或 won't 连用,表示不可容忍,不能允许)

have sth. to do 有某事要做(have 是实义动词“有”,to do 作后置定语)

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

① I can't have you speaking (speak) to your mother in a rude manner.

② Once he makes up his mind, nothing can have him change (change) it.

③ I have a lot of homework to finish (finish), so I can't go hiking with you.

(2)写作微练

(读后续写之外貌描写)她把头发剪短以获得一个新形象。

She had her hair cut short for a new look.

多义词汇 专练

1. swallow: A. v. 吞下,咽下 B. v. 用尽,耗尽,花光 C. v. 使不流露,抑制

① He had to **swallow** his anger and remain calm during the meeting. C

② He **swallowed** the pill with a glass of water to ease his headache. A

③ Most of my salary is **swallowed** up by the rent and bills. B

2. digest: A. v. 消化(食物) B. v. 理解,领悟,领会 C. n. 文摘;汇编

① A **digest** is a collection of pieces of writing. C

② This chapter is so difficult to **digest** that I shall have to read it again later. B

③ You should allow a little time after a meal for the food to **digest**. A

Unit 1 课后素养评价(四)

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

I. 单词拼写

1. The boy chewed (咀嚼) the meat well before he swallowed it.
2. The man has been playing an active part in local politics (政治).
3. Many believe that one consequence (结果) of global warming is extinction of more species.
4. Many airlines (航空公司) now allow passengers to print their boarding passes online.
5. He drew the conclusion (结论) by building on his own investigation.
6. What food you eat and how well it is digested (消化) will obviously affect your sleep too.
7. From the way she held their hands and touched their faces you could tell they had such a special bond (纽带).
8. I really don't know why you are so obsessed (着迷) with my secrets.

II. 单句语法填空

1. There is no convincing evidence (evident) that lung cancer is linked to insomnia.
2. He has a delicate digestion (digest) and cannot eat oily food.
3. Davis concludes from an analysis of traffic accidents that the speed limit should be lowered.
4. All these opinions make sense, and consequently (consequence) it is hard to choose the best of them.
5. Devoted (devote) to the project, the young scientist has little time for entertainment.

III. 短语填空

be concerned with; after all; lay aside; a great deal; at a glance; distinguish... from...; devote oneself to

1. More and more people find it hard to lay aside their mobile phones and concentrate on their work.
2. Yuan Longping devoted himself to improving the output of rice.
3. The painter could see at a glance that it wasn't his own work.
4. It is the superior intelligence and the use of language that distinguish men from the other animals.
5. It's reported that the way people spend their holidays has changed a great deal in the past ten years.
6. They are concerned with the training curriculum (课程), but not the details of each course.
7. It is reasonable to forgive him. After all, he is only a child.

IV. 完成句子

1. In consequence of a great fire the house was completely destroyed.
由于一场大火,房子全毁了。
2. While they are rare at 88°N, there is evidence that they range all the way across the Arctic, and as far south as James Bay in Canada.
虽然它们在北纬 88 度是罕见的,但有证据表明它们的活动范围遍及北极地区,而且南至加拿大的詹姆斯湾。
3. His smile suggested that he was pleased to take/accept the job.
他的微笑说明了他乐意接受这份工作。
4. We will have a further discussion before we draw a final conclusion.
在得出最终结论前,我们将作进一步讨论。
5. He is so delighted to make friends with Johnson. That's because they have much in common.
他是如此高兴与约翰逊交朋友。那是因为他们有很多共同之处。

6. Whenever you have good ideas, you can email me.

无论你何时有好的想法,都可以给我发邮件。

V. 语法填空

Children are naturally curious beings, but getting them 1. to learn (learn) something that they aren't interested in can be a difficult task. Teachers and parents often find themselves 2. turning (turn) to rewards in the form of stars, promises of high grades and wonderful 3. careers (career), or threats of punishment. But what if rewards and threats aren't the answer?

Natural curiosity is 4. normally (normal) referred to as “intrinsic (内在的) motivation” sometimes. Lately studies 5. have found (find) that children who see learning 6. as fun and important are better at it. And it's easy to understand why 7. it is difficult to study something we aren't engaged with, and if we're enthusiastic about the information we're learning, it feels more meaningful.

Extrinsic (外在的) motivation is really 8. beneficial (benefit). Praise and stimulation based on either achieving good grades 9. or fear of punishment has been acknowledged to motivate older students. However, it seems that at an early age, it doesn't have as much effect.

The key is to allow some degree of autonomy and 10. freedom (free). If you want to teach a child to read, let them choose which book they use. Whether it's a graphic novel, TV guide or classic literature, the aim of stimulating their appetite for reading is met.

VI. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假定你是李华,正在你校学习汉语的美国交换生 Albert 对中国古诗词很感兴趣。请用英语给他写一封邮件,邀请他一同观看一期《经典咏流传》节目。内容包括:

1. 时间、地点和观看人员;

2. 内容:欣赏以歌曲形式咏唱的经典古诗词;

3. 提醒:观看前简要了解一些中国经典古诗词,观看后一起谈谈感受。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数;

3. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

参考词汇:《经典咏流传》*Everlasting Classics*

【参考范文】

Hi Albert,

How is it going? I know you show great interest in classical Chinese poetry. I warmly invite you to appreciate one episode of a TV programme named *Everlasting Classics* this week.

It helps people enjoy some beautiful classic Chinese poems performed in the form of popular songs. All exchange students are welcome to watch it at the lecture hall at 5pm on Friday. It's a good idea to learn some classic Chinese poems in advance, which can help you understand them better then. After watching the programme, we can share what impresses us most with others.

I sincerely expect you to come.

Best wishes!

Yours,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

I am a mother of three and have recently completed my college degree.

The last class I had to take was sociology (社会学). The teacher was absolutely inspiring with the qualities that I wish every human had been graced with. Her last project of the term was called “Smile”. The class was asked to go out and smile at

three people and document their reactions.

I am a very friendly person and always smile at everyone and say hello anyway, so, I thought this would be a piece of cake. Soon after we were given the project, my husband, youngest son, and I went out to a restaurant one cold March morning. It was just our way of sharing special playtime with our son. We were standing in line, waiting to be served, when all of a sudden everyone around us began to back away, and then even my husband did.

I did not move a bit... a strong feeling of fear welled up inside of me as I turned to see why they had moved. As I turned around I smelled a terrible “dirty body” smell, and there standing behind me were two poor homeless men. As I looked down at the short gentleman, close to me, he was “smiling”. His beautiful sky blue eyes were full of hope as he searched for acceptance.

He said “Good day” as he counted the few coins he had been holding. The second man was obviously mentally disabled. I held my tears as I stood there with them.

The young lady at the counter asked him what they wanted. He said “Coffee is all, Miss.” because that was all they could afford. (If they wanted to sit in the restaurant and warm up, they had to buy

something. He just wanted to be warm.)

Then I really felt the desire was so great that I almost reached out and hugged the little man with the blue eyes.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

【参考范文】

That is when I noticed all eyes in the restaurant were set on me, judging my every action. I smiled and asked the waitress to give me two more breakfast on a separate tray. I put the tray on the table and the blue-eyed gentleman looked up at me tearfully in his eyes. I started to cry as I walked away. When I sat down, my husband smiled at me. We held hands firmly. I returned to college, on the last evening of class, with this story in hand.

I turned in “my project” and the instructor read it. Then she said, “Can I share this?” I nodded as she got the attention of the class. She began to read and that is when I knew that we, as humans, share this need to help people and to be helped. In my own way I had touched the people at the restaurant, my husband, my son, the instructor, and every soul that shared the classroom on the last night I spent as a college student. I graduated with one of the biggest lessons I would ever learn: UNCONDITIONAL ACCEPTANCE.

★★★
迁 · 移 · 应 · 用

Part 1 应用文写作

——书评

○写作指导

书评是指对一本书的描述、批判性分析和评价。书评应该关注这本书的目的、内容和意义。写书评时,应该注意以下问题:

1. 先展示书名,以及有关作者的简要信息,如作者过去的代表作品、曾获得的荣誉等。
2. 小说类的书评可对书中的主要人物进行介绍,并简要点出部分情节。非小说类的书评则应提供书的重要信息的概览,包括关键日期、人物、地点和观点。
3. 书评可以是对一本书全面的评论,也可以从某个切口展开评论。为什么作者写这个主题而不是别的主题?这部作品是从什么角度写的?作者的风格是什么?适当地引用原文可使读者产生真实的感受。要寻找那些动人或有力的话语,并对它们提出的背景进行描述。
4. 用总结性的表达使读者对该书有整体把握。这本书对你有什么影响?你会把这本书推荐给别人吗?为什么?

○典题示例

假如你是李华,最近英语课上阅读了Dodie Smith写的*I Capture the Castle*这部小说,你的英语老师要求你们用英语写一篇80词左右的书评。

Step 1: 审题谋篇

| | |
|----|---|
| 文体 | 议论文 |
| 时态 | 以一般现在时为主 |
| 人称 | 第三人称 |
| 要点 | 1. 介绍作者和作品的名称 2. 概括小说的主要内容 3. 推荐的理由 |

Step 2: 要点补全

①Dodie Smith's novel *I Capture the Castle* is a spiritual journey of (一次心灵旅程) a young writer.

- ②She attempts to record (试图记录) her daily life.
③Cassandra undergoes a definite transformation (经历一个明确的转变) from a child to a mature young adult.
④It's only the course of several months(几个月的过程).
⑤I would recommend it to older teenagers (把它推荐给年龄稍大的青少年), mainly because they can see into her way of thinking (领会她的思维方式).
⑥ Read exactly what she is feeling when she thinks about problems (她思考问题时的感受).

Step 3: 句式升级

- ①用 as 引导的时间状语从句合并 Step 2 中的①②句
Dodie Smith's novel *I Capture the Castle* is a spiritual journey of a young writer as she attempts to record her daily life.
②用 even though 引导的让步状语从句连接 Step 2 中的③④句
Cassandra undergoes a definite transformation from a child to a mature young adult, even though it's only the course of several months.
③用 and 连接 Step 2 中的⑤⑥句
I would recommend it to older teenagers, mainly because they can see into her way of thinking and read exactly what she is feeling when she thinks about problems.

Step 4: 连句成篇

Dodie Smith's novel *I Capture the Castle* is a spiritual journey of a young writer as she attempts to record her daily life.

Cassandra lives in a fourteenth-century English castle with her family. Cassandra undergoes a definite transformation from a child to a mature young adult, even though it's only the course of

several months.

I would recommend it to older teenagers, mainly because they can see into her way of thinking and read exactly what she is feeling when she thinks about problems.

○学以致用

假如你是李华，你的英语老师 Mike 上周要求你们阅读《平凡的世界》(*Ordinary World*), 并且用英语写一篇 80 词左右的书评。

【参考范文】

Ordinary World, written by Lu Yao, won the

third Mao Dun Literature Award, one of the highest honours in Chinese literature.

It tells a story of the ordinary peasants with extraordinary personalities struggling for fate and a better life between the 1970s and the 1980s. Their experiences greatly encourage those who are down to get out of their depression.

The novel has been regarded as an inspiring one that is worth reading for many times. Each time I read it, I'll have a new discovery.

Part 2 读后续写

阅读下面的文章，完成任务。

I'm so excited because today I'm graduating from high school, finally! I have many mixed feelings. I'm nervous, happy, but most importantly scared for the future. I still haven't gotten my college letters to see if I got in or not.

Several days passed and slowly my letters started to arrive. All of my options close to home turned me down, which made me scared because I got very homesick. Then I remembered that a month before in the college adviser's office I applied to a study abroad programme in China. I looked at it as a very last choice but now it was my only hope for going to college next year.

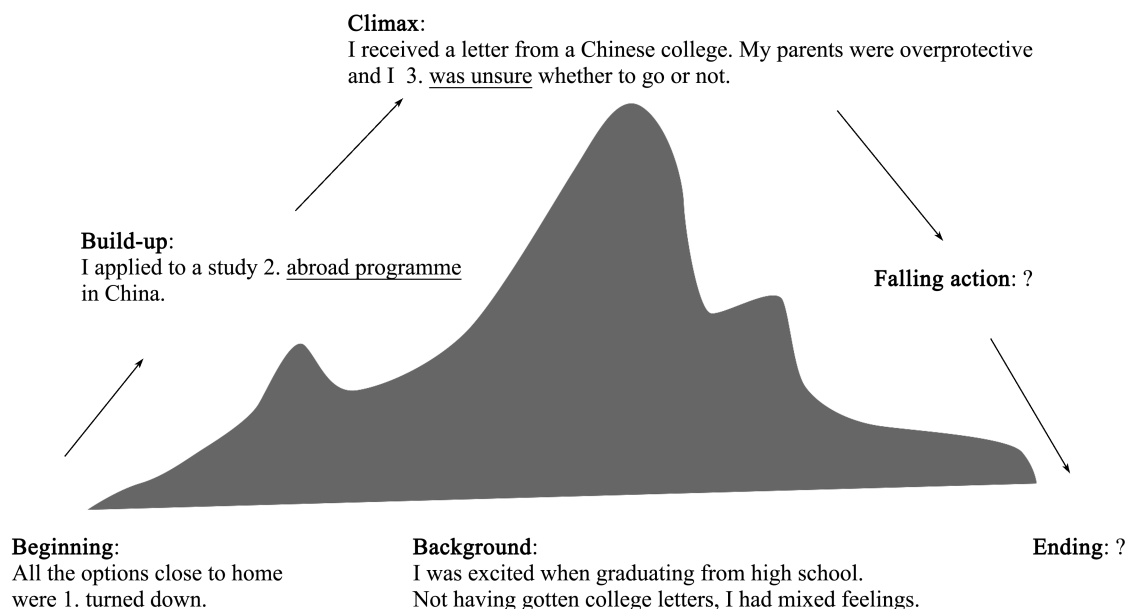
The letter arrived and I was accepted! I was happy to go to college but I couldn't believe it was in China. We all started crying. My parents were very overprotective, they never let me do anything and always make my decisions for me. I was still unsure whether to go or not.

任务一：阅读文章，回答问题。

What does the article mainly talk about?

The writer was very excited about graduating from high school. The writer received the acceptance letter and was surprised that it was from China.

任务二：梳理故事情节，完成故事山(Story Mountain)。



任务三:回答下面的问题,并根据段落开头的提示语,构思和完善故事发展情节。

| | |
|--|--|
| <p>Paragraph 1:</p> <p>My parents claimed that I wasn't ready. _____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> | <p>1. How did I react?</p> <p><u>I didn't give in. I wanted to make my own decision.</u></p> <p>2. What did my parents try to do?</p> <p><u>They tried to stop me.</u></p> <p>3. What decision did I make? Why?</p> <p><u>I was determined to go to China. Because I wanted to be independent and would start fresh, meet new people, and learn about a new place and culture.</u></p> <p>4. What did I finally do?</p> <p><u>I said goodbye to my parents, leaving for China.</u></p> |
| <p>Paragraph 2:</p> <p>At last, I arrived at my college and began my new life. _____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> | <p>1. How did I get along with my classmates and roommates?</p> <p><u>We got on well with each other.</u></p> <p>2. What was my feeling in a new environment?</p> <p><u>Everyone in my class was friendly and I was so happy.</u></p> <p>3. How about my study?</p> <p><u>The classes were very interesting and I learned much. I also really loved the culture and everything from China!</u></p> <p>4. How did my parents react?</p> <p><u>My parents always told me they would come to visit but I wanted to have some time on my own and they did understand that.</u></p> |

任务四:根据材料内容和任务三中构思的故事发展情节续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

【参考范文】

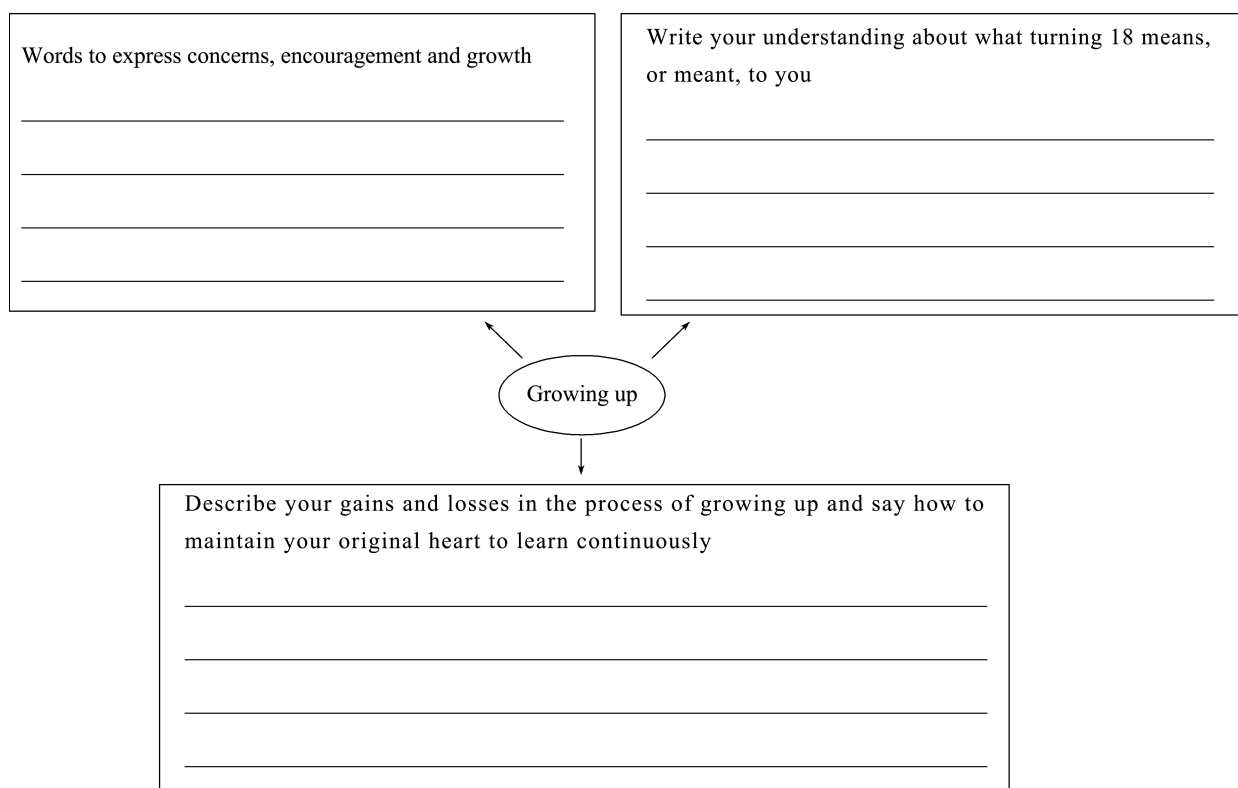
My parents claimed that I wasn't ready. I didn't give in. For the first time I made my own decision. They tried to stop me but my mind was determined. All of my life I never tried anything new and now was the perfect time to be outgoing. I would start fresh, meet new people, and learn about a new place and culture. I packed and my parents drove me to the airport, crying all the way. Finally, I said goodbye and left. Time passed so fast and once I opened my eyes I was in China.

At last, I arrived at my college and began my new life. Everyone in my class was friendly. They asked me about my country and I was so happy! My roommates and I decorated our dorm together. It came out really cool and colourful. The classes were very interesting and I learned much. I also really loved the culture and everything from China! My parents always told me they would come to visit but I wanted to have some time on my own and they did understand that. I loved them but I needed this time to myself. Over time I made many good friends. It was a great experience that I learned a lot from and it really helped me grow as a person.

重 · 构 · 拓 · 展

一、单元重构

请根据本单元所学内容，完成思维导图。



答案：略

二、拓展阅读

阅读下面的文章，完成后面的题目。

WORKING OUT WHAT YOU WANT TO DO

As an adult, one of the first questions you are asked when meeting someone new is, “What do you do?” This is because your career is a very important part of who you are. The career you have defines your life, so taking time to think about it is an essential exercise for young people.

The best time to start thinking about possible careers is while you are still at school, before you make any choices about your further education. This, however, is not always easy. Some people know what they want to do from a young age, but many others just have a few ideas bouncing around in their heads.

One of the most effective ways to get some insight into a possible career path is to complete a “career aptitude test”. The results of the test will tell you about your strengths and interests, and some tests also suggest careers that you may be suited to. Having this information will provide you with a better chance of finding a job you like. There are many free tests online, so give one a try. Getting a head start in considering your future career may help you for the rest of your life. You don’t want to look back in years to come and

say, “I wish I had thought more about what I really wanted to do.”

There are many different kinds of career aptitude tests. Some ask questions about your personal interests and attitudes. Others focus more on asking you to rate different kinds of work scenarios, like working as a librarian or a lawyer. Of course, while completing these sorts of tests, it is very important to be honest—and don’t worry—there are no right or wrong answers.

One popular test asks the participants to grade their preferences for a variety of work tasks. Their answers are then analysed and divided up between six different types of work personalities. The participant is then given a chart showing their score for each type of work personality. The top three scores are used to make a code that indicates the participant’s overall work personality. This code is then used to generate a list of career suggestions.

The career suggestions are also based on your education and experience level, but you can look at higher-level careers as well, which is very useful for high school students. For example, you could look at the basic careers to see what work you might like now, and then look at the more advanced careers so you know what you may like to aim for in the future. This is a great tool to help plan your career and let you know what targets you need to reach to get there.

In conclusion, career aptitude tests are clearly a very useful tool. However, it is important to remember that they are only meant for guidance. The secret to a good career is finding something that you are passionate about. So try a few tests online and start thinking about your future career right now!

1. What’s mainly talked about in the passage?

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------|
| A. Planning your career. | B. Career aptitude tests. |
| C. Different kinds of careers. | D. Career suggestions. |

2. What is the best time to think about your possible careers?

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| A. After you graduate from college. | B. When you are married. |
| C. When you are a college student. | D. When you are at school. |

3. Which scores can be used to make a code that indicates the participant’s overall work personality?

- | | |
|------------------------|--------------------------|
| A. The top six scores. | B. The top three scores. |
| C. The top one score. | D. The top two scores. |

答案:1~3 ADB

单元测试卷(一)

(考查范围:Unit 1 时间:100 分钟 分值:120 分)

I. 阅读理解(共 15 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 37.5 分)

A

Science Books for Kids

To help you choose the perfect books for your children, we've listed four of the best science books for kids. These books are a lot of fun and will satisfy your children's curiosity.

About Time

Long ago, people used the sun, the moon and the water to tell time. Soon after, we began using our knowledge about the natural world to build clocks and to create calendars. Centuries later, we have clocks and calendars. This book tells the amazing story of how it all happened!

Actual Size

Do you know the size of an elephant? What about a tiger or the world's largest parrot? Can you imagine an eye that is bigger than your head? Sometimes facts and figures don't tell the whole story. In this book, the author shows animals both large and small at actual size.

Everything: Rocks and Minerals

Let your child become a geology (地质学) expert as she or he sees eye-catching photos about these colourful rocks. Children will learn some information about rocks through these interesting pictures. They can learn how rocks are formed. It is perfect for kids who love to explore.

If the World Were a Village

This eye-opening book has become an excellent piece of work to know about the world by imagining the world's population as a village of just 100 people. By exploring the lives of the 100 villagers, children will discover that life in other nations is often very different from their own.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章介绍了四本适合孩子们的科学类书籍。

1. What is the book *About Time* mainly about?

- A. The value of time. B. The movement of the sun.
C. The methods of making watches. D. The history of clocks and calendars.

D 细节理解题。根据 **About Time** 部分中的内容可知,这本书主要讲述了时钟和历法的发展史。故选 D。

2. What can we know from the book *Actual Size*?

- A. How smart a parrot is. B. How big an elephant is.
C. How dangerous a tiger is. D. How far human eyes can see.

B 细节理解题。根据 **Actual Size** 部分中的“Do you know the size of an elephant?”可知,在这本书中我们能知道大象有多大。故选 B。

3. Which of the following tells about the way people live in the world?

- A. *About Time*. B. *Actual Size*.
C. *Everything: Rocks and Minerals*. D. *If the World Were a Village*.

D 细节理解题。根据 **If the World Were a Village** 部分中的“By exploring the lives of the 100 villagers, children will discover that life in other nations is often very different from their own.”可知, *If the World Were a Village* 这本书介绍了人们在这个世界上的生活方式。故选 D。

B

Love, success, happiness, family and freedom—how important are these values to you? Here is one interview which explores the fundamental questions in life.

Question: Could you introduce yourself first?

Answer: My name is Misbah, 27 years old. I was born in a war-torn area. Right now I'm a web designer.

Q: What are your great memories?

A: My parents used to take us to hunt birds, climb trees and play in the fields. For me it was like a holiday because we were going to have fun all day long. Those are my great memories.

Q: Does your childhood mean a lot to you?

A: Yes. As life was very hard, I used to work to help bring money in for the family. I spent my childhood working, with responsibilities beyond my age. However, it taught me to deal with problems all alone. I learnt to be independent.

Q: What changes would you like to make in your life?

A: If I could change something in my life, I'd change it so that my childhood could have taken place in another area. I would have loved to live with my family in freedom. Who cares whether we have much money, or whether we have a beautiful house? It doesn't matter as long as I can live with my family and we are safe.

Q: How do you get along with your parents?

A: My parents supported me until I came of age. I want to give back what I've got. That's our way. But I am working in another city. My only contact with my parents now is through the phone, but I hate using it. It filters (过滤) out your emotion and leaves your voice only. My deepest feelings should be passed through sight, hearing and touch.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇采访稿。文章采访了 27 岁的 Misbah。Misbah 艰苦的童年生活让他很早就学会了独立,童年时期他很喜欢大自然,如果重新选择,他希望自己生活在一个和平安全的地方。他现在与父母生活在不同的城市,但他们经常联系。

4. What do we know about Misbah's childhood?

A. He was free from worry.

B. He liked living in the countryside.

C. He was fond of getting close to nature.

D. He often spent holidays with his family.

C 细节理解题。根据“My parents used to take us to hunt birds, climb trees and play in the fields. For me it was like a holiday because we were going to have fun all day long. Those are my great memories.”可知,他的父母曾经带着他们去猎鸟、爬树、在田野里玩耍,这是他最美好的记忆。由此可知,Misbah 童年时喜爱大自然。故选 C。

5. What did Misbah desire most in his childhood?

A. Peace and freedom.

B. A beautiful house.

C. A colourful life.

D. Money for his family.

A 推理判断题。根据“I would have loved to live with my family in freedom. Who cares whether we have much money, or whether we have a beautiful house? It doesn't matter as long as I can live with my family and we are safe.”可推知,Misbah 最向往和平自由的生活。故选 A。

6. How would Misbah prefer to communicate with his parents?

A. By chatting on the Internet.

B. By calling them sometimes.

C. By paying regular visits.

D. By writing them letters.

C 细节理解题。根据“My only contact with my parents now is through the phone, but I hate using it. It filters (过滤) out your emotion and leaves your voice only. My deepest feelings should be passed through sight, hearing and touch.”可知,Misbah 想要的是与父母面对面地交流。故选 C。

7. If there were only one question left, what would it most probably be?

- A. What was your childhood dream? B. What is your biggest achievement?
C. What is your parents' view of you? D. What was your hardest experience in the war?

B 推理判断题。根据“Love, success, happiness, family and freedom...”及全文内容可知,除了 success 没有提到,其他问题在文中都有所涉及,因此接下来最有可能问的就是关于成功的问题。故选 B。

C

I remember waking up early on Saturday mornings when I was 12 to go and see patients with my dad. He volunteered once a month at a health centre in downtown that served the city's Spanish-speaking population. He would bring his own equipment—a lamp and a large machine called an auto-refractor (自动验光仪). There was always a line of people waiting when we arrived. I'd sometimes help with translating, but often my father would ask me to run the auto-refractor, which would give a judgement of the patients' vision.

After completing checks and treatments, my dad would offer a deeply discounted operation on a later date to those who needed it. Besides volunteering, my father was one of the few in the area that accepted people without insurance, despite the risk of losing money. He sometimes came home with a piece of artwork or some food from patients who couldn't pay for their care and instead offered a gift of their talents. He thought all the patients should receive the same care, regardless of their ability to pay.

Volunteering seemed like a task to me at the time. Little did I know that my father was planting the seeds of serving the Spanish-speaking community in my mind and heart. He never forced me to go into medicine, but what I saw through him was that one person can truly make a difference in the world.

It's this type of character of devotion and service that has inspired so many people to apply for medical school every year. I am fortunate that my father has given an example of this in his 40 years as a doctor because it was what he had done that inspired me to dive into this great job. I can only hope that I can be that same type of light for others.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了作者和父亲一起做志愿服务的经历以及父亲对作者的影响和作者的未来期望。

8. What did the author usually do on Saturdays at the age of 12?

- A. He taught Spanish to local people. B. He helped repair medical equipment.
C. He translated paperwork at a health centre. D. He conducted medical visits with his father.

D 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“I remember waking up early on Saturday mornings... with my dad.”可知,作者 12 岁那年,每个周六都会陪父亲出诊。

9. Which of the following can best describe the author's father?

- A. Plain but serious. B. Considerate but strict.
C. Careful and open-minded. D. Generous and warm-hearted.

D 推理判断题。根据第二段的内容可知,作者的父亲是当地为数不多的接收没有保险的病人的医生之一,他认为所有的病人都应该得到同样的照顾,不管他们的支付能力如何。再结合他经常做志愿服务可推知,作者的父亲是个慷慨的、热心肠的人。

10. What can be inferred about the author from Paragraph 3?

- A. He was forbidden to study medicine early. B. He was affected by his father unconsciously.
C. He enjoyed serving Spanish-speaking people. D. He planted the seeds of volunteering in his heart.

B 推理判断题。根据第三段中的“Little did I know that my father was planting the seeds of... make a difference in the world.”可推知,作者在不知不觉中深受自己父亲的影响。

11. How does the author most probably feel about his father's role in his career?

- A. Surprised. B. Skeptical. C. Admirable. D. Concerned.

C 推理判断题。根据最后一段的内容可推知,作者认为自己的父亲所做的事情激励了自己去做志愿服务,作者对父亲非常仰慕。

D

One of the greatest sources of unhappiness, in my experience, is the difficulty we have in accepting things as they are.

When we see something we don't like, we wish it could be different. We cry out for something better. That may be human nature, or perhaps it's something ingrained (根深蒂固的) in our culture. The root of the unhappiness isn't necessarily that we want things to be different. However, it's that we decided we didn't like it in the first place. We've judged it as bad, rather than saying, "It's not bad or good, and it just is it."

In one of my books, I said, "You should expect people to mess up and expect things to go differently with what you planned." Some readers said it's too sorrowful to expect things to go wrong. However, it's only negative if you see it as negative and judge it as bad. Instead, you could accept it as the way the world works and try to understand why that is.

This can be applied to whatever you do: how other people act at work, how politics works and how depressing the news media can be. Accept these things as they are, and try to understand why they're that way. It will save you a lot of sadness, because you'll no longer say, "Oh, I wish bad things didn't happen!"

Does it mean you can never change things? Not at all. But you change things not because you can't accept things as they are, but because you enjoy the process of changing, learning and growing.

Can we make this world a better place? You can say that you'll continue to try to do things to help others, to grow as a person, to make a difference to this world. That's the correct path you choose to take, because you enjoy that path. Therefore, when you find yourself judging and wishing for difference, try a different approach: accept and understand. It might lead to some interesting results.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇议论文。文章指出“接受能让我们的生活更快乐、更美好”。

12. Why do we feel unhappy according to the author?

- A. Because it is our natural emotion in life.
- B. Because culture asks us to be different from others.
- C. Because everyone has their own opinions on things.
- D. Because we dislike something in the beginning.

D 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“The root of the unhappiness... we didn't like it in the first place.”可知,作者认为,我们感到不快乐可能是因为我们一开始就不喜欢某样东西。

13. What does the underlined word “It” in Paragraph 4 refer to?

- A. Acting well at work and in politics.
- B. Feeling depressed for the news media.
- C. Accepting and understanding what has happened.
- D. Saying something negative when bad things come.

C 代词指代题。根据第四段第二句“Accept these things as they are, and try to understand why they're that way.”可知,这里的 It 指的是“接受并理解发生了的事”。

14. What are you advised to do according to the last paragraph?

- A. Help others and make a difference.
- B. Enjoy what you have to do in the work.
- C. Judge yourself and make a wish for yourself.
- D. Try a new way when making the world better.

D 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“Therefore, when you find yourself judging and wishing for difference, try a different approach: accept and understand. It might lead to some interesting results.”可推知,作者在最后一段中建议我们尝试一种新的方式,让世界变得更美好。

15. What is the main theme of the text?

- A. Accepting can make our life happier and better.
- B. Expecting things to be different gives us hope.
- C. Traditional culture becomes the root of unhappiness.
- D. Judging is important to our world.

A 主旨大意题。根据第一段的内容和最后一段中的“try a different approach; accept and understand”可知,本文讲述的是“接受能让我们的生活更快乐、更美好”。

II. 七选五(共 5 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 12.5 分)

Some lucky people are born with artistic talent, while others have to study to become expert in art.

16 Some people just let their creative urges out more easily than others. If the artistic path is calling you, begin the journey with some tiny steps and follow them.

Try a generous selection of different mediums of art. Everyone can be an artist. 17 So, if there's a specific type of art you'd like to learn more about, go for it, and don't be afraid to try other mediums as well. The most basic forms of art are drawing, painting, photography and sculpting.

Do your research and learn the basics. You can read books and articles about the medium(s) you have chosen to focus on. 18 If you feel like you need a little help, you can always improve your research with an art class.

19 Notice how the light changes during the day, how colours affect you, and how an interaction makes you feel. Take the time to become fully aware of your surroundings and let what you see enter your work.

Seek out the opinions of others. Don't be afraid to show your work to people. 20 Maybe you have a hard time drawing hands, or you can't seem to get the handle of a clay mug (杯子) quite right. A second pair of eyes will help you see what makes it work.

- A. Make time for your art every day.
- B. Besides, you can also watch instructional videos.
- C. Ask a few people you trust what they think of your art.
- D. Observe the world around you with the eye of an artist.
- E. You just need to express your creative ideas in a great way.
- F. Whichever path you are on, be aware that everyone is an artist.
- G. One of the best ways to learn is by studying the works of others.

答案:16~20 FEBDC

III. 完形填空(共 15 小题;每小题 1 分,满分 15 分)

When I was 14 years old, I was angry and rebellious (叛逆的), with 21 regard for anything my parents had to say, 22 if it had nothing to do with me. Like so many 23, I struggled to escape from anything that didn't 24 my picture of the world. As a brilliant kid without need of guidance, I refused to accept any obvious 25 of love. In fact, I got 26 at the proposal of the word “love”.

One 27, after an extremely difficult day, I 28 into my room, shut the door loudly and fell down onto my bed heavily. As I lay down in the privacy of my 29, my hands placed under my pillow. There was an envelope and I pulled what was inside out, which read, “To 30 when you're alone.”

31 I was alone, no one would know whether I read it or not. So I opened it. It said, “Mike, I know life is 32 right now, I know you are upset and I know we don't do everything right. I also know that I love you 33 and nothing you do or say will ever change that I am here for you if you ever need to talk. If you don't, that's also 34. Just know that no matter where you go or whatever you do in your life, I will

always love you and be 35 that you are my son. I'm here for you and love you forever. Love you, Mum."

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了14岁的作者一天心情沮丧地回到家,发现枕头底下妈妈给他写的信,信中写道妈妈对他成长过程中的苦恼表示理解,并表达了她对作者无私的爱,令作者非常感动。

- 21.** A. all B. little C. full D. high

B 根据上文的“I was angry and rebellious (叛逆的)”可知,年少的“我”易怒、叛逆,由此可知,“我”对父母的嘱托置之不理。故选 B。

22. A. seldom B. sometimes C. particularly D. currently

C 本句是指“我”对父母的嘱托置之不理,尤其是那些与“我”无关的事情,更是不予考虑。故选 C。

- 23.** A. families B. adults C. people D. teenagers

D 和很多青少年一样,“我”努力摆脱那些世界观和“我”不一致的事情。故选 D。

- 24.** A. hang up B. agree with C. lift up D. deal with

B 本句是指“我”努力摆脱那些世界观和“我”不一致的事情。故选 B。

25. A. offer B. attempt C. request D. advice

A 作为一个不需要指导的聪明孩子,“我”拒绝任何别人主动给“我”的爱。故选 A。

- 26.** A. delighted B. annoyed C. fearful D. cheerful

B 实际上,“我”对于提到爱这个字都感到生气。本句充分说明“我”非常叛逆。故选 B。

- 27.** A. night B. day C. morning D. afternoon

A 根据下文的“after an extremely difficult day”可知,是在度过很艰难的一天之后,那么应该是在“我”回到家后的较晚时间,即晚上。故选 A。

28. A. slipped B. stormed C. sank D. slid

B 本句说明经过艰难的一天之后,“我”的心情很糟糕,所以到家以后“我”冲进自己的房间。故选 B。

29. A. chair B. floor C. closet D. bed

D 根据上文的“fell down onto my bed heavily”可知,“我”躺在床上,那么“我”的床就属于“我”的私人空间。故选 D。

30. A. answer B. seal C. read D. tear

C 根据上文内容可知,这是一个信封,所以这里应该是读信。故选 C。

31. A. Since B. When C. Though D. If

A 既然只有“我”一个人,没人会知道“我”看没看过这封信。于是“我”就打开了信,此处表明作者想看又不想承认看了信的心理。故选 A。

- 32.** A. serious B. awful C. amazing D. exciting

B 根据下文的“I know you are upset and I know we don't do everything right”可知,妈妈理解作者的处境不好、心烦意乱,知道作者现在很疲惫,所以此处是指生活很糟糕。故选 B。

33. A. heavily B. gently C. entirely D. personally

C 副词 entirely“完全地”,表达父母对孩子无私的爱。故选 C。

34. A. impossible B. terrible C. right D. okay

D 上文的“also”一词点出了妈妈措辞的委婉,如果你想聊,那妈妈等你,如果你不想谈话那也没关系。故选 D。

35. A. nervous B. change C. proud D. sure

C 根据上文的“I will always love you”以及全文的语气可知,妈妈对儿子的爱是不求回报的,并且时时以儿子为骄傲。故选 C。

IV. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分 15 分)

Although I **36.** grew (grow) up not in the South, but in northern Wisconsin, there are memories that are

37. the same. We can all think about the past if those memories give **38.** us (we) the strength to live today.

Though today is a present and a gift, the **39. memories** (memory) of our families give us the strength to appreciate this “present”. Those memories of my childhood home, across the street from Grandpa and Grandma’s home, bring memories of **40. eating** (eat) ice cream cones and swinging on the front porch swing and singing country songs **41. happily** (happy). There are memories of my dad reading newspapers and mum wearing her apron and making doughnuts in the kitchen. Pictures of the family all around are just like I have today in my home. My dad was a quiet man, **42. who** never bought or borrowed anything unless he could afford it. My aunt lived in the bedroom upstairs and sang Polish and country songs with me. My brother is remembered **43. as** my childhood friend who played with me in the backyard. These memories are **44. rooted** (root) in my heart and run deep. These memories give me **45. strength** (strong) to carry on the family values. These memories give me a “common” and “solid” ground in my life.

V. 写作(共两节, 满分 40 分)

第一节 应用文写作(满分 15 分)

假设你是李华, 你的美国笔友 Steve 来信说他计划收藏关于中国传统文化的一些有代表性的书籍, 请你推荐两本经典中文启蒙读本(children’s primer)。请根据下表提供的信息, 用英语写一封 80 词左右的回信。

| | | |
|----|--|---|
| 读本 | 《千字文》 <i>Thousand Character Classic</i> | 《三字经》 <i>Three Character Classic</i> |
| 价格 | 12 元 | 18 元 |
| 特点 | 《千字文》全文为四字句, 易诵易记, 在中国有很大影响力。 | 《三字经》全文为三字句, 内容涵盖广。熟读《三字经》, 可知千古事。 |

【参考范文】

Dear Steve,

I’m so pleased to learn that you are collecting some traditional Chinese books. I’d like to recommend the following two popular children’s primers.

The first is called *Thousand Character Classic*, which has a great influence in China and is really a good one for beginners. As each sentence is made up of 4 characters, it’s easy to memorise and recite. The other is *Three Character Classic*. The content of this book covers a wide range of topics. By reading it, you can have a good knowledge of what has happened in the history of China. Of the two, the *Three Character Classic* is a little more expensive, costing 18 yuan, while the *Thousand Character Classic* costs 12 yuan.

Please let me know if you want me to buy the books for you.

Yours sincerely,
Li Hua

第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读材料, 根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段, 使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Molly didn’t understand what there was to celebrate. She looked around as her graduating high school class cheered while standing and tossing their caps high into the air. Molly took her cap off and gripped it tight.

She craned her neck to look at the rain of black and white graduation caps cascading down. Some caps had signatures on them in permanent marker. Some were decorated with glitter and gems. Some had stickers and she noticed one was beautifully hand-painted.

She looked down at her own white cap. White. Blank. Bare. She drew it close to her chest and held on tight. Today was her last chance to see her best friends, after all. Wren had decided to head to the college where her father lived outside of the country. Iris was headed to the college on the other side of the country.

Molly sat down in her chair again. She was stuck in the middle of her graduating class. She couldn't see Iris or Wren at the front of the class. Molly's only friend at the moment was herself.

The ceremony was long over. Molly stood, trying to find some way out of the mess of chairs and people that blocked her in when she noticed Iris and Wren standing at the end of the row she was in. Molly cracked a smile and waved. She parted the chairs in front of her and walked along the seats in that row to get to her friends.

"Can you believe this day has finally arrived?" Iris exclaimed, clapping her hands together and bouncing on her feet. Molly cracked another smile. She still didn't see what there was to celebrate.

Sure, she was excited to go off to college herself. She decided to go to the local community college because she wanted to stay close to home and also because she didn't know what she wanted to do for a career. Both her friends had seemed to already figure that out and Molly felt even more backward.

She wasn't doing anything special—no studying abroad, no living in a new country, no decorations on her graduation cap.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

【参考范文】

Wren took Molly by the hand. "Come here, I want to show you something in my car." She motioned for Molly to join them, which she did. Iris grabbed a bag from the corner and dumped out its contents which were stickers, gems, and permanent markers. Wren took Molly's cap off her head. "I was going to decorate Iris's cap, Iris was going to decorate yours, and we were going to have you decorate mine. But you weren't feeling well last night so Iris and I decorated each other's. Now, we are both going to decorate yours."

Iris grabbed a purple marker, uncapped it and got to work. After just a few minutes, the cap was hard to see the white. They had filled it up so much with so many words. "Iris, Molly, and Wren; Friendship, Love, Laughter... What does all of this mean?" Molly asked. "We wrote all these words down because they describe our friendship perfectly," Wren replied. "And these are all reasons to celebrate," Iris added. There was a moment of silence as Molly thought. Then she started to laugh and the other two chimed in. Today was a good day for a celebration.

单元概览

学习导航

The theme of this unit is humans and self, whose topic is to continuously improve self-awareness and improve self-management ability. This unit uses videos on time management and questionnaires on self-control as an introduction to trigger students to think about the problems of time, social media, etiquette, money, emotional management, etc. faced by high school students, and presents and discusses some effective solutions in a lively and creative form to help students reflect on their daily behaviours, strengthen students' awareness of self-management and continuous self-improvement in the process of growth, and ultimately guide students to establish a positive and optimistic personality and constantly pursue a better self.

学习目标

| 核心素养 | 具体要求 | | |
|------|--|----|---|
| 语言能力 | 语言知识 | 词汇 | 能正确使用与“提升自我”主题相关的单词和词组。 |
| | | 语法 | 恰当使用过去完成时的被动语态描述在过去某个时间或某一动作之前已发生或已完成的动作。 |
| | | 语篇 | 读懂语篇,理解作者意图、课文结构及内在逻辑关系。 |
| | | 语用 | 学习借鉴有效的自我管理方式,深化对主题意义的理解和挖掘。 |
| | 语言技能 | 听 | 听懂采访的核心思想和细节信息,并对其进行提炼和相关讨论。 |
| | | 说 | 在理解课文内容的基础上,用英语阐释自己的观点。 |
| | | 读 | 通过阅读,理解语篇结构并通过思维导图梳理文中的重要信息。 |
| | | 写 | 1. 了解并使用描述自我行为管理等方面的词汇,讨论自己和朋友的行为和品质; 2. 根据故事内容写一篇读后感。 |
| 学习能力 | 能通过恰当运用各种学习策略,在自主学习、合作学习与探究学习的过程中,结合单元所提供的反思性和评价性问题,不断监控、评价、反思和调整自己的学习内容和进程,激发英语学习兴趣,提高分析和解决问题的能力。 | | |
| 文化意识 | 能了解中外文化中关于自我管理的观点和态度,丰富对自我管理的认知,形成正确的人生观、价值观和跨文化意识,并在生活中努力成就更好的自己。 | | |
| 思维品质 | 能理解本单元所学知识,探讨对自我行为的理解和感悟,制订为期三十天的自我提升计划并实施,树立健康积极的人生观,实现知识与思维能力的迁移。 | | |

◦ 必备知识

| | |
|----------|--|
| 必背 单词 | security, switch, motivate, occupy, profile, constantly, towel, access, rely, deadline, appropriate, promote, clarify, district, item, invest, vision, objectively, nail |
| 重点 表达 | be persuaded to do, on reflection, be distracted by, without access to, step away from, vary from... to, switch on, throw in the towel, rely on, max out, in contrast to, in control of, put aside |
| 重点 知识 | 1. it 作形式主语 2. 过去分词(短语)置于句首引起的完全倒装 3. 强调句型 |
| 单元 语法 | 过去完成时的被动语态 |
| 单元 写作 | 读后感 |

探 · 究 · 构 · 建

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas— Comprehending

学习任务目标

1. Be able to say from which aspects to improve yourself and activate existing language and background knowledge.
2. Understand the video and the six suggestions on time management, cultivate the ability to quickly extract key information, and stimulate interest in the topic.
3. Understand and complete the questionnaire, think and analyse the current situation of one's self-control, and trigger preliminary thinking about "self-management".
4. Read the text, experience the experiences and feelings of five peers who have been out of social media for a week, and obtain relevant support information.

○ 自主式预习 ○

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一) 核心词汇

1. security *n.* 安全
2. motivate *v.* 激发, 激励
3. occupy *v.* 占用, 占去(时间)
4. constantly *adv.* 持续不断地; 经常地
5. access *n.* 接触的机会
6. rely *v.* (为生活或生存而) 依赖
7. switch on (用开关) 开, 打开
8. be occupied with 忙于做, 专心于
9. rely on 依靠, 依赖; 相信, 指望
10. on average 平均
11. miss out 错过; 遗漏
12. check out 了解; 检查; 检验
13. on reflection 经再三考虑; 经仔细考虑
14. without access to 享受不到; 不能获得

15. be persuaded to do 被劝说做

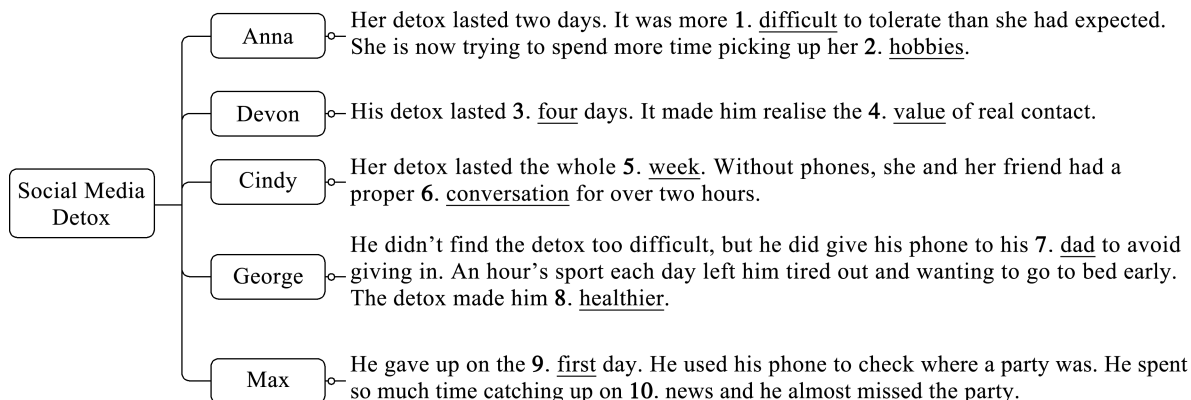
(二) 阅读词汇

1. fundraising *n.* 募捐, 筹款
2. moderator *n.* 主持人
3. profile *n.* 概况
4. detox *n.* 脱瘾
5. be distracted by 被……分心
6. awareness of 意识到
7. be embarrassed to do sth. 不好意思做某事
8. catch up on 得到……消息; 赶上; 弥补
9. throw in the towel 认输
10. step away from 躲避; 离……远点
11. give in 屈服; 让步
12. tire out 使……疲惫不堪
13. other than 除了

任务型课堂

文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text.



文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text.

- What's the purpose of the Social Media Detox?
 - To raise some money.
 - To do an experiment.
 - To follow the trend.
 - To protect students' eyes.
- What has Anna realised now?
 - The detox is more important than anything else.
 - She has wasted too much time checking the phone.
 - She has realised the value of real contact.
 - She almost knows nothing about what she has done.
- Who felt the detox made him/her healthier?
 - Cindy.
 - George.
 - Anna.
 - Max.
- What conclusion can you draw from the facts?
 - The detox is meaningless.
 - The detox encouraged students to try new activities.
 - The detox didn't raise any money.
 - Some students quit using social media for one month.

答案: 1~4 ABBB

语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them.

- Doing the detox meant we had to talk and explain what we were doing and thinking!
[句子分析] 本句是一个主从复合句。其中动词-ing形式短语 Doing the detox 作主语; we had to talk and explain what we were doing and thinking 为宾语从句, 从句中省略了连接词 that; what 引导宾语从句。
[尝试翻译] 参与这次脱瘾活动, 意味着我们不得不互相交流并向对方解释自己的所做所想。
- I knew there was a party happening that evening, but without access to social media I couldn't remember where it was!
[句子分析] 本句是一个由 but 连接的并列复合句。在前面的分句中, there was a party happening that evening 是一个宾语从句, 从句中省略了连接词 that; 在后面的分句中, where 引导宾语从句。
[尝试翻译] 我知道那天晚上有个聚会, 但如果不通过社交媒体的话, 我就想不起来地点在哪里了!

思维品质培养

Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions.

- What do you think of the campaign "Social Media Detox"?
略
- If you were involved in the event, what would you do?
略

Unit 2 课后素养评价(五)

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

I. 阅读理解

One summer day, as I was heading to the teaching building, I heard someone call my name. I turned around and saw Philip, a counselor (顾问) at our admissions office, standing with another young man. Philip introduced me to him, Stephen, and reminded me that Stephen would be taking one of my classes.

Stephen looked at me. With a somewhat painful expression, he asked if my class was going to be hard and if he would be able to pass. I introduced all the things that he would be expected to learn. As we talked, I saw Stephen's eyes getting big with fear.

I told him to do all of his assignments, and to hand them in on time. Rather than being overwhelmed (压倒) by all of the work, I told him the most successful students made a master calendar of all the assignments so they could plan their workload.

As the fall semester went on, I learned more of Stephen's story. It had taken him longer to finish the assignments than most young people. Family members, including his mother, kept reminding him that he was a failure. But he kept at it and didn't take them to heart. He told me that before coming to our college, no one believed he could manage it.

Stephen didn't become an A student. Still, he managed to pass most of his courses by being in class every day, turning in all of his assignments on time and breaking down his studying into bite-sized parts. By passing course after course, he began to gain a measure of self-esteem.

On his graduation day, he walked up to me, and said, "Thank you."

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了作者帮助 Stephen 处理他的学业, Stephen 也脚踏实地一步步地通过一门又一门的考试, 获得了自信。

1. What can we learn about the author according to the passage?

- A. He wouldn't have met Stephen without the introduction of Philip.
- B. He told Stephen how to deal with his studies.
- C. He helped Stephen get an A in his class.
- D. He didn't believe that Stephen could study in college.

B 细节理解题。根据第三段的内容可知, 作者告诉 Stephen 如何应对他的学习。

2. What does the passage mainly tell us about Stephen?

- A. He was an average student but hard-working.
- B. He was an excellent student, but didn't have self-esteem.
- C. He was a little stupid and didn't do well at school.
- D. He was far from a top student because of his failure.

A 细节理解题。根据第四段的内容以及倒数第二段中的“Stephen didn't become an A student. Still, he managed to pass... bite-sized parts.”可知, Stephen 是一个资质一般但很努力的学生。

3. What lesson can we learn from the passage?

- A. A good beginning is half done.
- B. One bite at a time.
- C. Haste makes waste.
- D. Look before you leap.

B 推理判断题。根据倒数第二段中的“Still, he managed to pass most of his courses by being in class every day, turning in... began to gain a measure of self-esteem.”可推知, 文章主要告诉我们做事尤其是学习“要一步一步地, 扎扎实实地”的道理。

4. According to Stephen's questions to the author, what do we know about Stephen?

- A. He wasn't very confident about himself.

- B. He didn't want to attend the author's class.
- C. He would never be an A student.
- D. He couldn't pass the author's exam.

A 推理判断题。根据倒数第二段中的“By passing course after course, he began to gain a measure of self-esteem.”可推知, Stephen 向作者提出的问题表明 Stephen 对自己不是很自信。

II. 七选五

Recently, I've been following a simple rule that is helping me crush procrastination (拖延症) and making it easier for me to stick to good habits at the same time. 1 There are two parts to the 2-Minute Rule...

Part 1—If it takes less than two minutes, then do it now.

2 For example, washing your dishes immediately after your meal, tossing the laundry in the washing machine, taking out the garbage, sending that email, and so on.

If a task takes less than two minutes to complete, then follow the rule and do it right now.

Part 2—When you start a new habit, it should take less than two minutes to do.

Can all of your goals be accomplished in less than two minutes? Obviously not. But, every goal can be started in 2 minutes or less. 3

It might sound like this strategy is too basic for grand life goals, but I beg to differ. The 2-Minute Rule works for big goals as well as small goals because of the inertia (惯性) of life. 4 I love the 2-Minute Rule because it embraces the idea that all sorts of good things happen once you get started. The most important part of any new habit is getting started—not just the first time, but each time. It's not about performance; it's about consistently taking action.

I can't ensure whether or not the 2-Minute Rule will work for you. 5 Anyone can spare the next 120 seconds. Use this time to get one thing done. Go.

- A. I call this little strategy the “2-Minute Rule”.
- B. And that's the purpose behind this little rule.
- C. Here's what you need to know to stop procrastinating.
- D. Once you start doing something, it's easier to continue doing it.
- E. But, I can ensure that it will never work if you never try it.
- F. The goal is to make it easier for you to get started on the things you should be doing.
- G. It's surprising how many things we put off that we could get done in two minutes or less.

答案: 1~5 AGBDE

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas— Language points

学习任务目标

1. Get the main idea of the text and find the benefits of the social media detox.
2. Master the key words and key sentences.
3. Reflect on your own behaviour and current situation based on the context of the text, and form healthy habits.

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. He **switched** the conversation from one subject to another. 改变, 转换
2. A personal **profile** is required before you have a job interview. 概况
3. A **towel** is a piece of thick soft cloth that you use to dry yourself. 毛巾
4. The teenager is in need of a social media **detox**. 脱瘾
5. **Fundraising** is to collect or produce money for a charity to help others. 募捐
6. She also acted as a **moderator** at a UNICEF event last December. 主持人

II. 拓展词汇知变形

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|--|---|
| <u>security</u> <i>n.</i> 安全 | <u>secure</u> <i>adj.</i> 安全的 <i>v.</i> 使安全 |
| <u>motivate</u> <i>v.</i> 激发, 激励 | <u>motivation</u> <i>n.</i> 动机; 动力 |
| <u>occupy</u> <i>v.</i> 占用, 占去 (时间) | <u>occupation</u> <i>n.</i> 占领; 职业 <u>occupied</u> <i>adj.</i> 被占领的; 忙于 |
| <u>distract</u> <i>v.</i> 分散 (注意力), 使分心 | <u>distraction</u> <i>n.</i> 分心; 使人分心的事物 (反) <u>attract</u> <i>v.</i> 吸引; 引来 |
| <u>constantly</u> <i>adv.</i> 持续不断地; 经常地 | <u>constant</u> <i>adj.</i> 不断的; 不变的 |
| <u>access</u> <i>n.</i> 接触的机会 | <u>accessible</u> <i>adj.</i> 可接近的; 可进入的; 可使用的 |
| <u>rely</u> <i>v.</i> (为生活或生存而) 依赖 | <u>reliable</u> <i>adj.</i> 可靠的, 可信赖的 <u>reliability</u> <i>n.</i> 可靠性 |

III. 补全短语

1. give in 屈服; 让步
2. on reflection 经再三考虑; 经仔细考虑
3. be occupied with 从事, 忙于
4. tire out 使……疲惫不堪
5. other than 除了
6. switch on (用开关) 开, 打开
7. throw in the towel 认输
8. rely on 依靠, 依赖; 相信, 指望
9. on average 平均
10. miss out 错过; 遗漏
11. check out 了解; 检查; 检验
12. without access to 享受不到; 不能获得
13. be persuaded to do 被劝说做
14. catch up on 得到……消息; 赶上; 弥补
15. step away from 躲避; 离……远点

IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: more... than...

The detox was more difficult to tolerate than I had expected.

社交媒体脱瘾比我预想得更加难以忍受。

2. 句型公式: what 引导宾语从句

On Monday, my classmate and I spoke about what we did at the weekend—it felt really strange not to already know what he had done.

周一, 我和我的同学谈论了周末各自的活动——我并不知道他做了些什么, 这感觉很奇怪。

3. 句型公式: that 引导定语从句

It made me realise the value of real contact that I had forgotten.

这让我意识到已经遗忘了的真实沟通的重要性。

4. 句型公式: without being done

Without our phones, we had a proper conversation for over two hours, without being

distracted by messages from other people.

没有手机,我们实实在在交谈了两个多小时,没有被其他人的消息干扰。

5. 句型公式: it seems that...

After reading the posts on this forum, it seems

that something other than money has also been raised through the detox.

在阅读了这个论坛上的帖子后,这次活动对人们的影响似乎远远不止通过活动筹集到的钱。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. motivate v. 激发,激励;成为……的动机

[教材原文] I bet you're as eager as I am to find out just how many have been **motivated** enough to last the full seven days!

我相信和你一样,迫切想弄清究竟多少人有足够的动力坚持了整整七天!

[归纳拓展]

(1) motivate sb. to do sth. 激励某人做某事

be motivated by... 受……激励/激发;出于……的动机

(2) motivation n. 动机;动力

motivation for (doing) sth. (做)某事的动机

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① Only after talking to two students did I discover that having strong motivation (motivate) is one of the biggest factors in reaching goals.

② Escape can be a strong motivation for travel.

③ What is most likely to motivate volunteers to continue (continue) their work?

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之申请信)在新的一年里我将**激励自己去实现更高的目标**。

I will motivate myself to achieve higher goals in the new year.

2. occupy v. 占用,占去(时间)

[教材原文] But on reflection, I can see how much of my time had been **occupied** with checking my phone.

但经仔细考虑,我发现自己花在查看手机上的时间太多了。

[归纳拓展]

(1) occupy oneself with sth./in doing sth.

= be occupied with sth./in doing sth.

从事于/忙于做某事

(2) occupation n. 占领;职业

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① It is good manners not to disturb others when they are occupied (occupy) with their work.

② May I have your address, telephone number, age and occupation (occupy), please?

③ He would have attended your birthday party but he occupied himself with a very important experiment.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之人物介绍)她夜以继日地**忙于**科学研究,决心取得突破。

Occupying herself with/Occupied with the scientific research day and night, she was determined to make a breakthrough.

3. access n. 接触的机会;(接近的)方法;通路;可接近性;进入(使用)的权利或机会 v. 使用;进入

[教材原文] I knew there was a party happening that evening, but without **access** to social media I couldn't remember where it was!

我知道那天晚上有个聚会,但如果通过社交媒体的话,我想不起来地点在哪里了!

[归纳拓展]

(1) access to... 去……的通路;利用……的权利

have/get/obtain access to 使用/接近……的权利或机会

(2) accessible *adj.* 可接近的;可进入的;可使用的
be accessible to 易接近的;能进入的

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① Kids shouldn't have access to violent films because kids might imitate the things they see.

② This site gives you instant access to a wide range of information on studying and living in

the UK.

③ The Internet is the biggest source of information in the world, and it's accessible (access) through a computer.

(2) 写作微练

① (应用文写作之发言稿) 在农村地区, 许多孩子仍然无法获得优质的教育资源。(access)

In the rural area, many children still don't have access to quality educational resources.

② (应用文写作之发言稿) 随着科学技术的进步, 越来越多的人可以使用互联网。(accessible)

With the progress of science and technology, the Internet is accessible to more and more people.

4. rely on 依靠, 依赖; 相信, 指望

[教材原文] Awareness of just how much we **rely on** social media can help us step away from it and communicate with each other better.

意识到我们对社交媒体的依赖程度可以帮助我们远离它, 更好地互相沟通。

[归纳拓展]

(1) rely on/upon sb./sth. 指望某人/某事(物)
rely on sb. to do sth. = rely on one's doing sth. 指望/相信/依赖某人做某事

rely on it that... 相信……; 指望……

(2) reliable *adj.* 可靠的, 可信赖的

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① Many people now would rely on the Internet rather than newspapers for news.

② My friend is a reliable (rely) person, and you can turn to him for help.

(2) 写作微练

① (应用文写作之推荐信) 社区依靠志愿者的帮助来改善生活环境。

The community relies on the volunteers' helping/relies on the volunteers to help to improve the living environment.

② (应用文写作之演讲稿) 我们可以相信新技术会给我们的生活带来更多便利。

We can rely on it that the new technology will bring more convenience to our lives.

5. it 作形式主语

[教材原文] After reading the posts on this forum, **it seems that** something other than money has also been raised through the detox.

在阅读了这个论坛上的帖子后, 这次活动对人们的影响似乎远远不止通过活动筹集到的钱。

[归纳拓展]

it 作形式主语的常用句型:

(1) It + 特殊动词 (词组) (seems/appears/turns out/occurs to sb./...) + that 从句

(2) It + be + *adj./n.* (+ for/of sb.) + to do sth.

(3) It be no good/no use/useless/of no use doing sth.

(4) It + takes + (sb.) some time/some money to do sth.

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① Many Westerners who come to China cook much less than in their own countries once they realise how cheap it can be to eat out.

② It is difficult to get (get) there before dark.

③ It was his duty to attend (attend) to this matter.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之建议信) 似乎如今的人们更关心环境问题。

It seems that people nowadays are more concerned about environmental issues.

多义词汇 专练

1. **switch**: A. *v.* (用开关) 改变, 转换 B. *v.* 调班
C. *n.* (电路的) 开关, 闸

① I can't work next weekend—will you **switch** with me? B

② Make sure you turn off the **switch** before plugging in the new appliance. C

③ I need to **switch** my phone to silent mode during the meeting. A

2. It's perfectly possible to get your **message** across without being so angry. B

A. *n.* (书面或口头的) 信息, 消息

B. *n.* (书籍、演讲等) 的要旨, 要点

C. *n.* 电邮(或手机)信息

Unit 2 课后素养评价 (六)

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points

I. 单句语法填空

1. With more money raised (raise), the project will be scheduled and completed two weeks earlier.
2. Parents find it difficult for some children to resist (resist) temptations such as playing computer games.
3. She runs on average about 15 miles a day, whatever the weather.
4. There are a total of 138 children and their parents taking part in the study about how to control oneself.
5. It's reported that many hotels fail to meet (meet) minimum standards of cleanliness.
6. I didn't do it very well, but, if anything, he did it worse than I did.
7. He couldn't resist showing (show) off his new car which cost ten thousand dollars.

II. 短语填空

rely on; throw in the towel; be occupied with; be up to; on reflection; check out; other than; catch up with

1. On reflection, I found I made a mistake and misunderstood my friend.
2. —I have been considering cancelling the project because it seems hard to go further.
—But it's too early to throw in the towel. There is still much time left.
3. My mother was up to cooking supper when I came back home.
4. When the teacher came in, the students were occupied with their homework.
5. Eventually your child will leave home to lead her own life, but in the meantime she relies on your support.
6. By studying hard I caught up with the others of the class and made rapid progress.

7. Check out an article written about him in the *San Francisco Examiner* by clicking on the link below.
8. I don't know any French people there other than you.

III. 完成句子

1. It seems that his father will lose his temper.
看起来他的爸爸就要发脾气了。
2. With his attention distracted constantly by the loud noise, he couldn't concentrate on his work.
随着巨大的噪音不断地分散他的注意力,他不能集中注意力于工作之中。
3. The stubborn man is difficult to communicate with.
这个固执的人很难交流。
4. In the end, his sister did persuade him to make full use of the chance to study English.
最后,他的姐姐确实说服他充分利用这个机会来学习英语。
5. You have to bargain with the locals to get better prices to buy what you need.
你不得不与当地人讨价还价来以更低的价格买到你所需要的东西。

IV. 完形填空

Wednesday comes, and along with it is my first drum lesson. Mike, the drum teacher, 1 me to a room where there are two drum sets, and he tells me to 2 at the one closer to the door.

People make me 3. That's the way I have always been. But Mike has a very calm manner, which 4 me lightly. Not only does he not tell me that I, a fifty-year-old mum of three, am the 5 person to play the drums, but he 6 me for how well I follow along with him. After my first lesson, I 7 as much as I can and notice a rapid 8 in my skill.

I am a quiet person, so it seems 9 for me to learn drumming. But I become so 10 on drums that it is 11 my expression of who I am comes out with every beat and rhythm (节奏). I am not nervous, shy and quiet. I am a 12.

As the weeks turn into months of 13, Mike convinces me to play with others at a jam. When walking up on the stage, I breathe 14. The guitarist starts playing and soon I join in. What a rush I feel when we finish, and everyone is clapping and 15 for us. I did it!

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者虽然是三个孩子的母亲,已经 50 岁了,但她还是去学习打鼓,并且十分专注和勤奋。

1. A. leads B. forces
C. urges D. exposes
A 根据下文的“me to a room”并结合作者学习打鼓的事实可知,此处指老师把作者带到一个房间,应用动词 lead。
2. A. laugh B. jump
C. sit D. stare
C 根据上文的“where there are two drum sets, and he tells me to”以及常识可知,打鼓需要坐下来(sit)。
3. A. friendly B. proud
C. envious D. nervous
D 根据下文提到 Mike 冷静的态度让作者放松和表示转折的“But”可知,人们让作者紧张(nervous)。
4. A. reminds B. relaxes
C. confuses D. scares
B 根据上文的“But Mike has a very calm manner...”可知, Mike 冷静的态度让作者放松(relaxes)。
5. A. similar B. valuable
C. modern D. wrong
D 根据上文的“I, a fifty-year-old mum of three”可知,作者认为自己年纪大了,但是老师没有告诉作者她不适合(wrong)打鼓。
6. A. praises B. visits
C. contacts D. forgives
A 根据下文的“me for how well I follow along with him”可知,老师夸奖(praises)作者跟得很好。

7. A. change B. practise
C. spend D. consider
B 根据下文的“as much as I can and notice a rapid”可知,作者的技能提升了,说明作者尽可能多地练习(practise)了。
8. A. response B. recovery
C. assessment D. improvement
D 根据上文的“as much as I can and notice a rapid”可知,作者练习得很勤奋,所以技能迅速提升(improvement)。
9. A. natural B. unusual
C. informal D. conventional
B 根据上文的“I am a quiet person...”可知,作者是个安静的人,所以她去学打鼓是不寻常的(unusual)。
10. A. educated B. popular
C. focused D. dependent
C 根据下文的“with every beat and rhythm (节奏)”可知,作者专注于(focused)每一个节拍和节奏。
11. A. as if B. even though
C. unless D. because
A 根据下文的“I am not nervous, shy and quiet.”可知,鼓点的节奏好像(as if)表达了真实的作者,她并不是一个紧张、害羞、安静的人。
12. A. teacher B. judge
C. drummer D. singer
C 根据上文的“for me to learn drumming”可知,作者学习打鼓,如今是鼓手(drummer)。
13. A. waiting B. playing
C. guessing D. hiding
B 根据下文的“The guitarist starts playing and soon I join in.”可知,此处指打鼓,应用动词 play。
14. A. unwillingly B. indirectly
C. occasionally D. deeply
D 根据上文的“When walking up on the stage, I breathe...”可知,作者要演奏了,所以深(deeply)呼吸来缓解紧张情绪。
15. A. preparing B. struggling
C. cheering D. arguing
C 根据上文的“everyone is clapping and”可知,演出成功,每个人都在为他们鼓掌和欢呼(cheering)。

Section Ⅲ Using language

学习任务目标

- 1. Be familiar with and use the past perfect passive.
- 2. Master and use the signs that express civilised behaviour.
- 3. Understand and pay attention to the significance of promoting values education in schools.
- 4. Develop effective solutions in promoting values education.

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- 1. The **deadline** for applications is this Friday.
截止时间
- 2. On the wall of the grand hall was a striking sign, saying “No **spitting!**”
吐口水,吐唾沫
- 3. He hates delay and **procrastination** in all its forms.
拖延
- 4. When you put on these **headphones**, you will feel very quiet around.
(头戴式)耳机
- 5. A UK company invented a “smart **bin**” to help with waste sorting.
垃圾箱

II. 拓展词汇知变形

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| <u>considerate</u> <i>adj.</i> 替他人着想的 | <u>consider</u> <i>v.</i> 仔细考虑;顾及;认为 <u>consideration</u> <i>n.</i> 仔细考虑;顾及 |
| <u>promote</u> <i>v.</i> 促进,增进;提升,晋升 | <u>promotion</u> <i>n.</i> 提升;晋级;促进 |
| <u>clarify</u> <i>v.</i> 澄清,讲清楚,阐明 | <u>clarification</u> <i>n.</i> 澄清,说明;净化 |

III. 补全短语

- 1. be appropriate for 对……适合
- 2. be considerate of sb. 体谅某人
- 3. get involved in 参与……;卷入……中
- 4. put off 推迟,延期
- 5. be careless about 对……不在意

- 6. in turn 反过来;转而
- 7. work out 解决(问题);找到解决办法;制定出
- 8. turn over 翻转;翻身;仔细考虑;移交
- 9. come up with 提出;想出
- 10. hand in 交上;递交

IV. 补全句子

- 1. 句型公式:so that 引导目的状语从句
Indeed, I would deliberately “lose” my homework in my incredibly messy room, so that I could put off doing it!
事实上,我会故意把我的家庭作业“丢”在我非常杂乱的房间里,这样我就可以推迟做家庭作业了!
- 2. 句型公式:had been done
... one day I came home to find that my room had been cleaned, and my homework had been put right in the centre of a spotlessly clean desk!
……一天,我回到家发现我的房间已经被打扫过了,而且我的家庭作业恰好被放在一个一尘不染的、干干净净的书桌中间!
- 3. 句型公式:It’s+*adj.*+to do sth.
Students generally expressed that it’s good to feel trusted and they quite enjoyed the relaxed atmosphere in the examination.
学生们普遍表示感到被信任是好的,而且他们十分享受考试中的这种轻松的氛围。
- 4. 句型公式:what 引导表语从句
This is what his room looked like yesterday morning.
这就是昨天早上他的房间的样子。

任务型课堂

1. considerate *adj.* 替他人着想的

[教材原文] I'd politely remind them it's not permitted, and that they should be **considerate** of others.

我会礼貌地提醒他们那是被不允许的,而且他们应该为别人着想。

[归纳拓展]

(1) be considerate of/to/towards sb. 对某人体贴
It is considerate of sb. to do sth. 某人做某事考虑周到。

(2) consider *v.* 仔细考虑;顾及;认为
consider doing sth. 考虑做某事
consider sb./sth. as/to be... 认为某人/某物(是)……

(3) considerable *adj.* 相当多的;相当大的

(4) consideration *n.* 仔细考虑;顾及
take... into consideration 考虑到;顾及……

(5) considering *prep.* 考虑到;鉴于

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① It wasn't very considerate (consider) of you to drink all the milk.

② I'm considering changing (change) my job.

③ John never showed any consideration (consider) for his mother's feelings.

④ I hear he is more than 70, but he is still very strong, considering (consider) his age.

⑤ Her works have a considerable (consider) influence on many writers.

(2) 写作微练

(读后续写之心理描写) 在这个寒冷的早晨,他给我带了一杯热咖啡,真是太体贴了。

It is really considerate of him to bring me a cup of hot coffee on this cold morning.

2. promote *v.* 促进,增进;提升;晋升

[教材原文] How to **promote** values education.
如何促进价值观教育。

[归纳拓展]

(1) promote sb. (from sth.) to sth. 把某人(从某职位)提升到某职位/升入……

(2) promotion *n.* 提升;晋级;促进

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① "Once I get a promotion (promote), I'll be happy," he thinks.

② While waiting for the opportunity to get promoted (promote), Henry did his best to perform his duty.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之环境保护) 使用可再生能源的意识 **必须被提高** 以保护环境。

The awareness of using renewable energy must be promoted to protect the environment.

3. 过去分词(短语)置于句首引起的完全倒装

[教材原文] **Printed on each umbrella was** a short statement about honesty and other values.

每把伞上都印有关于诚实或别的价值观的简短声明。

[归纳拓展]

完全倒装的条件:

(1) 表示地点、方位或时间的副词,如 here, there, in, out, up, down, away, now, then 等以及介词短语,如 in front of, at the foot of 等位于句首时,句子使用完全倒装。此时谓语动词一般为 be 动词或 lie, come, go, stand 等动词,且句子的主语为名词。

(2) 当表语是分词、副词、形容词,主语比较长且主语是名词时,为了保持平衡或强调表语,常把表语放在句首,句子使用完全倒装。句型结构:分词/副词/形容词+be+主语。

(3) 如果句子的主语为代词,主谓不倒装。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① In the middle of the woods lies (lie) a deep lake, where you can find various fishes.

② Look! There comes (come) the taxi. Hurry up!

③ On one wall of the classroom were written (write) two words "Forget Yourself".

(2) 写作微练

(读后续写之环境描写) 公园里 **矗立着** 高大的树木, 为游客提供阴凉和遮蔽。

In the park stand tall trees, providing shade and shelter for the visitors.

语法研习课

过去完成时的被动语态

语法感知

① At the start of the detox, over 100 students **had been persuaded** to stop using social media, in ANY form, for seven days.

② They **had been promised** money by family and friends for each day spent without using social media.

③ The detox was more difficult to tolerate than I **had expected**.

④ But on reflection, I can see how much of my time **had been occupied** with checking my phone.

⑤ After reading the posts on this forum, it seems that something other than money **has also been raised** through the detox.

以上句子中,句子①②④都是过去完成时的被动语态;其结构为“**had been + 过去分词**”;句子③的时态是过去完成时;句子⑤用的是现在完成时的被动语态。

语法精讲

一、理解概念

过去完成时的被动语态表示在过去某一时刻或某一动作之前已经发生或完成的动作,且主语与谓语动词之间是被动关系,句中常用 by, before, until, when 等词引导时间状语。

二、基本结构

1. 肯定句结构:主语 + **had been done** + 其他成分。

Five new buildings **had been built** by the end of last year.

截至去年年底,已经有五座新楼建成了。

2. 否定句结构:主语 + **had not been done** + 其他成分。

The classroom **had not been cleaned** before the teacher came.

在老师来之前,教室还没有被打扫干净。

3. 疑问句结构:Had + 主语 + **been done** + 其他成分?

Had many buildings **been destroyed** before the hurricane ended?

在飓风结束之前,许多建筑物被摧毁了吗?

三、基本用法

1. 表示过去某一时间以前已经完成的动作,常与 by, before 等引导的时间状语连用。

By the time he got to school, the first period **had been finished**.

当他到达学校的时候,第一节课已经结束了。

Had the new plan **been discussed** before the meeting?

这个新计划在会议之前被讨论过吗?

2. 在 told, said, knew, heard, thought, reminded, reported 等动词之后的宾语从句中,若表示过去的某一被动动作时,时态用过去完成时。

They said the production costs **had been reduced**.

他们说生产成本已经被降低了。

The boy was reminded that his homework **had not been handed in**.

这个男孩被提醒他的家庭作业还没交。

3. 根据语意可以判断出动作先后的被动语态,时态用过去完成时。

He did what he **had been told** to.

他按照之前被告知的那样去做。

名师点拨

当从句由 after, before, when 或 as soon as 引导时,主句和从句都可以用一般过去时。

When he **arrived**, he **called** her.

They **locked** the door before they **left**.

语法冲关

I. 单句语法填空

1. She told us that the meeting had been cancelled (cancel).

2. By the end of last year, 10,000 trees had been planted (plant) in that village.

3. —How was the journey?
—Tiring! I caught the train at the last second but all the seats had been occupied (occupy). I stood all the way.

4. John had to have his car repaired in a garage because it had been damaged (damage) seriously.

5. He found that his wallet had been stolen (steal) on the bus.

6. That was the first time I had been caught (catch) alone at home, bored to death.

7. Even though she had been rushed (rush) to the hospital without delay, she wasn't saved.

8. He had been told (tell) many times, but he still couldn't understand it.

II. 完成句子

1. The police found that the house had been broken into and a lot of things had been stolen.

警察发现房子被人闯入,很多东西被偷了。

2. Had the bus already left by the time you got there?

你到达那儿的时候公共汽车已经开走了吗?

Unit 2 课后素养评价 (七)

Section III Using language

I. 词语填空

appropriate; deadline; considerate; promote; clarify; hand in; put off; to begin with; in turn; work out

- It was considerate of Michael to inform us of his delay in case we got worried.
- He chose the movie because it seemed appropriate.
- Life will be easier when I get promoted.
- Question-and-answer periods are a great way to clarify the message and strengthen key points.
- Setting a deadline for each task can definitely help improve your efficiency.
- To begin with, you must work hard at your lessons and be fully prepared before the exam.
- I couldn't work out where the music was coming from.
- She handed in a brief report of the incident and then left quickly.
- Increased production will, in turn, lead to increased profits.
- We put off the picnic in the park until next week, when the weather may be better.

II. 单句语法填空

- We should learn to express our opinions appropriately (appropriate).
- By the time I arrived at the party, the cake had been eaten (eat).
- It's likely that the conference will be put (put) off because of the weather.
- And that's really what makes the whole journey so much fun.

- You should go a long way with your friend to work out a solution rather than quarrel with each other.
- When the group discussion is nearing its end, be sure to conclude (conclude) it with important points.
- To our joy, the day came when we could go back to study with the teachers and classmates.
- Much to the satisfaction of the teacher, all the reports had been handed (hand) in ahead of the deadline he made.
- All the cakes had been sold (sell) out when I arrived at the store.
- Gone (go) are the days when I play with my friends in the wild field.

III. 阅读理解

Alice Moore is a teenager entrepreneur (创业者), who in May 2015 set up her business AilieCandy. By the time she was 13, her company was worth millions of dollars with the invention of a super-sweet treat that could save kids' teeth, instead of destroying them.

It all began when Moore visited a bank with her dad. On the outing, she was offered a candy bar. However, her dad reminded her that sugary treats were bad for her teeth. But Moore was sick of missing out on candies. So she desired to get round the warning, "Why can't I make a healthy candy that's good for my teeth so that my parents can't say no to it?" With that in mind, Moore asked her dad if she could start her own candy company. He recommended that she do some research and talk to dentists about what a healthier candy would contain.

With her dad's permission, she spent the next two years researching online and conducting trials to get a recipe that was both tasty and tooth-friendly. She also approached dentists to learn more about teeth cleaning. Consequently, she succeeded in making a kind of candy only using natural sweeteners, which can reduce oral bacteria.

Moore then used her savings to get her business off the ground. Afterwards, she and her father secured their first business meeting with a supermarket owner, who finally agreed to sell Moore's product—CanCandy.

As CanCandy's success grows, so does Moore's credibility as a young entrepreneur. Moore is enthusiastic about the candy she created, and she's also positive about what the future might bring. She hopes that every kid can have a clean mouth and a broad smile.

Meanwhile, with her parents' help, Moore is generally able to live a normal teenage life. Although she founded her company early on in life, she wasn't driven primarily by profit. Moore wants to use her unique talent to help others find their smiles. She donates 10% of AilieCandy's profits to Big Smiles. With her talent and determination, it appears that the sky could be the limit for Alice Moore.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了一个年轻有为的创业者 Alice Moore 的故事。该故事告诉我们:积极的思考和行动会带来成功。

1. How did Moore react to her dad's warning?

- A. She argued with him.
- B. She tried to find a way out.
- C. She paid no attention.
- D. She chose to consult dentists.

B 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“*But Moore was sick of missing out on candies. So she desired*

to get round the warning, 'Why can't I make a healthy candy that's good for my teeth so that my parents can't say no to it?'”及下文她最终制作出了叫 CanCandy 的糖果可知,对于父亲的警告她的反应是:她试图找到一条出路,解决问题。故选 B。

2. What is special about CanCandy?

- A. It is beneficial to dental health.
- B. It is free of sweeteners.
- C. It is sweeter than other candies.
- D. It is produced according to a dentists' recipe.

A 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“*Consequently, she succeeded in making a kind of candy only using natural sweeteners, which can reduce oral bacteria.*”可知,这种糖只使用天然甜味剂,可以减少口腔细菌,因此它对牙齿有益。故选 A。

3. What does Moore expect from her business?

- A. To earn more money.
- B. To help others find smiles.
- C. To make herself stand out.
- D. To beat other candy companies.

B 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的“*Moore wants to use her unique talent to help others find their smiles.*”可知,Moore 想用她独特的才能帮助其他人找到自己的笑容。故选 B。

4. What can we learn from Alice Moore's story?

- A. Fame is a great thirst of the young.
- B. A youth is to be regarded with respect.
- C. Positive thinking and action result in success.
- D. Success means getting personal desires satisfied.

C 推理判断题。文章主要讲述了 Moore 的创业故事,她之所以能成功是因为面对问题和困难时,她乐观地看待问题,积极地想办法去解决问题。因此,通过她的故事,我们懂得积极的思考和行动会带来成功。故选 C。

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

学习任务目标

1. Get the main idea of the text and understand the title clearly.
2. Acquire the detailed information of the method of 4 jars.
3. Illustrate the opinion logically and give supporting examples.
4. Write a text about the reflection after reading the story.

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. Convenient transportation is available to people from nearly every **district**. 地区, 区域
2. The store is having a sale on furniture and household **items**. 商品, 物品
3. He had a clear **vision** of how he hoped the company would develop. 设想
4. I knocked a **nail** into the wall to hang the picture. 钉子
5. Did you see the **headlines** in the paper this morning? 媒体报道的热门话题

II. 拓展词汇知变形

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| <u>equip</u> <i>v.</i> 使有知识和技能, 使能够胜任 | equipment <i>n.</i> 设备; 装备 |
| <u>necessity</u> <i>n.</i> 必需品 | necessary <i>adj.</i> 必需的 necessarily <i>adv.</i> 必然地 |
| <u>invest</u> <i>v.</i> 投资 | investment <i>n.</i> 投资 investor <i>n.</i> 投资者 |
| <u>objectively</u> <i>adv.</i> 客观地 | object <i>n.</i> 物体; 目标 objective <i>adj.</i> 客观的 |

III. 补全短语

1. in contrast to 与……形成对比
2. be faced with 面临, 面对
3. vary from... to ... 从……到……变化
4. with the help of 在……的帮助下
5. in control of 控制
6. have access to 有机会使用; 接近……
7. be responsible for 对……负责

8. put aside 把……放在一边; 储存……备用

9. pass by 经过; 走过

10. the here and now 此时此地

11. max out (钱)花光; (信用卡)刷爆

12. pull out 拔出; 渡过难关

13. in anger 生气地, 愤怒地

IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: whether 引导让步状语从句

Whether you want to help out a friend, give money to an animal charity or to children in another country, it's your money to give to whatever cause you believe in.

无论你是想要接济朋友, 为动物慈善机构捐款, 还是捐助另一个国家的孩子, 这都是你的钱, 你可以把它捐给任何你相信的事业。

2. 句型公式: 强调句型

It was from then on that his grandchildren started to be in control of what to do with the money they receive: spend, save, invest or give?

正是从那时起, 他的孙子孙女们就开始自己掌控如何处理所得的钱: 用于消费、储蓄、投资还是给予他人?

3. 句型公式: not only... but (also)...

The Investing jar not only represents a vision for the future, but gives the opportunity to build for the future.

投资罐子不仅代表着对未来的愿景, 还为未来的发展提供了机会。

4. 句型公式: every time 引导时间状语从句

His father gave him a bag of nails and told him that every time he lost his temper, he must hammer a nail into the back of the fence.

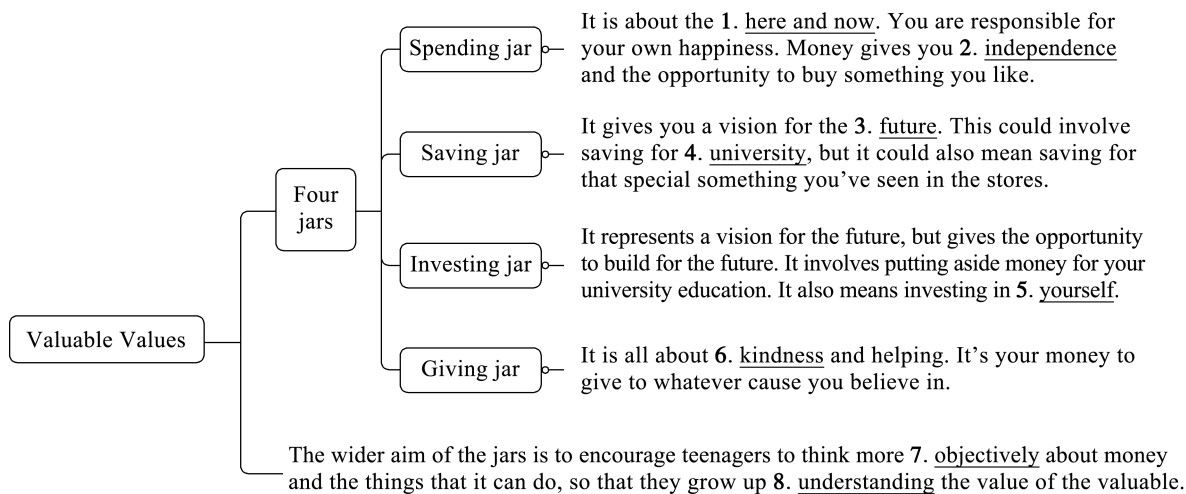
他的父亲给了他一包钉子, 并告诉他, 每次他发脾气的时候, 他必须在篱笆的后面钉一颗钉子。

任务型课堂

Part 1 课文理解

文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text.



文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text.

- Why did Jerry give four jars to his grandchildren as their birthday presents?
 - To express his love.
 - To help them learn lifelong values.
 - To warn them not to waste money.
 - To tell them money is the most important.
- What were “Kare Bags” made for?
 - The homeless people.
 - The people out of work.
 - The people suffering disasters.
 - The old people who have no children.
- Which jars are related to the future?
 - The Spending jar and the Saving jar.
 - The Spending jar and the Giving jar.
 - The Saving jar and the Investing jar.
 - The Saving jar and the Giving jar.

答案: 1~3 BAC

语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them.

- For those who have no access to courses, help might be at hand thanks to Jerry Witkovsky and his method of using four jars to teach teenagers

how to spend their money wisely.

[句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句。其中 who 引导定语从句,修饰代词 those;不定式短语 to teach teenagers 作目的状语;how to spend their money wisely 作动词 teach 的宾语。

[尝试翻译]对于那些无法接触理财课程的人来说,多亏杰里·维特科夫斯基和他的理财方法——他用四个罐子教青少年如何智慧理财。

- Whether you want to help out a friend, give money to an animal charity or to children in another country, it's your money to give to whatever cause you believe in.

[句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句。Whether... or... 引导让步状语从句;whatever 引导宾语从句。

[尝试翻译]无论你是想要接济朋友,为动物慈善机构捐款,还是捐助另一个国家的孩子,这都是你的钱,你可以把它捐给任何你相信的事业。

思维品质培养

Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions.

- After reading the text, do you think the Saving jar is the most important? Why or why not?
略
- In the future, how will you improve your spending habits?
略

Part 2 语言梳理

1. be faced with 面临, 面对

[教材原文] Each, however, **is faced with** the same question: what to do with their money?

然而, 每个人都面临着同样的问题: 如何处理他们的钱?

[归纳拓展]

(1) face up to 勇敢面对

(2) make a face 做鬼脸

face to face 面对面

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① Faced (face) with so much trouble, he didn't know what to do.

② When I am faced with a difficulty in my study, I usually choose to refer to relevant learning materials or web pages.

(2) 写作微练

(读后续写之情节描写) 他们**面对面**坐着, 就他们未来的计划进行了一次坦诚的交谈。

They sat face to face, having a heart-to-heart conversation about their future plans.

2. contrast v. 形成对比 n. 对比; 对照

[教材原文] In **contrast** to these big spenders, there are also teens that prove age is no barrier to making good use of money.

与这些花钱大手大脚的人相比, 也有一些青少年证明了年龄(小)并非善于利用金钱的障碍。

[归纳拓展]

(1) in contrast to = in contrast with 与……对比; 与……相反

by/in contrast 相反; 相比之下; 与此相反

(2) contrast... with... 把……与……作对比

contrast with 与……形成对比/对照

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① (2023 · 新课标 II 卷) And in contrast to our increasingly networked lives where the information we consume is monitored and tracked, a printed book still offers the chance of a wholly private, “off-line” activity.

② The poet's hard life contrasts with his sensitive poetry.

(2) 写作微练

① (应用文写作之建议信) **相比之下**, 新车型更加节能和环保。

By/In contrast, the new model is more energy-efficient and environmentally friendly.

② (读后续写之外貌描写) 在这样的背景下, 他的白发与他黝黑的皮肤**形成了鲜明的对比**。

In such a background, his white hair was particularly in contrast to/with his dark skin.

3. independence n. 独立

[教材原文] Money gives you **independence** and the opportunity to buy something you like.

金钱让你独立, 并给你购买自己所爱之物的机会。

[归纳拓展]

(1) depend v. 指望, 依赖

depend on 依靠, 依赖; 取决于(条件、情况)

depend on/upon it that... 相信/指望……

depend on sb. to do sth. 依靠/指望某人做某事

It (just/all) depends. 视情况而定。

(2) dependence n. 依赖, 依靠

(3) dependent adj. 依靠的, 依赖的

be dependent on 取决于

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① I know we can depend on her to deal (deal) with the tough situation.

② Don't worry. You can depend on it that he'll turn up on time. He always keeps his promise.

③ Our relationship was based on mutual dependence (dependent).

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之演讲稿) **正是独立**给予我们勇气去追求梦想, 按照自己的方式生活。

It is independence that gives us the courage to pursue our dreams and live life on our own terms.

4. 强调句型

[教材原文] **It was from then on that** his grandchildren started to be in control of what to do with the money they receive: spend, save, invest or give?

正是从那时起, 他的孙子孙女们就开始自己掌控如何处理所得的钱: 用于消费、储蓄、投资还是给予他人?

[句式分析] 句中 It was from then on that... 为强调句型。

[归纳拓展]

(1) 强调句型的基本结构: It is/was + 被强调的部分 + that/who + 其他成分。

(2)强调句型的一般疑问句结构: Is/Was+it+被强调的部分+that/who+其他成分?

(3)强调句型的特殊疑问句结构: 特殊疑问词+is/was+it+that+其他成分?

(4)not... until 的强调句型结构: It is/was not until... +that+其他成分.

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①It was in the lake that the villagers found some strange creatures that they hadn't seen before.

②It was in Beihai Park where they made a date for the first time that the old couple told us their love story.

(2)写作微练

(读后续写之心理描写)直到她获得了这个奖项,她才真正相信自己的能力。

It was not until she received the award that she truly believed in her own abilities.

多义词汇 专练

1. The course is designed to **equip** students for a career in nursing. B

A. v. 配备, 装备

B. v. 使有能力

2. **nail**: A. n. 钉子

B. n. 指甲

C. v. 钉牢, 固定

D. v. 获得, 赢得

①She **nailed** the top score on the exam after months of dedicated studying. D

②He nervously bit his **nails** while waiting for the exam results. B

③He used a hammer to drive the **nail** into the wooden board. A

④The sign was **nailed** to the tree to mark the trail. C

Unit 2 课后素养评价 (八)

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

I. 单词拼写

- It is interesting to contrast (对比) our legal system with theirs.
- We equip (使有知识和技能) students with the skills they will need once they leave college.
- I intend to go to the supermarket to buy some necessities (必需品) this weekend.
- The man refused to answer questions about his personal finances (财务状况).
- A good headline (标题) on the paper can give a rough idea about the news.
- I drove around the business district (区域), enjoying the rapidly changing shop windows.
- As he couldn't go shopping with her, he wrote a list of items (物品) needed to buy for her.
- I have a vision (构想) of a society that is free of exploitation (剥削) and injustice.

II. 单句语法填空

- In contrast to drinking milk directly, eating more milk products such as yogurt and cheese might

lead to lower death rates.

- It is really an expensive investment (invest) but it will benefit the company in the long run.
- Your role as editor is important, for you can look at a piece of writing objectively (objective).
- To compete more effectively with others, more and more people equip themselves with a higher education.
- A good teacher encourages independence (depend) of thought.

III. 短语填空

max out; put aside; have no access to; help out; in control of; be responsible for; vary from... to; with the help of

- The students in the remote mountain villages have no access to advanced labs.
- The children should be taught to be in control of what to do with their pocket money.
- Information gathering has been made easier with the help of the Internet.

4. I wonder how you maxed out all the money in such a short time.
5. Teaching methods vary greatly from school to school.
6. It means we need to put aside our differences to do what's right for the country.
7. Faced with the financial crisis, our company needs some investors to help out.
8. Who should be responsible for the traffic accident, the driver or the cyclist?

IV. 完成句子

1. Thanks to the sports meeting, not only did I win friendships, but I also won the honour.
多亏了运动会,我不仅赢得了友谊,还赢得了荣誉。
2. His public statements have always been in contrast to those of his son.
他在公共场合的发言总是和他儿子的话截然不同。
3. It's what you do rather than what you say that matters.
重要的是你做了什么,而不是你说了什么。
4. Whether she wins or loses, this is her last chance.
不管是赢是输,这都是她的最后一次机会。
5. While/Though/Although I am willing to help, I do not have much time available.
尽管我愿意帮忙,但我没有多少空闲时间。
6. He finds himself faced with a whole new situation.
他发现自己面对着一个全新的局面。

V. 语法填空

Students at a primary school in Hangzhou had their first class **1. on** March 1st on movable type. This is **2. an** ancient Chinese printing system.

The primary school in Zhejiang Province has introduced the course in the new term. An expert in Chinese character culture has been invited to the campus, **3. whose** major responsibility is to teach students how **4. to use** (use) the ancient printing technology. Students attend lectures on the history of movable type along with **5. interesting** (interest) classes on typesetting and printing. They then print their own document, **6. applying** (apply) the

knowledge they've learned. One student printed her **7. newly** (new) written essay about whether the traditional red envelopes kids receive belong to them or their parents.

8. Known (know) as one of the four great inventions of ancient China, movable type printing **9. was invented** (invent) by Bi Sheng in the 1040s during the Song Dynasty, and it is the world's first system of movable type printing.

The school said the course is aimed at improving the students' awareness of Chinese characters and their **10. appreciation** (appreciate) of Chinese culture.

VI. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

在成长的过程中,我们总是对未来从事的职业充满憧憬,你班将以“My Dream Career”为题举办一场演讲比赛。请你根据以下要求写一篇英语演讲稿,要点如下:

1. 你的理想职业;
2. 选择的理由;
3. 实现的途径。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数;

3. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

【参考范文】

My Dream Career

Good morning, everyone! I feel greatly honoured to give you the speech on a career I will take up in the future. My dream career is to be a doctor. As a child, I hoped that I could grow up as soon as possible so that I could devote myself to saving lives. Not only can doctors save people's lives but also they are doing a respectable job. Doctors can also help people to live a better life with their professional knowledge. In addition, it's a well-paid job.

As far as I'm concerned, it is not easy to be a good doctor. Only by working hard can I acquire the qualifications and serve the people heart and soul.

That's all. Thank you for listening.

第二节 读后续写

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

During the early 1980s, I was a sales manager for a large training company. One of my responsibilities was to train people in how to sell.

My mother went on to demonstrate that by not making excuses. She lived near me for nearly 30 years, who has just had a third-grade education. The population in our area grew sufficiently and the committee members thought about building a new church in our neighbourhood. They decided to raise the initial capital by selling lottery (彩票) tickets. My mother jumped at the chance to participate. She had no formal training in the art of selling, but that never entered her mind. Her plan was simple: talk to as many people as possible about buying tickets and make them feel it necessary to do that.

That's where I came into the picture. She said I was a big shot and that I must know a lot of people. She gave me 10 booklets of 10 tickets, each one worth one dollar, adding up to a grand total of 100 dollars. A week later, I showed up with only half of the tickets sold.

"If only I had more time, I would have been able to sell all these tickets you gave me," I said to my mother. "I simply didn't have the time."

"What a load of nonsense! You either do something that you want or you have all the excuses why you can't," my mother shot back. "You made

time to go out to dinner, watch TV, jog and go to the movies. What did you do to make good use of time? Nothing!" After that blast of the truth, she started to cry. I was defeated. I quickly agreed to buy the rest of my tickets myself. She stopped crying instantly and said, "When you want something, then you do whatever it takes to get the job done, even cry." With a smile she said, "I knew that crying would work with you, and for being so weak with your excuses, here are 10 more books. Now, go and sell them all."

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

【参考范文】

She was able to produce outstanding results. She managed to sell more than every other volunteer, 14 to 1. She sold 7,000 tickets in total. Her closest challenge came from a neighbour who sold 500. As a result, she was elected to monitor the construction work of the building. As a sales manager, I was pale by comparison.

I learned a new level of distinction between time and results. I had always wanted to have my own business, but I had kept saying that it wasn't the right time and I didn't have the money. I kept hearing my mother's voice in my mind: "You either do something that you want or you have all the excuses why you can't." Six months later, I quit my job and started my own business, training people in time management.

迁 · 移 · 应 · 用

Part 1 应用文写作

——读后感

写作指导

读后感在议论文中较为常见,读后感的写作可按照下面的步骤进行。

第一步:简述原文有关内容。写这部分内容是为了交代感想从何而来,并为后文的议论做好铺垫。这部分要突出一个“简”字,不要大段大段地叙述书中的具体内容,而是要简述与感想有直接关系的部分,略去与感想无关的内容。

第二步:明确基本观点。选择感受最深的一点,用一个简洁的句子明确表述出来。这样的句子被称为观点句。观点句在文中的位置是灵活的,可以在篇首,也可以在篇末或篇中。

第三步:围绕基本观点摆事实、讲道理。这部分就是议论文的论据部分,是对基本观点的阐述,通过摆事实、讲道理,证明观点的正确性,使论点更加突出、更有说服力。

典题示例

A peacock (孔雀) was very unhappy with her terrible voice, so she spent most of her days complaining about it.

“It is true that you cannot sing,” said the fox, “but look how beautiful you are!”

“Oh, but what good is all this beauty,” cried the bird, “with such an unpleasant voice!”

“Listen,” said the fox, “each one owns something good: you have such beauty; the nightingale (夜莺) has her songs; and the owl (猫头鹰) has his eyes. Even if you had a sweet voice, you would still complain about another thing. Why can't you just be happy about what you have already got?”

请从这则寓言中提炼出一个恰当的主题,写一篇80词左右的读后感。内容包括:

1. 简要介绍这则寓言;
2. 谈谈你的理解或感受;
3. 以你或你身边的人或事加以论证。

注意:不得直接引用原文中的句子。

Step 1: 审题谋篇

| | |
|----|---|
| 文体 | 议论文 |
| 时态 | 一般现在时 |
| 人称 | 以第一、三人称为主 |
| 要点 | 1. 简要介绍寓言故事 2. 得到的启示 3. 举例论证并总结观点 |

Step 2: 要点补全

① The fable is about a peacock and she complains about her terrible voice (抱怨她难听的声音), ignoring her true beauty.

② But a fox advises her to be content with what she owns (满足于她所拥有的东西)。

③ After reading it, I understand that we teenagers should find and make good use of our advantages (好好利用我们的优势), stopping complaining about the shortcomings all the time (一直)。

④ He does very well in all subjects (所有科目都学得十分好) and ranks among the top 10 in most of the exams (在大多数考试中)。

⑤ He will never know how much we admire him (我们有多么羡慕他)!

⑥ So we should stay positive and value what we have instead of complaining too much (而不是抱怨太多)。

Step 3: 句式升级

① 用定语从句改写 Step 2 中的①句

The fable is about a peacock who complains about her terrible voice, ignoring her true beauty.

②用分词作状语改写 Step 2 中的④句

He does very well in all subjects, ranking among the top 10 in most of the exams.

③将 never 置于句首升级 Step 2 中的⑤句

Never will he know how much we admire him!

Step 4: 连句成篇

The fable is about a peacock who complains about her terrible voice, ignoring her true beauty. But a fox advises her to be content with what she owns.

After reading it, I understand that we teenagers should find and make good use of our advantages, stopping complaining about the shortcomings all the time.

Many people around me make the same mistake, only focusing on what they cannot get. Take my friend Mike as an example. He does very well in all subjects, ranking among the top 10 in most of the exams. But he usually complains that he can't play basketball well because he is not tall enough. Never will he know how much we admire him! In fact, nobody can develop very well in all aspects even if he/she is a talent. So we should stay positive and value what we have instead of complaining too much.

○学以致用

最近你读了《伊索寓言》(*Aesop's Fables*)中《狐

狸和葡萄》的故事。故事中狐狸因为摘不到葡萄而故意说葡萄是酸的。这个故事告诉我们:在现实生活中,我们有时也会和狐狸一样,在面对错误或问题时,不是勇敢地去解决,而是不断为自己找借口。现在请你根据故事内容并结合自身情况或某些社会现象写一篇英文读后感。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

【参考范文】

Recently I have read a short story from *Aesop's Fables*, whose name is *The Fox and The Grapes*. It has left a deep impression on me.

On a hot summer day, an extremely hungry fox saw a lot of grapes in a garden. He wanted very much to pick them down to eat, but after several tries, he still failed. The frustrated fox had no choice but to go away! And as he was walking away, he still comforted himself, saying that these grapes must be acid! It is very clear that he was looking for an excuse for his failure.

After reading the fable, I realise that when we are wrong, we should not look for an excuse to cover up our own problems. Instead we should bravely admit the mistakes and try to correct them.

Part 2 读后续写

阅读下面的文章,完成任务。

Poor Jack lost his sight at the age of six after a car accident. He was cornered in his dark world. An already terrible life now looked completely hopeless. His mother tried to encourage him, but nothing she said could help him at all.

Later Jack did nothing but lie in bed, sighing all day. His mother felt miserable, telling him to live with his disability, work hard and change his life on his own. She said, "Son, since you have lost your sight and nothing can change that, you have to accept it. There are things you can't do. But there are lots of things you can do. You have a creative mind. Find something you enjoy and stick with it, no matter what."

The future didn't seem too bright for a blind child from the countryside. But as this young boy thought about his mother's words, about what he really wanted to do with his life, he dreamed of becoming a star. So as a child, he would practise playing the piano and singing each day from then on.

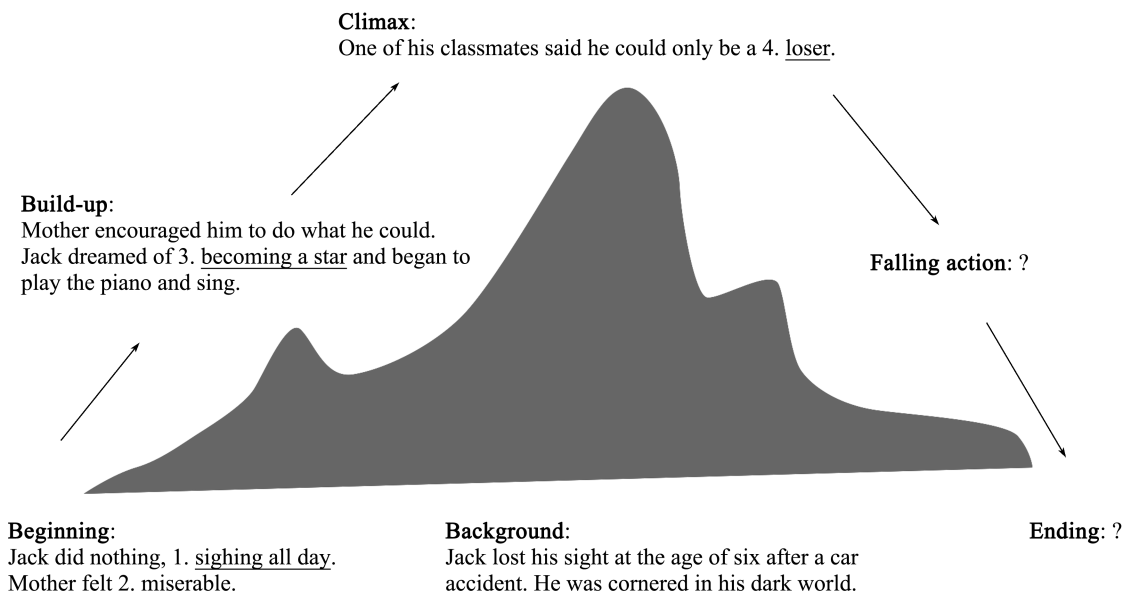
Once one of his classmates heard him practising at school and told him, "You can't play the piano, and you can't sing either. These things are meaningless for you. You are doomed to be a loser."

任务一:阅读文章,回答问题。

What does the article mainly talk about?

This article tells the story of Jack, who lost his sight at the age of six after a car accident. Since then, he had to practise playing the piano and singing every day. Encouraged by his mother, Jack dreamed of becoming a star.

任务二：梳理故事情节，完成故事山(Story Mountain)。



任务三：回答下面的问题，并根据段落开头的提示语，构思和完善故事发展情节。

| | |
|---|--|
| <p>Paragraph 1:</p> <p>That classmate's comment was like a sharp knife, cutting Jack's heart into pieces. _____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> | <p>1. How was Jack's spirit? <u>He was in low spirits.</u></p> <p>2. What did he think? <u>Nothing can get in the way of his dreams.</u></p> <p>3. What did he do? <u>He remained focused on his goal and he was willing to accept the challenge and make more efforts.</u></p> |
| <p>Paragraph 2:</p> <p>In his life, he received countless awards for his music. _____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> | <p>1. What achievement did he make? <u>His excellent musical style has had a lasting effect on all forms of popular music in the past ten years.</u></p> <p>2. What were people's views on him? <u>The people who had looked down upon him before felt extremely surprised.</u></p> <p>3. In his opinion, what was the cause of his success? <u>His mother's words and encouragement.</u></p> <p>4. What really caused him to achieve his goal? <u>Determination, perseverance and optimism.</u></p> |

任务四：根据材料内容和任务三中构思的故事发展情节续写两段，使之构成一篇完整的短文。

注意：续写词数应为 150 左右。

【参考范文】

That classmate's comment was like a sharp knife, cutting Jack's heart into pieces. For several days, he was in low spirits. "Should I give up my dream or stick to it?" he thought. All these days, his mother's words lingered in his mind. "Nothing can get in the way of my dreams," said the determined boy. From then on, he was determined to become a star and remained focused on his goal. Hard as it was, he was willing to accept the challenge and make more efforts. Finally his hard work paid off.

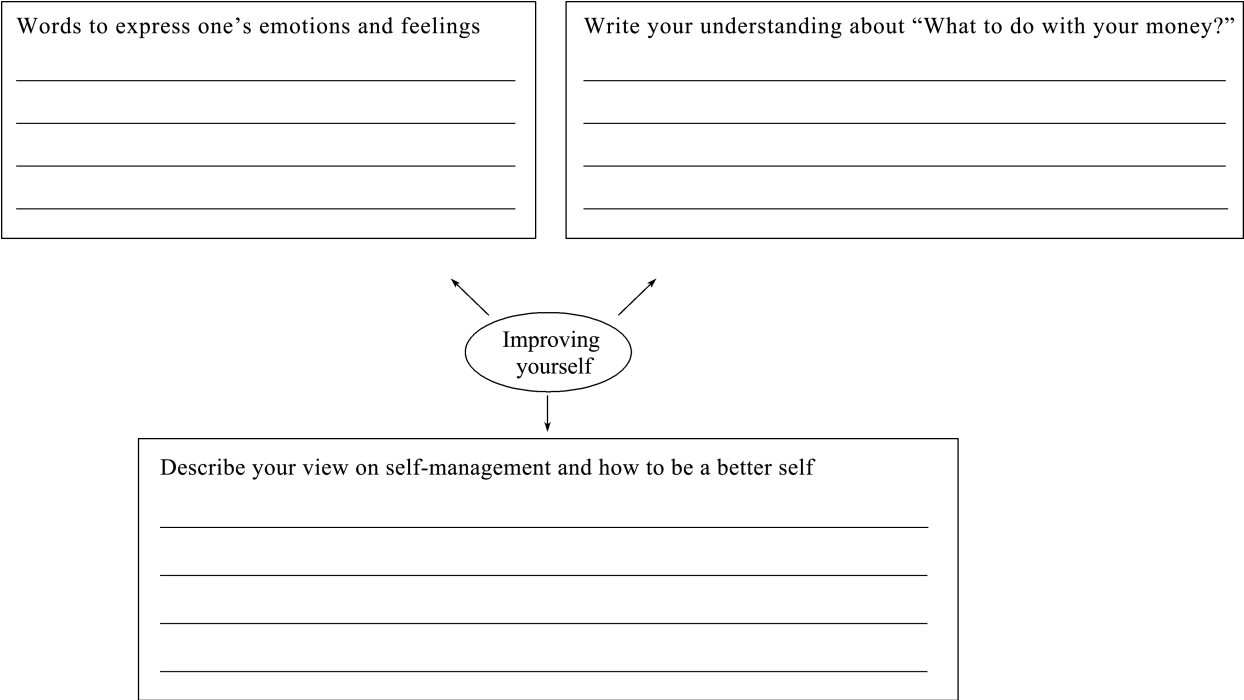
In his life, he received countless awards for his music. His excellent musical style has had a lasting effect on all forms of popular music in the past ten years. The people who had looked down upon him before felt extremely surprised. When asked how he made it, he owed it to his mother. It was his mother's words that encouraged him in those confusing days. He wouldn't listen to the negative words in his life and refused to stop. Determination and optimism are what it takes to overcome his weakness and accomplish his goal.

★ ★ ★

重 · 构 · 拓 · 展

一、单元重构

请根据本单元所学内容，完成思维导图。



答案：略

二、拓展阅读

阅读下面的文章，完成后面的题目。

Learning for Life

The more I learn, the better I know how much there is still left to learn. As I journey through my life, I have become aware that acquiring knowledge is not only a means by which you can better understand the world, but also a way of appreciating how much, as an individual, you do not know. The ability to admit this should not be perceived as a weakness, but as a strength. I once had an art teacher, pointing out that it is not only what you can see that is important, but also what you cannot see. When I drew a still life, it was impressed upon me that the blank spaces between the objects were just as vital to the success of the composition as the actual objects themselves. Also, as the great educator Confucius stated, "When you know a thing, to recognize that you know it; and when you do not know a thing, to recognize that you do not know it—that is wisdom."

It is vital to remain lifelong learners in a rapidly changing world. As you progress through life, you may study and work in new environments. Consequently, you will be exposed to many new ideas, beliefs, practices and learning experiences. Furthermore, the production of knowledge is bound to grow rapidly. New knowledge is constantly being generated and what you already know is being revised all the time, to the extent that it can be difficult to keep pace with the latest developments. Indeed, you may one day do jobs that

do not yet exist, use technologies that are not yet developed and resolve problems that are not yet problems! This is not to suggest that there is no need for you to study in school but to acknowledge that refreshing your knowledge through lifelong learning is both essential and beneficial.

So, how can you proceed? Firstly, lifelong learning is an attitude. Lifelong learners are those who have an open mind. Be objective and make yourself open to new knowledge and ideas. Do not criticize them or reject them simply because they differ from what you know or believe. At the same time, you need to develop critical thinking skills so that you do not blindly accept new ideas. Instead, you should inquire further to assess the truth of what you are being told. Secondly, take advantage of opportunities for lifelong learning—for example, you could register online and subscribe to e-learning courses, which have become increasingly popular in recent years. You could also visit the local library, where resources are rich and diverse. Finally, understand that it is not sufficient to simply know something or to understand what you know, because for knowledge to have concrete value, it must be applied. Importantly, after its application, there must then follow a review process of analysis, evaluation and improvement so that your comprehension of the world becomes a continuous process.

In summary, in a world of constant change, one should never cease to learn. Lifelong learning will help you develop your skills and further your career, and will boost your sense of self-worth and keep your mind active. Therefore, know what you know and use it; know what you do not know and embrace it; know that you will never know all there is to know and wonder at it.

1. What does the author think about the ability to admit not knowing something?
 - A. It is a sign of ignorance.
 - B. It is a weakness.
 - C. It is a strength.
 - D. It is unimportant.
2. What did the art teacher emphasize?
 - A. The importance of visible elements in art.
 - B. The significance of invisible elements in art.
 - C. Only focusing on the objects in a still life.
 - D. Drawing as many objects as possible in a still life.
3. According to the passage, in a rapidly changing world, which of the following is a characteristic of knowledge?
 - A. Knowledge production will stop.
 - B. Old knowledge will never be changed.
 - C. New knowledge is constantly emerging and old knowledge is being revised.
 - D. There will be less new knowledge in the future.
4. What does the text mainly tell us?
 - A. The experience of the author's art study.
 - B. The importance of lifelong learning.
 - C. Confucius' educational thoughts.
 - D. How to be a good artist.

答案:1~4 CBCB

单元测试卷(二)

(考查范围:Unit 2 时间:100 分钟 分值:120 分)

I. 阅读理解(共 15 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 37.5 分)

A

Summer Science Camp Instructors

The Palo Alto Junior Museum & Zoo is currently looking for Camp Instructors to help facilitate its summer science camps which operate from June 15th through August 14th. These programmes feature week-long full-day camps exploring a variety of science topics in the Life, Physical and Earth Sciences, and camp participants range in age from Preschool through Grade 6.

In addition to staffing science camps, instructors are needed to support after-camp programmes at Rinconada Park. After camp programmes offer campers an opportunity to wind down after a busy day of learning, and feature recreational activities, games, art making, and weekly trips to the Rinconada Pool.

For more information about specific offerings, please visit our website.

Requirements:

Successful applicants will be at least 18 years old and available the entire summer—from June 15th through August 14th. They will have an interest in science, teaching, or child development, and will love working with children in an educational setting. This is a great position for college students or high school seniors.

Hours of work:

Science Camp: Monday through Friday, approximately 8 am to 4 pm each day

After Camp: Monday through Friday, approximately 1:30 pm to 6:30 pm each day

Pay: \$ 19.29 to \$ 23.67 per hour

Note: All staff are required to be fully vaccinated and boosted, and to wear a mask at all times out of consideration for safety.

Interested applicants are invited to forward their resume and email of interest to the Education Director, Alex Hamilton. The City of Palo Alto is an Equal Opportunity Employer. People of diverse backgrounds and abilities are encouraged to apply.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章是一则为科学夏令营招募导师的通知。

1. Who is the Summer Science Camp designed for?

- A. Camp instructors.
- B. Preschool to Grade 6.
- C. Physical and Earth Scientists.
- D. Teenage children.

B 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“camp participants range in age from Preschool through Grade 6”可知,这个夏令营的目标对象是幼儿园至 6 年级的儿童。故选 B。

2. Which of the following will be required if you apply for the job?

- A. Previous experience.
- B. Science degree.
- C. At least 18 years old.
- D. College education.

C 细节理解题。根据 **Requirements:** 部分中的“Successful applicants will be at least 18 years old and available the entire summer—from June 15th through August 14th.”可知,申请者必须年满 18 岁。故选 C。

3. What is the writer's purpose in writing the text?

- A. To inform.
- B. To describe.
- C. To persuade.
- D. To entertain.

A 写作意图题。根据最后一段中的“Interested applicants are invited to forward their resume and email of

interest to the Education Director, Alex Hamilton.”可推知,作者写这篇文章是为了告知读者招聘岗位的相关信息。故选 A。

B

Jill Wheatley was a PE teacher in Germany. On the weekend she competed in marathons around Europe. But life threw her a near deadly blow. While teaching a PE class, she was hit in the head with a baseball. The impact was so great that it left her with a brain injury and 70 percent vision loss, permanently blinding her in one eye. She spent 26 months in seven different hospitals, at times wishing it would just all end.

Desperately, Wheatley set out to find comfort and healing in nature. She travelled to Nepal where a friend convinced her to run in the Annapurna 100 with him. The power from that race changed her life and eventually had her looking up at the tops of the mountains. Project Vision 8000 was born. And she began her mission to stand on top of the world's 14 highest mountains, towering 8,000 metres above sea level, to show herself and others the power in choice and possibility.

Colours and touch help guide her on the mountain and she has never once felt too tired to carry on. “The only thing constant is change, so when the weather gets really bad or a storm is coming in, I know it is going to pass.” So far, she’s had few problems standing among giants, but she admits she continues to struggle with overcoming: the “mountains of her mind”. Having already stared death in the face, Wheatley has great respect for the mountains and the mission she is on. But she’s not seared. The experience almost claimed her life, but it is now the driving force and fuel behind her success. At every icy peak, she smiles and takes a quick video with a breathless “so very thankful” whispered into the thin air.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了 Jill Wheatley 因头部受伤而视力受损,一只眼睛永久性失明的事。她决定通过登山来寻找慰藉。

4. What happened to Wheatley according to Paragraph 1?

- A. She came last in a race.
- B. She suffered head injury.
- C. She lost her sight completely.
- D. She was attacked in a class.

B 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“Jill Wheatley was a PE teacher in Germany. On the weekend... 70 percent vision loss, permanently blinding her in one eye.”可知,Jill Wheatley 的头部受伤了。故选 B。

5. What drove Wheatley to launch Project Vision 8000?

- A. Her exploration of nature.
B. Her friend's timely suggestions.
C. Her strong love for sports.
D. Her participation in the Annapurna 100.

D 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“*She travelled to Nepal where a friend convinced her to run in the... the tops of the mountains. Project Vision 8000 was born.*”可推知,Jill Wheatley 参加了 Annapurna 100 比赛,从而推动了 Project Vision 8000 项目。故选 D。

6. What can we learn about Wheatley from the last paragraph?

- A. Her attitude towards adversity was reshaped.
B. She was used to poor weather conditions.
C. She ignored the mountains of her mind.
D. Her nature helped her overcome fear.

A 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“The experience almost claimed her life, but it is now the driving... breathless ‘so very thankful’ whispered into the thin air.”可推知, Jill Wheatley 对逆境的态度改变了。故选 A。

7. What could be the best title for the text?

- A. Every Peak Is Within Reach B. Lose Sight to Gain Vision
C. Action Speaks Louder Than Words D. Nature Will Work Its Course

B 标题归纳题。根据第一段中的“While teaching a PE class, she was hit in the head with a baseball. The impact... blinding her in one eye.”和最后一段中的“*At every icy peak, she smiles and takes a quick video with a breathless ‘so very thankful’ whispered into the thin air.*”可知,文章主要讲述了 Jill Wheatley 头部

受伤后视力受损,但她没有放弃,而是通过爬山拓宽了视野。B项最适合作为文章标题。故选B。

C

After years of observing human nature, I have decided that two qualities make a difference between men of great achievement and men of average performance—curiosity and discontent. I have never known an outstanding man who lacked either. And I have never known an average man who had both.

Together, these deep human urges (驱策力) count for much more than ambition. Galileo was not merely ambitious when he dropped objects of varying weights from the Leaning Tower at Pisa and timed their fall to the ground. Like Galileo, all the great names in history were curious and asked in discontent, “Why? Why? Why?”

Fortunately, curiosity and discontent don’t have to be learned. We are born with them and need only to recapture them. “The great man,” said Mencius, “is he who does not lose his child’s heart.” Yet most of us do lose it. We stop asking questions. We stop challenging custom. We just follow the crowd. And the crowd desires only the calm and restful average.

Most of us meet new people, and new ideas, with hesitation. But once having met and liked them, we think how terrible it would have been, had we missed the chance. We will probably have to force ourselves to waken our curiosity and discontent and keep them awake.

How should you start? Modestly, so as not to become discouraged. I think of one friend who couldn’t arrange flowers to satisfy herself. She was curious about how the experts did it.

The way to begin is to answer your own excuses. You haven’t any special ability? Most people don’t; there are only a few geniuses. You haven’t any time? That’s good, because it’s always the people with no time who get things done. Harriet Stowe, mother of six, wrote parts of *Uncle Tom’s Cabin* while cooking. You’re too old? Remember that Thomas Costain was 57 when he published his first novel, and that Grandma Moses showed her first pictures when she was 78.

However you start, remember there is no better time to start than right now, for you’ll never be more alive than you are at this moment.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇议论文。文章探讨了好奇心和不满感对于成功的重要性,建议我们激发好奇心和不满感,并勇于接触新事物和挑战传统,不断提高自己。最后,文章强调现在是开始行动的最佳时机。

8. What’s the author’s purpose in writing Paragraph 1?

- A. To present an argument. B. To make a comparison.
- C. To reach a conclusion. D. To propose a definition.

A 写作意图题。根据第一段关键句“After years of observing human nature, I have decided that two qualities make a difference between men of great achievement and men of average performance—curiosity and discontent.”可知,作者在第一段提出了文章的论点,告诉我们成就卓越的人和表现一般的人的区别在哪里,即两种品质决定了成就卓越的人和表现一般的人的区别:好奇和不满。由此可知,作者写第一段内容的目的是提出一个论点。故选A。

9. What does the example of Galileo tell us?

- A. Scientists tend to have varied ambitions.
- B. Trial and error leads to the finding of truth.
- C. Creativity results from challenging authority.
- D. Greatness comes from a lasting desire to explore.

D 细节理解题。根据第二段的内容可知,作者通过伽利略的例子告诉我们人类的强烈欲望比雄心壮志更重要,历史上所有伟大人物的成功都是因为对事物的好奇和不断探索。由此可知,伽利略的例子告诉我们伟大来自持久的探索欲望。故选D。

10. What can you do to recapture curiosity and discontent?

- A. Observe the unknown around you. B. Develop a questioning mind.
- C. Lead a life of adventure. D. Follow the fashion.

B 推理判断题。根据第三段中的“‘The great man,’ said Mencius, ‘is he who does not lose his child’s heart.’ Yet most of us do lose it. We stop asking questions. We stop challenging custom. We just follow the crowd. And the crowd desires only the calm and restful average.”以及第四段中的“‘But once having met and liked them, we think how terrible it would have been, had we missed the chance. We will probably have to force ourselves to waken our curiosity and discontent and keep them awake.’”可知,要唤起我们的好奇心和不满,我们需要做与段落中相反的事,即我们要不满足于现状,勇于探索,勇于提出问题。由此可知,你能通过培养质疑的思维来重新找回好奇心和不满。故选 B。

11. What can we learn from the last two paragraphs?

- A. Gaining success helps you become an expert.
- B. The genius tends to get things done creatively.
- C. Lack of talent and time is no reason for taking no action.
- D. You should remain modest when approaching perfection.

C 推理判断题。根据倒数第二段中的“‘The way to begin is to answer your own excuses. You haven’t any special ability? Most people don’t; there are only a few geniuses. You haven’t any time? That’s good, because it’s always the people with no time who get things done.’”以及最后一段的内容可知,文章最后两段强调的是不要以自己没有时间和才能为理由而不去采取行动,建议读者记住没有比现在更好的开始时间,因为你永远不会比此刻更有活力。故选 C。

D

“As digital devices have taken over society, keyboard activity is now often recommended as a replacement for early handwriting,” a new study notes. The idea is that typing may be easier for young children.

The potential benefits of handwriting for learning and memory have been debated for some time. The new study set out to answer two questions. How does handwriting compare to using a keyboard or drawing when it comes to learning new information? And how similar are handwriting and drawing?

In all, 12 adults and 12 seventh-graders took part. Researchers asked each of them to write and draw with a digital pen. Each was also asked to type on a keyboard. While performing these tasks, each volunteer wore a cap that held electrodes (电极) next to their head. It looked somewhat like a hair net fitted with 256 sensors, which recorded the volunteers’ brainwaves, a type of electrical activity, as EEGs.

The electrodes noted which parts of the brain turned on during each task. And they showed that the brain activity was about the same in both the kids and the adults. Writing turned on memory areas in the brain. Typing didn’t. Drawing images and writing also turned on parts of the brain involved with learning. Writing even activated language areas.

This suggests, according to Van der Meer, the new study’s leader, that when we write by hand, we both learn better and remember better. Her team now suggests that children, from an early age, must be exposed to handwriting and drawing activities in school.

These new findings back up other studies showing potential benefits of handwriting, says Joshua Weiner, who was not involved with the new study. His own students type faster than they can write, he finds. “Slowing down seems to require them to ‘think more’ when taking notes,” he says. He adds that this could improve memory and enhance learning. Weiner concludes that writing may be beneficial as it involves more of a brain response.

Van der Meer recognises that learning to write by hand is a slower process. She is also aware that it requires fine motor skills. But, she adds, “If we don’t challenge our brain, it can’t reach its full potential.”

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了手写相比打字对于大脑活动的好处,手写会激活大脑更多的区域,比如记忆区域和学习区域,孩子们应该更多地接触手写。

12. Why was a cap used in the experiment?

- A. To give the volunteers instructions.
- B. To record the volunteers’ every move.

- C. To help the volunteers better focus on the task.
- D. To keep track of the volunteers' brain activity.

D 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“While performing these tasks, each volunteer wore a cap that held electrodes (电极) next to their head. It looked somewhat like a hair net fitted with 256 sensors, which recorded the volunteers' brainwaves, a type of electrical activity, as EEGs.”可知,帽子是用来记录志愿者们的大脑活动的。故选 D。

13. What does Paragraph 3 mainly talk about?

- A. The tools invented by the researchers.
- B. The background of the participants.
- C. The process of the experiment.
- D. The application of the study.

C 段落大意题。根据第三段中的“In all, 12 adults and 12 seventh-graders took part. Researchers asked each of them to write and draw with a digital pen. Each was also asked to type on a keyboard. While performing these tasks, each volunteer wore a cap that held electrodes (电极) next to their head.”可知,第三段主要介绍了实验的过程。故选 C。

14. What did the research team find?

- A. Typing made the brain more active.
- B. Writing turned on more areas in the brain.
- C. Drawing activated the area related to memory.
- D. Adults could do better than kids in taking notes.

B 细节理解题。根据第四段中的“Drawing images and writing also turned on parts of the brain involved with learning. Writing even activated language areas.”可知,写作激活了大脑中更多的区域。故选 B。

15. Which of the following would Van der Meer probably agree with?

- A. Keyboards should be used as little as possible.
- B. Requirements for hand-written notes will benefit kids.
- C. The process of writing slows down the brain response.
- D. Typing gives us a chance to improve memory and learning.

B 推理判断题。根据第五段中的“This suggests, according to Van der Meer, the new study's leader, that when we write by hand, we both learn better and remember better.”可知, Van der Meer 认为手写对大脑活动有好处,由此推知,她会支持孩子们手写笔记,文章第六段用 Joshua Weiner 的话侧面印证了这一观点。故选 B。

II. 七选五 (共 5 小题; 每小题 2.5 分, 满分 12.5 分)

The Power in Accepting Your Errors

It pays to be kind to yourself. A new study shows that being compassionate (同情的) with yourself when you make mistakes can reduce depression.

It is generally good to hold yourself to high standards and strive to do your best. But sometimes people have unrealistic views of what they should achieve. 16 Then when they make a mistake, they may be too unforgiving of that error. It is an unhealthy form of perfectionism. This is when a person views anything imperfect as unacceptable. 17

However, self-compassion can help protect people from such negative impacts, a new study finds. 18 “It's often easy to say kind and supportive things to our friends when things go wrong for them,” says Madeleine Ferrari. She's a psychologist at Australian Catholic University in Sydney. “If we can say these things to ourselves, we will still reach our goals but will have better mental health,” she says.

19 Ferrari's team wanted to see if self-compassion might weaken that link. The researchers surveyed 541 teenagers and 515 adults. They asked these people to fill out a set of three questionnaires and asked the participants to rate their levels of perfectionism, depression and self-compassion.

In both groups, people who were kinder to themselves were less likely to experience sadness and depression, the researchers found. 20 And that could be especially true for perfectionists.

- A. They set standards that are too high.
- B. Even the most intelligent and productive people make mistakes.
- C. This is a good example of improving and changing based on a mistake.
- D. Self-compassion is treating yourself the way you would treat a good friend.
- E. Such feelings can increase stress and lead to symptoms (症状) of depression.
- F. So learning self-compassion could improve treatment for those with depression.
- G. Previous research has shown that people who are perfectionists are more likely to become depressed.

答案: 16~20 AEDGF

III. 完形填空 (共 15 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 15 分)

As we all know, helping others is a great service, and it's easy to see how to help some people, but what about those people whose needs are not so obvious? This story may have happened a while back—It was a lesson which has 21 with me and helped me ever since.

It was a day when I was volunteering with my parents at a 22 for the needy. We stood behind the counter 23 out hot food to whoever came in. Most of our diners looked like they had been having 24 times; their clothes were old and dirty. 25 short, they looked needy!

Then, a man came in, who looked anything 26 needy. He was well dressed; he wore a(n) 27 suit. I wondered what he was doing there and my jaw dropped in amazement when he 28 the line for food. The closer he came to my service station, the more I 29. What was this man doing? I wanted to know. Surely he was not going to take food meant for those who were really in 30!

Then my 31 quietly took me to one side. She said, “You 32 that the needs of the people who come here must be purely 33: hunger, inadequate shelter, clothing, etc. And this gentleman doesn't seem to have any of those problems. 34 what if he needs emotional help? What if he needs 35, or just to be among other human beings?” Her words hit me like a ton of bricks! I felt like I should apologise to the man—but I didn't.

About a week later, the shelter received a large donation from an anonymous (匿名的) person. I can't help but wonder if it came from that man.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇夹叙夹议文。作者和父母做志愿者时曾经遇到了一位“衣着得体, 需要情感帮助的”男士, 并从中受到了影响深远的教诲: 需求并不总是可见的, 但善良总能带来改变。

21. A. caught B. left C. dealt D. stayed

D 这个教训一直伴随着“我”, 并从那时起帮助了“我”。此处用来解释这次教训的持久性。stay with 为固定短语, 意为“与……相随”。故选 D。

22. A. peace B. relief C. restaurant D. shelter

D 根据下文的“the needy”可知, 作者和父母在收容所里当志愿者。故选 D。

23. A. selling B. handing C. buying D. bringing

B “我们”站在柜台后面, 把热的食物分发给进来的人。hand out sth. to sb. 为固定短语, 意为“把某物分发给某人”。故选 B。

24. A. hard B. happy C. painful D. unforgettable

A 根据下文的“their clothes were old and dirty”可知, 这些人的日子并不好过。have hard times 表示“过得困难”。故选 A。

25. A. At B. Of C. In D. For

C 简而言之, 他们看起来很可怜! in short 为固定短语, 意为“总之; 简言之”, 用在这里是对之前的描述进行总结。故选 C。

26. A. but B. and C. besides D. or

A 这时, 一个男人走了进来, 他看上去一点也不贫穷。此句用来描述进来的这位男士看起来不贫穷。

anything but 表示“根本不;绝不”。故选 A。

27. A. cheap B. old C. expensive D. poor

C 根据上文的“He was well dressed”可知,他的外套是昂贵的。故选 C。

28. A. attended B. jumped C. crossed D. joined

D “我”想知道他在那里做什么,当他排队要吃东西时,“我”惊讶得张口结舌。join the line 表示“排队,加入……的行列”。故选 D。

29. A. doubted B. believed C. thought D. remembered

A 作者对这位穿着讲究的男士排队领取食物的行为表示怀疑。故选 A。

30. A. line B. need C. danger D. fact

B 此处是“我”猜测,他(应该)不会去拿那些为真正需要的人准备的食物。in need 表示“在困难中,需要帮助”。故选 B。

31. A. mother B. friend C. colleague D. father

A 然后“我”的妈妈悄悄地把“我”拉到一边。根据上文可知,作者和父母一起当志愿者,且之后有“She”作为提示。故选 A。

32. A. consumed B. consulted C. assumed D. decided

C 根据下文的“that the needs of the people who come here must be purely 33: hunger, inadequate shelter, clothing, etc.”可知,所选动词应表示“认为”。故选 C。

33. A. emotional B. physical C. mental D. natural

B 下文提到的“hunger, inadequate shelter, clothing, etc.”均为物质上的需求。故选 B。

34. A. Therefore B. Yet C. So D. Or

B 此句是在猜测这位男士是否在情感上需要帮助,与前一句“看起来似乎没有什么需要帮助的”形成转折关系。故选 B。

35. A. release B. complaint C. comfort D. apology

C 根据上文的“emotional help”可知,他可能需要情感上的安慰。故选 C。

IV. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分 15 分)

The idea of running long distances can be discouraging at first. **36. However**, with a lot of patience and a baby-step approach, you can steadily develop a solid pace **37. that/which** will last for longer and longer stretches, even while you chat with your running partner!

Whether you are only beginning to run or have already made a practice of it, design a training schedule **38. based** (base) on your current abilities. Forget “no pains, no gains.” Resist the urge **39. to push** (push) yourself too hard or too fast. Keep your runs sensible and achievable, especially in the beginning. Running is an exercise with a risk of **40. injury/being injured** (injure), especially for beginners. The tortoise-wins-the-race manner will decrease your chance of hurting **41. yourself** (you). If you have little or no miles under your belt, shift between running and **42. walking** (walk) in the beginning. Jog for one minute, and then walk for four. Repeat three more times for a total workout of 20 **43. minutes** (minute). As the one-minute jogging intervals (间歇) become easier from one workout to the next, double them **44. to** two minutes each and decrease the walking intervals to three. Continue to increase the jogging and decrease the walking over time until you are **45. comfortably** (comfortable) running for a total 20-minute stretch.

V. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

第一节 应用文写作(满分 15 分)

某英文报正举办题为“A Personal Habit I'd Like to Change”的征文比赛。请你根据征文题目写一篇英语短文,参加该征文活动,具体要求如下:

1. 简述你想改变的行为习惯;
2. 说明你改变这一习惯的理由及措施。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

【参考范文】

A Personal Habit I'd Like to Change

Recently, I've always considered changing my personal habit; that is watching TV too long after school. My reasons are listed as follows:

In the first place, I don't think the shows of every kind are really worth watching or suitable for us students to watch. What's worse, I find my eyesight is failing due to watching TV too much.

To change the habit, I am supposed to put more emphasis on something more meaningful such as reading and taking exercise, which are not only beneficial to my mental and physical health but also can help me get rid of my bad habit.

第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

On a cold windy day, a poor boy tried to pay his way through school by selling goods door to door. Wandering on the street, he was not a successful seller. What's worse, he found that he only had one dime (一角硬币) left. His empty stomach reminded him constantly that for days he hadn't eaten anything. He had no choice but to beg for a meal at the next house. Hesitantly he knocked at the door, thinking about what to say when it opened. However, he lost his nerve when a lovely young woman opened the door. "What can I do for you?" asked the young woman. The boy paused for a while, "Would you please give me some... a drink of water?" The boy didn't dare to look directly into her eyes. She looked at the bony boy and thought he might need something to give him energy so she brought him a glass of milk. His head rising and small hands taking the cup, he drank it up slowly, and then asked, "How much do I owe you?" "You don't owe me anything," she replied with a warm smile on her face. "My mother has taught me never to accept pay for a kindness." Deeply moved, he said sincerely, "Then I shall thank you from the bottom of my heart." As Howard Kelly left that house, he not only felt stronger physically, but it also increased his faith in the whole human race. As a matter of fact, he was about to give up and quit before that point.

Years later the young woman became critically ill. However, the local doctors were unable to give the effective medical treatment. Finally they sent her to a hospital in the big city, where specialists can be called in to cure her rare disease. Among those famous specialists, Dr Howard Kelly was called in for the consultation. When he heard the name of the town she came from, a strange light filled his eyes. Immediately, he rose and went down through the hospital hall into her room.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

【参考范文】

Dressed in his doctor's gown, he went in to see her. He saw her lie on the bed and recognised her at once. Her lovely face looked pale. He went back to the consultation room and determined to do his best to save her life. From that day on, he gave special attention to her case. Luckily, after a long struggle, the battle was won. Dr Kelly requested the business office to pass the final bill to him for approval. He looked at it and then wrote something on the side.

The bill was sent to her room. Hesitantly she took it. She was afraid to open it because she was sure that it would take the rest of her life to pay it off. Finally she opened it, on the side of which a note caught her attention. She read these words, "Paid in full with a glass of milk. (Signed) Dr Howard Kelly." Tears of joy flooded her eyes as she prayed silently.

单元概览

学习导航

The theme of this unit is humans and society, whose topic is the contrast and changes in various aspects of society and life in the old and new eras. This unit begins with a video and four sets of contrasting pictures, and tells the story of Rainbow Bookstore, which overcomes crises with innovation, discusses the impact of the use of emoticons on language development, and also covers various topics on the development changes in different fields of society in recent years. It aims to help students understand the driving role of human innovation and technological progress in social development, guide students to learn to view issues with a developmental perspective, and also encourage students to use critical thinking to view the various changes around them.

学习目标

| 核心 素养 | 具体要求 | | |
|----------|---|----|--|
| 语言 能力 | 语言 知识 | 词汇 | 能正确使用与“时代变迁”主题相关的单词和词组。 |
| | | 语法 | 恰当使用过去进行时的被动语态来描述过去某一时刻正在进行的被动动作。 |
| | | 语篇 | 根据本单元提供的个人故事、图表数据、个人采访、热点论说、现象分析等多模态语篇,综合运用各种语言技能,读懂不同类型的语篇内容。 |
| | | 语用 | 能运用本单元所学语言知识描述过去几十年来教学领域的改变,预测该领域未来发展的方向。 |
| | 语言 技能 | 听 | 理解采访的核心思想和细节信息。 |
| | | 说 | 学会使用所学词汇和表达描述社会各领域的发展变化,以及对未来可能发生的变化进行预测和讨论。 |
| | | 读 | 阅读文章,体会时代变化对每个人的学习和生活带来的影响。 |
| | | 写 | 深入思考时代与科技的发展给人们的生活带来的影响,并能由此发表自己的观点。 |
| 学习 能力 | 通过运用各种学习策略,在自主学习、合作学习与探究式学习的过程中,结合本单元所提供的反思性和评价性问题,不断监控、评价、反思和调整自己的学习内容和进程,提高自己的理解和表达能力,最终促进自身语言能力、文化意识、思维品质和学习能力的综合提升。 | | |
| 文化 意识 | 树立创新意识,鼓励自己以积极的心态面对各种社会变化,形成正确的世界观、人生观和价值观。 | | |
| 思维 品质 | 能运用本单元所学知识描述过去教学领域的变化,预测该领域未来发展的方向,并通过对老一辈的采访深入了解生活方式的变化,实现知识和思维能力的拓展与迁移。 | | |

◦ 必备知识

| | |
|----------|--|
| 必背 单词 | decade, elderly, tablet, sympathy, bunch, dusty, shelf, furniture, mist, brick, saleswoman, leadership, organic, jazz, humble, compete, emphasise, reconstruction, journalist, era, reform, socialist, alongside, initiative, solid, economic, occupation, cafeteria, component, category, expand, emotional, intention, adaptation, accessible, soul, tendency, facilitate, educator, secondary, comic, costume, urgently, convincing |
| 重点 表达 | a bunch of, pop up, wave goodbye to, take over, search for, a string of |
| 重点 知识 | 1. 现在分词短语作时间状语 2. 状语从句的省略 |
| 单元 语法 | 过去进行时的被动语态 |
| 单元 写作 | 关于变化的作文 |

探 · 究 · 构 · 建

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas— Comprehending

学习任务目标

1. Understand the video and perceive the differences between past and present lifestyles, and think about their advantages and disadvantages.
2. Understand the pictures and discuss the changes in lifestyle in various aspects, and imagine what kind of life you would like to experience if time went back 40 years.
3. Understand the main information and details of the text, and improve reading comprehension.
4. Master the language points and vocabulary in the text and be able to use them flexibly.

○ 自主式预习 ○

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一) 核心词汇

1. decade *n.* 十年; 十年期
2. elderly *adj.* 年老的
3. sympathy *n.* 同情
4. dusty *adj.* 布满灰尘的
5. furniture *n.* 家具
6. shelf *n.* 搁板, 架子
7. leadership *n.* 领导; 领导地位
8. compete *v.* 竞争
9. a bunch of 一群
10. pop up 突然出现, 冒出来
11. wave goodbye to 向……挥手道别
12. drop in/by 顺道拜访
13. turn... into... 把……变成……
14. bring... back to life 使……复活/恢复生机
15. be replaced by 被……替代

16. take over 接手, 接管

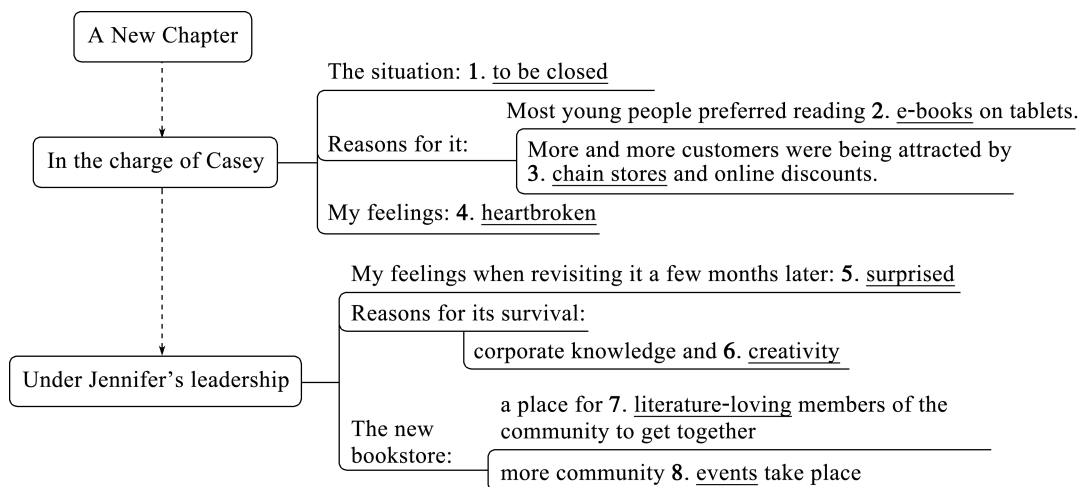
(二) 阅读词汇

1. legendary *adj.* 大名鼎鼎的, 传奇式的
2. fixture *n.* 固定存在物
3. tablet *n.* 平板电脑
4. mist *n.* 薄雾, 雾霭
5. brick *n.* 砖, 砖块
6. stationery *n.* 文具
7. organic *adj.* 有机的; 绿色的
8. humble *adj.* 简陋的
9. exterior *n.* 外部, 外观
10. saleswoman *n.* 女销售员
11. recital *n.* 朗诵会
12. jazz *n.* 爵士乐
13. for good 永远, 永久
14. in good hands 得到很好的照看; 经营有方

○ 任务型课堂 ○

○ 文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text.



○ 文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text.

- Why did the bookstore lose its attraction?
 - The bookstore was too old.
 - Chain stores were next to it.
 - The young preferred the e-books.
 - The books there were out of date.
- What attracted more customers according to Paragraph 2?
 - Chain stores and online discounts.
 - Business.
 - Reading e-books and online discounts.
 - Chatting.
- What's the meaning of the sentence "the Rainbow Bookstore was in good, creative hands"?
 - The Rainbow Bookstore was good in appearance.
 - The Rainbow Bookstore was created by hands.
 - The Rainbow Bookstore was run excellently.
 - The Rainbow Bookstore was in bad condition.
- What were the author's feelings when she or he was back in the store a few months later?
 - Sad and surprised.
 - Surprised and excited.
 - Curious and sad.
 - Disappointed and sad.

5. What's the result of the Rainbow Bookstore?

- It was closed.
- It was still open.
- It was owned by Casey.
- Its old brick exterior had changed.

答案: 1~5 CACBB

○ 语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them.

- The bookstore, which was a legendary fixture in the neighborhood, was a place where anyone could drop in and connect through their love of books.

[句子分析] 本句是一个主从复合句。其中 which 引导非限制性定语从句, 修饰名词 bookstore; where 引导定语从句, 修饰名词 place。

[尝试翻译] 这家书店是这片社区鼎鼎大名、一直不变的一家店, 谁都可以来这里逛逛, 因为热爱书籍而互相认识。

- Sighing deeply, he told me how it was becoming difficult to run an independent bookstore.

[句子分析] 本句是一个主从复合句。其中现在分词短语 Sighing deeply 作状语; how 引导宾语从句。

[尝试翻译] 他深深地叹了口气, 告诉我经营一家独立书店正变得多么困难。

3. It made me realize that the bookstore and all that Old Casey had given to the community could soon disappear for good.

[句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句。其中第一个 that 引导宾语从句;第二个 that 引导定语从句,修饰代词 all。

[尝试翻译]这让我意识到,书店和老凯西给社区带来的一切可能很快永远消失。

○思维品质培养

Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions.

1. What's the theme of the text?

The Rainbow Bookstore begins a new chapter.

2. If you had a bookstore, what would you do to attract readers?

I would use modern technology to meet the wishes of readers.

Unit 3 课后素养评价 (九)

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

I. 阅读理解

A small robot may help children who are recovering from long-term illnesses in the hospital or at home. These children may feel isolated from their friends and classmates. The robot takes their place at school. Through the robot, the children can hear their teachers and friends. They also can take part in class from wherever they are recovering.

Anyone who has a long-term illness knows that recovering at home can be lonely. This can be especially true for children. They may feel left out. Now, these children may have a high-tech friend to help feel less lonely. That friend is a robot. The robot is called AV1. AV1 goes to school for a child who is homebound while recovering from a long-term illness. And the child's school friends must help. They carry the robot between classes and place the robot on the child's desk.

A Norwegian company called No Isolation created the robot. The co-founders of No Isolation are Karen Dolva and Marius Aabel. Dolva explains how the robot AV1 works. She says, "From home, the child uses a phone to start the robot. Then they use the same device to control the robot's movements. At school, the robot becomes the eyes, ears and voice of the child."

So, it sits at the child's desk in the classroom and the child uses a phone to start it, control its

movement with touch, and talk through it.

The student can take part in classroom activities from wherever they are recovering—whether at home or from a hospital bed. The robot is equipped with speakers, microphones and cameras that make communication easy.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了一款为因处于疾病康复状态而长期无法上学的孩子设计的机器人。通过它,孩子们可以在任何康复的地方参与课堂活动。

1. What's the meaning of the underlined word "isolated" in Paragraph 1?

- A. Kept apart.
- B. Difficult to learn.
- C. Unhappy or stressful.
- D. Full of hope.

A 词义猜测题。根据第一段中的“children who are recovering from long-term illnesses in the hospital or at home”可知,因为长期在医院或家里,他们可能会感觉与朋友和同学隔绝了,由此可知画线单词的词义为“隔绝,分离”。故选 A。

2. What are children unable to do through the robot?

- A. Taking part in the class.
- B. Talking with his friends.
- C. Writing on the blackboard.
- D. Hearing their teachers.

C 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“The robot takes their place at school. Through the robot,

the children can hear their teachers and friends. They also can take part in class from wherever they are recovering.”及倒数第二段中的“talk through it”可知,机器人代替了孩子们在学校的位置;通过机器人,孩子们可以听到他们的老师和朋友的声音,可以在任何地方参与课堂活动,也可以通过它与他人交谈,而文中没有提到孩子们可以在黑板上写字。故选 C。

3. How do children control the robot's movements?

- A. By talking with the robot.
- B. By taking part in class activities.
- C. By using the microphones equipped in it.
- D. By touching a phone.

D 细节理解题。根据倒数第二段中的“and the child uses a phone to start it, control its movement with touch, and talk through it”可知,孩子们通过手机控制机器人的移动。故选 D。

4. What's the robot mainly designed for?

- A. Children who have just recovered from illnesses.
- B. Children who can't go to school for a long time.
- C. Children who are bored with going to school.
- D. Children who can't see, hear or speak.

B 推理判断题。根据第一段中的“A small robot may help children who are recovering from long-term illnesses in the hospital or at home.”可知,这款机器人是为那些在医院或家里因处于疾病康复状态而长期无法上学的儿童设计的。故选 B。

II. 七选五

When you start a new job, you'll probably be introduced to a lot of new people on your first day. And it's important to make a good impression. The following are some practical tips to help you.

Show up early.

This might seem easy, but many people don't do it. 1. To make sure you can arrive early, give yourself extra time to get ready in the morning and to travel to your destination.

2.

It can be difficult to find the right balance between having an influence on your new role, and disturbing the balance of the delicate office ecosystem. You don't want to walk in and get into trouble, but you also don't want to fade into the background, either.

Take plenty of notes.

It's a great idea to bring a small notebook and a pen with you on your first day for taking down notes. Don't be shy about recording information that you know will be useful to you later, like names and passwords. You're likely to face data-overload on your first day. 3.

Watch your body language.

You've probably read that body language is important for job interviews, but it can also be a valuable tool in creating a lasting impression when you start a new job. On your first day, be careful of conveying powerful body language. 4. And do your best to avoid negative body language, such as yawning, frowning, or standing with your hands in your pockets.

Step away from social media.

While on your first day at the office you must have all sorts of feelings—nerves, anxiety, joy, even boredom—resist the desire to share it on social media. When it comes to updating your friends and followers about the status of your newfound employment, always be cautious and assume your bosses are watching. 5.

- A. Almost certainly, they will in fact
- B. Be positive and show interest
- C. Be enthusiastic, but not overbearing (自大的)
- D. Smile often and look people in the eye
- E. Body language is what we should avoid
- F. Arriving 5 to 10 minutes early gives you time to settle in
- G. So taking notes is a great way to keep on top of things

答案:1~5 FCGDA

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—
Language points

学习任务目标

- 1. Compare and tell the differences between life in the past and at present.
- 2. Get the main idea of the text.
- 3. Get the specific information about the old and new Rainbow Bookstore.
- 4. Put what you have learnt into practice.

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- 1. He has struggled against the disease for the past five **decades**. 十年
- 2. Thick cobwebs (蜘蛛网) hung in the **dusty** corners. 布满灰尘的
- 3. We were a pretty inexperienced **bunch** of people. 一群
- 4. His mother bought him a new **tablet** from the shop. 平板电脑
- 5. The librarian asked me to replace the book on the **shelf** after reading. 搁板, 架子
- 6. A person could put the **bricks** together to build something. 砖, 砖块
- 7. **Jazz** is a type of music that has a strong beat and parts for performers to play alone. 爵士乐

II. 拓展词汇知变形

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| <u>sympathy</u> <i>n.</i> 同情 | <u>sympathetic</u> <i>adj.</i> 同情的 |
| <u>dusty</u> <i>adj.</i> 布满灰尘的 | <u>dust</u> <i>n.</i> 尘土; 灰尘 <u>dustbin</u> <i>n.</i> 垃圾箱 |
| <u>furniture</u> <i>n.</i> 家具 | <u>furnish</u> <i>v.</i> 为(房屋或房间)配备家具; 提供, 供应 <u>furnished</u> <i>adj.</i> (房屋、房间等)配备家具的 |
| <u>saleswoman</u> <i>n.</i> 女销售员 | <u>salesman</u> <i>n.</i> 销售员 <u>sale</u> <i>n.</i> 出售; 促销 |
| <u>leadership</u> <i>n.</i> 领导; 领导地位 | <u>leader</u> <i>n.</i> 领袖, 领导者; 领先的人 <u>lead</u> <i>v.</i> 引导; 领导; 带领; 过……(的生活) |

续表

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| <u>organic</u> <i>adj.</i> 有机的; 绿色的 | <u>organism</u> <i>n.</i> 有机体; 生物体; 有机组织 |
| <u>compete</u> <i>v.</i> 竞争 | <u>competition</u> <i>n.</i> 竞争 |
| | <u>competitor</u> <i>n.</i> 竞争者 |
| | <u>competitive</u> <i>adj.</i> 有竞争力的 |
| <u>mist</u> <i>n.</i> 薄雾, 雾霭 | <u>misty</u> <i>adj.</i> 多雾的 |

III. 补全短语

- 1. for good 永远, 永久
- 2. in good hands 得到很好的照看; 经营有方
- 3. take over 接手, 接管
- 4. pop up 突然出现, 冒出来
- 5. as if 好像
- 6. a bunch of 一群
- 7. drop in/by 顺道拜访
- 8. wave goodbye to 向……挥手道别

IV. 补全句子

- 1. 句型公式: 现在分词短语作状语
Sighing deeply, he told me how it was becoming difficult to run an independent bookstore.
他深深地叹了一口气, 告诉我经营一家独立书店正变得多么困难。
- 2. 句型公式: as if 引导方式状语从句
Childhood memories came back to me so clearly, as if the events had happened only yesterday.
童年的记忆如此清晰地浮现在我的脑海里, 仿佛这些事情就发生在昨天。
- 3. 句型公式: where 引导非限制性定语从句
The large board in the corner had been replaced by a big screen, where customers' comments on the month's best-seller were being displayed.
书店角落里的大板子已被换成了一个大屏幕, 顾客对本月畅销书的评论正展现在上面。

◦ 任务型课堂 ◦

1. sympathy *n.* 同情

[教材原文] I tried to think of some words of **sympathy**, but I had to admit that the Rainbow Bookstore couldn't stay in business much longer. 我努力想出一些同情的话,但我不得不承认彩虹书店无法再维持营业了。

[归纳拓展]

express/feel/have sympathy for sb. 对某人表示同情

express/feel/have sympathy on sth. 对某事表示同情

out of sympathy for 出于对……的同情

have no sympathy with 不同意;不同情……

in sympathy with 同情;支持……

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① He devoted himself to charity out of sympathy for the poor.

② The seamen went on strike in sympathy with the dockers.

③ My daughter expressed a lot of sympathy for the people who were begging from the passing shoppers.

(2) 写作微练

(读后续写之人物描写) 她对那个孩子表现出极大的同情,给他食物和保暖的衣服。

She showed great sympathy for the child, giving him food and warm clothes.

2. furniture *n.* 家具

[教材原文] We spent hours reading, seated on the store's old but comfortable **furniture**.

我们坐在店里陈旧而舒适的家具上,读上几个钟头的书。

[归纳拓展]

(1) furnish *v.* 为(房屋或房间)配备家具;提供,供应……

furnish... with... 用……装备……;向……提供/供应……

(2) furnished *adj.* (房屋、房间等)配备家具的
be furnished with... 装备有……,安装有……

名师点拨 ■■■■

furniture 属于表示总称的物质名词,没有复数形式,也不能与不定冠词连用,只能用作不可数

名词。即使其前有 all, some 等修饰,也不能用复数。

若要表示“一件家具”,可用 a(n) piece (article, item) of furniture; 若要表示“一套家具”,可用 a suite of furniture。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① —Have you moved into your new house?

—Not yet. I've no time to get it furnished (furnish).

② All the furniture (furnish) in the room is made of wood.

③ Our new classrooms are furnished with modern facilities.

(2) 写作微练

(读后续写之环境描写) 这个小村舍配备了简单但舒适的木制家具。

The small cottage was furnished with simple but comfortable wooden furniture.

3. compete *v.* 竞争

[教材原文] Traditional bookstores can't **compete** with large bookstore chains.

传统书店无法与大型连锁书店竞争。

[归纳拓展]

(1) compete with/against 与……竞争

compete for 为……而竞争

compete to do sth. 竞争做某事

(2) competition *n.* 竞争;竞赛

(3) competitor *n.* 竞争者,对手

(4) competitive *adj.* 竞争的;比赛的;求胜心切的;有竞争力的

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① Do you think those small independent bookstores can't compete with/against the big national chains?

② Several companies are competing to gain (gain) the contract.

③ Competition (compete) among youths to enter the best colleges is intense.

④ Nobody can entirely keep away from this competitive (compete) world.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之报道) 来自世界各地的运动员在奥

运会上争夺金牌。

Athletes from all over the world compete for the gold medal in the Olympics.

多义词汇 专练

1. **tablet**: A. *n.* 平板电脑 B. *n.* 药片

C. *n.* (刻有文字的)匾,牌,碑

①The historical **tablet** detailed the events leading up to the founding of the city. C

②He bought a new **tablet** with a larger screen for better gaming experience. A

③She took a **tablet** to relieve her headache. B

2. **humble**: A. *adj.* 普通的 B. *adj.* 谦逊的,虚心的
C. *v.* 轻松打败(尤指强大的对手)

①The newcomer **humbled** the established players in the tournament, showing great potential. C

②The cottage, though **humble** in appearance, provided a cosy living space for the family. A

③Despite his fame and fortune, he remains **humble** and grounded, never losing sight of his roots. B

Unit 3 课后素养评价(十)

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points

I. 单句语法填空

- The people here have no sympathy for Jan; after all, it's all her own fault.
- The young man humbly (humble) apologised for what happened at the party.
- Young children will usually compete for their mother's attention and affection.
- The family spent hours together, seated (seat) on the shore's old but comfortable chairs.
- This is a café selling (sell) pollution-free food, and there are many community events such as book reading, poetry recitals and so on.
- As you can see, corporate knowledge combined (combine) with creativity has brought my humble bookshop into the 21st century.
- Tom, climbing on a chair, took down the dusty (dust) book from a shelf.
- We have witnessed what we can do to bring history back to life, so we can learn things for the centuries to come.

II. 短语填空

drop in; in good hands; a bunch of; for good; pop up; take over

- I decided to drop in on you while I was passing.
- Following his father's will, he was given the right to take over all businesses.
- With the development of the society, many new words pop up in Chinese language.
- I received a bunch of red roses on my birthday.
- Some of the nation's manufacturing jobs may be

gone for good.

- Just going to make sure our brother is in good hands.

III. 完成句子

- Seeing the customers come in, the saleswomen all greet with a smile.
看到顾客们进来,女售货员们都笑脸相迎。
- Computers which/that play an important role in our life also have its own disadvantages.
在我们生活中起重要作用的电脑也有其不足之处。
- He speaks English perfectly as if he had lived in the UK for many years.
他英语讲得很好,好像他在英国生活了很多年似的。
- This is a place where anyone can come and share a story.
这是一个人人都可以来分享故事的地方。

IV. 完形填空

At an airport I overheard a father and a daughter in their last moments together. They had announced her plane's 1 and standing near the door, he said to his daughter, "I love you. I wish you enough." She said, "Daddy, our life together has been 2 enough. Your love is all I ever needed. I wish you enough, too, Daddy." They kissed goodbye and she left.

He walked over towards the window where I 3. I could see he wanted to cry. I tried not to disturb his privacy, but he 4 me in by asking, "Did you ever say goodbye to someone you love, knowing it would be forever?" "Yes, I have," I

5. Saying that brought 6 memories I had of expressing my love and appreciation for all my Dad had done for me. After thirty seconds of silence, "Forgive me for asking, but why is this a(n) 7 goodbye?" I asked. "I am old and she lives much too far away. The 8 is that her next trip back will be for my funeral," he said. "When you were saying goodbye I heard you say, 'I wish you enough!' May I ask what that means?" He began to 9.

"That's a wish that has been handed down from other generations. My 10 used to say it to everyone." He paused for a moment and looked up as if trying to remember it in detail. He smiled even more. "When we said I wish you enough, we were wanting the other person to have a life filled with enough good things to 11 them," he continued and then turning towards me he shared the following as if he were reciting it from 12.

"I wish you enough sun to keep your attitude 13. I wish you enough rain to appreciate the sun more. I wish you enough happiness to keep your spirit alive. I wish you enough pain so that the smallest joys in life appear much 14. I wish you enough gain to satisfy your wanting. I wish you enough loss to appreciate all that you have. I wish enough 'Hellos' to get you through the 15 'Goodbye'." He then began to sob and walked away.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述的是一对父女在机场告别时的场景,这一幕深深触动了坐在旁边的作者。后面又讲述了这位父亲和作者之间的一些交流,主要是解释了自己和女儿告别时所说的话的意思,用一句"I wish you enough!"贯穿全文,表达了父亲对女儿的爱。

1. A. arrival B. leaving C. delay D. landing
B 根据下文可知,此处应该是女儿的航班将要起飞了。故选 B。
2. A. more than B. or rather
C. rather than D. less than
A 根据语境可知,more than enough 是指女儿表示和父亲一起生活的时光已经很足够了。故选 A。
3. A. sat B. worked
C. hid D. travelled
A 句意:他朝着我坐的窗边走来。故选 A。
4. A. hated B. joked
C. welcomed D. stared

C 根据上下文可知,他开始和作者交谈,由此可知,此处他应该是欢迎作者的。故选 C。

5. A. added B. replied C. doubted D. shouted
B 分析语境可知,此处为作者的回应。故选 B。
6. A. back B. up C. down D. across
A bring back 为固定搭配,意为“使人回忆起来”。结合语境可知,他的话勾起了作者的回忆。故选 A。
7. A. forever B. enough C. family D. flight
A 句意:“请原谅我冒昧地问一下,为什么是永别呢?”我问道。根据下文可知,这可能是父亲最后一次见到女儿了。故选 A。
8. A. condition B. reaction
C. news D. reality
D 句意:“事实上,她下次再回来就可能是我的葬礼了。”他说。the reality is 为固定搭配,意为“事实是……”。故选 D。
9. A. cry B. smile
C. wish D. complain
B 句意:他开始微笑。根据下文的“He smiled even more.”可推测,此处应为微笑。故选 B。
10. A. teachers B. friends
C. children D. parents
D 句意:我的父母过去常常对每个人这么说。根据上下文可知,作者勾起了老人对于父母的回忆,此处应为父母所说的话。故选 D。
11. A. guide B. interest
C. support D. find
C 句意:“当我们说我希望你知足常乐时,我们希望对方生活中充满足够多的美好事物支持他们的生活。”故选 C。
12. A. examination B. memory
C. communication D. impression
B 句意:……他转向我,好像是从记忆中背诵出来一样,继续跟我分享了下面的话。故选 B。
13. A. sunny B. curious
C. relaxed D. simple
A 根据语境可知,生活中充满阳光才能使自己的生活态度变得阳光。故选 A。
14. A. sadder B. lower C. closer D. bigger
D 根据语境可知,经历了足够的痛苦后,生活中小小的幸福都会被放大。故选 D。
15. A. first B. lost C. only D. final
D 句意:我希望有足够多的“问候”能让你度过最后的“告别”。这里与上文提到的永别相呼应。故选 D。

Section Ⅲ Using language

学习任务目标

- 1. Be familiar with and use the past continuous passive.
- 2. Note the pragmatic functions of the past continuous passive, and learn to describe the changes in the news industry.
- 3. Summarise the rules of the past continuous passive in a mind map.
- 4. Cooperate with your partners, learn to embrace the changes brought by the development of society and feel proud of our country's development.

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- 1. The **era** when foreign goods flooded the Chinese market is gone for ever. 时代
- 2. If you work **alongside** other people, you all work together in the same place. (与……)一起
- 3. An **initiative** is an important act or statement that is intended to solve a problem. 倡议
- 4. A substance that is **solid** is very hard or firm. 坚实的
- 5. With the **reform and opening-up** deepening (深化), the economy of China has developed rapidly. 改革开放
- 6. The **Belt and Road Initiative** has a very positive effect on the world. “一带一路”倡议

II. 拓展词汇知变形

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|--|---|
| <u>emphasise</u> <i>v.</i> 强调 | <u>emphasis</u> <i>n.</i> 强调;重点 |
| | <u>emphatic</u> <i>adj.</i> 强调的 |
| | <u>emphatically</u> <i>adv.</i> 强调地;断然地 |
| <u>reconstruction</u> <i>n.</i> 重建;修复 | <u>reconstruct</u> <i>v.</i> 重建;修复 |
| <u>journalist</u> <i>n.</i> 新闻工作者;新闻记者 | <u>journal</u> <i>n.</i> 日志,日记;期刊 |
| | <u>journalism</u> <i>n.</i> 新闻业,新闻工作 |
| <u>socialist</u> <i>adj.</i> 社会主义的 | <u>social</u> <i>adj.</i> 社会的 |
| | <u>society</u> <i>n.</i> 社会 |

续表

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <u>economic</u> <i>adj.</i> 经济(上)的 | <u>economics</u> <i>n.</i> 经济学 |
| | <u>economical</u> <i>adj.</i> 节俭的,经济的 |
| | <u>economist</u> <i>n.</i> 经济学家 |
| | <u>economy</u> <i>n.</i> 经济 |
| <u>occupation</u> <i>n.</i> 工作,职业 | <u>occupied</u> <i>adj.</i> 被占领的 |
| | <u>occupy</u> <i>v.</i> 占用,占据 |

III. 补全短语

- 1. tear down 拆毁,拆除
- 2. clear away 把……清除掉
- 3. face to face 面对面
- 4. pave the way 铺平道路;创造条件
- 5. have a(n)... influence on ... 对……有……的影响
- 6. break new ground 开拓新天地
- 7. without doubt 毫无疑问
- 8. figure out 弄清楚,弄明白

IV. 补全句子

- 1. 句型公式:while 引导时间状语从句
While all this was going on, a journalist was taking photos.
当所有这些进行的时候,一名记者正在拍照。
- 2. 句型公式:It's great to do sth.
It's great to see so many of you representing the many different companies that have made the park their professional home.
很高兴看到你们中的很多人代表很多不同的公司,他们把这个园区当成了自己的专业大本营。

3. 句型公式: 现在分词短语作状语

It has allowed China to accomplish in just four decades what took Western industrialised countries more than 200 years to achieve, breaking new ground in the history of human achievement.

它使中国用了仅仅四十年的时间就取得了西方工业化国家 200 多年才取得的成就, 在人类成就历史上开拓了新天地。

4. 句型公式: be being done

I saw that an interview was being done face to face.
我看到一个正在进行的面对面的采访。

◦ 任务型课堂 ◦

1. emphasise v. 强调, 着重; 使突出, 使明显

[教材原文] Which sentence **emphasises** process and which **emphasises** result?

哪一句话强调过程, 哪一句话强调结果?

[归纳拓展]

(1) emphasis *n.* 强调; 重点

(2) put emphasis/stress on (doing) sth. 强调(做)……, 把重点放在……

名师点拨 ■■■■

emphasise 的同义词有 stress, highlight, 表示“强调, 着重; 突出”。

In the past we **stressed** aid, while now we **stress** economic cooperation.

我们过去侧重(提供)援助, 而现在强调经济合作。

It should **highlight** what you can offer the company, such as a specific skill or experience.

应该重点突出你能为公司提供什么, 比如一项特殊技能或(工作)经验。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① I must put emphasis on the fact that they are only children.

② They put emphasis on developing (develop) nuclear power.

③ Emphasise (emphasise) the solutions you provide, not the problems you raise.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之推荐信) 这本**强调积极思考**的书激励了数百万读者。

The book, which emphasises the power of positive thinking, has inspired millions of readers.

2. apply v. (通常以书面形式) 申请, 请求; 使用, 应用

[教材原文] ... with more students than ever **applying** to study Computer Science at university.

……与以往相比, 更多的学生申请在大学学习计算机科学。

[归纳拓展]

(1) apply (to...) for sth. (向……) 申请得到某物
apply sth. to sth. 将某物应用于某物

apply to do sth. 申请做某事

apply oneself to sth. 专心于某事

(2) application *n.* 申请; 应用

(3) applicant *n.* 申请人; 申请者

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① He applied to study (study) composition with the well-known musician.

② I am writing to apply for the post of volunteer for our school English association.

③ Have you filled in the application (apply) form for your passport yet?

④ He was one of the 30 applicants (apply) for the manager's job.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之建议信) 如果你**专心学习**, 你肯定会取得好成绩。

If you apply yourself to your studies, you will surely get good grades.

3. 现在分词(短语)作时间状语

[教材原文] **Walking home a few days ago**, I saw that people were doing reconstruction work on the old market.

前几天走在回家的路上, 我看见一些人正在旧市场上进行重建工作。

[归纳拓展]

现在分词(短语)作时间状语时, 相当于一个时间状语从句, 其逻辑主语为句子主语。当强调现在分词所表示的动作与句子谓语所表示的动作同时发生时, 可加 when 或 while 进行强调; 当现在分词所表示的动作发生在句子谓语所表示的动作之前时, 使用现在分词的完成式。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① Walking (walk) slowly across the grass, he pointed the gun at the wolf.

② Having been told (tell) many times, he still made the same mistake.

③ Having received (receive) the letter, I decided to write back at once.

④ Having worked (work) among the peasants for many years, he knew them very well.

⑤ When seeing the mouse, he couldn't help shouting loudly.

(2) 写作微练

(读后续写之情绪描写) 听到这个消息时, 她突然哭了起来。

Hearing the news, she burst into tears.

语法研习课

过去进行时的被动语态

语法感知

① Two of the glasses were broken when they **were being washed**.

② We had to take another way because the road **was being repaired**.

③ This road **was being built** at this time last year.

④ I **was being asked** to go to the party at that time.

句①至④为过去进行时的被动语态形式, 表示过去正在进行或者发生的被动动作, 句子的主语与谓语构成被动关系。

语法精讲

一、理解概念

过去进行时的被动语态表示过去某个时刻正在进行或者发生的被动动作, 构成为“was/were being + 过去分词”。

They **were planting** trees at this time yesterday. (过去进行时的主动语态)

Trees **were being planted** by them at this time yesterday. (过去进行时的被动语态)

二、基本结构

1. 过去进行时的被动语态的肯定式: 主语 + was/were + being + 过去分词。

Another bridge **was being built** over the Changjiang River then.

那时长江上正在建造另一座大桥。

2. 过去进行时的被动语态的否定式: 主语 + was/were + not + being + 过去分词。

The car **wasn't being repaired** by me then.

那时这辆车不是我修理的。

3. 过去进行时的被动语态的一般疑问句需将 was/were 提到主语的前面。

Was a new library **being put up** in their school then?

他们学校当时正在建一座新图书馆吗?

4. 过去进行时的被动语态的特殊疑问句: 特殊疑问词 + was/were (+ 主语) + being + 过去分词?

What was being built then?

那时正在建造什么?

三、基本用法

1. 过去进行时的被动语态同它的主动语态一样, 表示过去正在进行的被动动作。

He **was being interviewed** by our headmaster at this time yesterday.

昨天这个时候他正在接受我们校长的采访。

This film **was being shown** at this moment yesterday.

昨天这个时候这部电影正在被放映。

2. 过去进行时的被动语态一般不与表示一段时间的状语或表示次数的状语连用, 这时需要用完成时的被动语态。

The watch **was being repaired** twice.

改成 The watch **has been repaired** twice.

The house over there **was being built** for two months.

改成 The house over there **has been built** for two months.

语法冲关

I. 单句语法填空

1. Another highway was being built (build) here at this time last year.

2. My washing machine is being repaired (repair) this week, so I have to wash my clothes by hand.

3. Our school was built (build) ten years ago.

4. A small village was washed (wash) away by floods last week.
5. He said that the man was being operated (operate) on at this time yesterday.
6. I was being punished (punish) by my father at this time yesterday.
7. He was being interviewed (interview) then, so he didn't answer the phone.

II. 按要求完成句子

1. The repairmen were repairing the damaged bridge then. (变为被动语态)
→ The damaged bridge was being repaired by the repairmen then.
2. At that time the villagers were destroying their forest. (变为被动语态)
→ Their forest was being destroyed by the villagers at that time.
3. Were the children taken to the zoo by Mr Wu last Sunday? (变为主动语态)
→ Did Mr Wu take the children to the zoo last Sunday?
4. 他的邻居上个月被提升为高级经理。(翻译句子)
His neighbour was promoted to senior manager last month.
5. ——为什么他们没有准时开车到那儿?
——因为那条路正在维修中。(翻译句子)
— Why didn't they drive there on time?
— Because the road was being repaired.

Unit 3 课后素养评价 (十一)

Section III Using language

I. 词语填空

emphasise; economic; occupation; reform; in favour of; pave the way; tear down; figure out

1. However, others are in favour of the inclusion because it is hard to say whether it will threaten the Chinese language.
2. What matters in reform is not words but action.
3. Most doctors emphasise the fact that HRT cannot delay aging.
4. The new policy will hopefully pave the way for us to explore better ways of treating this condition.
5. To our delight, the pace of economic growth is picking up.
6. The city government has decided to tear down these buildings to make room for the new highway.
7. Can you figure out the price per kilo for me?
8. I was looking for an occupation which was going to be an adventure.
9. Two key qualities of journalists (journalist) are an inquisitive nature and the ability to ask the right questions at interviews!
10. Many soldiers were sent to the region to aid the reconstruction (reconstruct) after the big earthquake.
11. It occurred to him that he had an important conference to attend the next morning.
12. The teaching plan was being discussed (discuss) at that time.
13. Was the TV set being fixed (fix) at this time yesterday?
14. A recent study suggests weather has an influence on your mood.
15. I felt a little nervous when I was being interviewed (interview).

III. 阅读理解

Life will probably be very different in 2050. First of all, it seems that TV channels will have disappeared by 2050. Instead, people will choose a programme from a “menu” and a computer will send the programme directly to the television. Today, we can use the World Wide Web to read newspaper stories and see pictures on a computer. By 2050, music, films, programmes, newspapers and books will come to us in this way.

In many places, agriculture is developing quickly and people are growing fruit and vegetables for export. This uses a lot of water. Therefore, there could be serious water shortages. Some scientists predict that water could be the cause of war if we don't save it now.

In the future, cars will run on new, clean fuels and they will go very fast. Cars will have computers to control the speed of them and there won't be any accidents. Today, many cars have computers that tell drivers exactly where they are. By 2050, the computer will control the car and drive it to your destination. Also, by 2050, planes will fly people from Los Angeles to Tokyo in just two hours.

Some big companies now prefer to use robots that do not ask for pay rises or go on strike, and work 24 hours a day. By 2050, we will see robots everywhere—in factories, schools, offices, hospitals, shops and homes.

By 2050, we will be able to help blind and deaf people see again and hear again. Nowadays, scientists have discovered how to control genes and have already produced clones of animals. By 2050, scientists will be able to produce clones of people and decide how they look, how they behave and how much intelligence they have. Scientists will be able to do these things, but should they?

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了到2050年,高科技在信息来源、农业、交通、机器人及克隆方面带给人们的影响。

1. How will people mainly get information by 2050?
A. Watching TV.
B. Reading newspapers.
C. Listening to the radio.
D. Turning to a website.
- D 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“Today, we can use the World Wide Web to read newspaper

stories and see pictures on a computer. By 2050, music, films, programmes, newspapers and books will come to us in this way.”可知,到了2050年,人们了解信息的方式将会主要依靠网络。

2. What can be inferred from Paragraph 2?
A. The need for water in the future will increase a lot.
B. Future wars will lead to an increasing need for water.
C. There can be no agriculture without enough water.
D. The population will decrease for lack of water.
- A 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“In many places, agriculture is developing quickly and people are growing fruit and vegetables for export. This uses a lot of water.”可知,农业发展迅速,因而会增加用水量。故选A。
3. Why do big companies prefer robots to humans?
A. Because robots will go on strike.
B. Because robots are everywhere.
C. Because robots don't require us to increase their payment.
D. Because robots are more intelligent than human beings.
- C 细节理解题。根据第四段中的“Some big companies now prefer to use robots that do not ask for pay rises or go on strike, and work 24 hours a day.”可知,有些大公司喜欢使用机器人代替人工作,是因为机器人不会要求涨工资或举行罢工。故选C。
4. What will play the biggest part in the quality of the future life?
A. Medicine. B. Technology.
C. Education. D. Agriculture.
- B 推理判断题。第一、三、四、五段中提到了网络、交通、机器人以及克隆技术的进步带来的改变,由此可以判断,人们生活质量的提高是基于科技的发展。

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

学习任务目标

1. Obtain the main points and information of the text, and understand the author's attitude and writing intention.
2. Explain your view in English, use examples to explain the reasons for or against, and improve your logical and critical thinking ability.
3. Introduce a thing that may disappear in the future, look at the "change" and "unchanged" in life with a rational and objective attitude, and deepen the understanding of the unit theme.

○ 自主式预习 ○

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. A distinction should be made between the primary (主要的) and **secondary** tasks. 次要的
2. The **components** of something are the parts that it is made of. 组成部分
3. The judges could not decide which **category** it belonged in. 类别
4. He had walked a long way and it had not lifted his **soul**. 精神
5. The new airport will **facilitate** the development of tourism. 促进
6. She shook her head with a **gesture** of impatience. 姿势

II. 拓展词汇知变形

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| <u>expand</u> <i>v.</i> (使) 扩大; 增加 | <u>expansion</u> <i>n.</i> 扩张 |
| <u>intention</u> <i>n.</i> 意图, 目的 | <u>intend</u> <i>v.</i> 计划, 打算 |
| <u>adaptation</u> <i>n.</i> 改编版 | <u>adapt</u> <i>v.</i> 适应; 改编 |
| <u>accessible</u> <i>adj.</i> 易懂的 | <u>access</u> <i>v.</i> 进入, 获取 <i>n.</i> 入口 |
| <u>educator</u> <i>n.</i> 教育工作者 | <u>education</u> <i>n.</i> 教育 |
| | <u>educated</u> <i>adj.</i> 受过教育的 |
| | <u>educate</u> <i>v.</i> 教育 |
| <u>urgently</u> <i>adv.</i> 紧急地; 急迫地 | <u>urgency</u> <i>n.</i> 紧急的事 |
| | <u>urgent</u> <i>adj.</i> 紧急的 |

续表

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| <u>convincing</u> <i>adj.</i> 有说服力的, 使人信服的 | <u>convince</u> <i>v.</i> 使确信 |
| | <u>convinced</u> <i>adj.</i> 确信的, 信服的 |
| <u>emotional</u> <i>adj.</i> 情绪(上)的, 情感(上)的 | <u>emotion</u> <i>n.</i> 情绪, 情感 |
| <u>facial</u> <i>adj.</i> 脸上的; 面部的 | <u>face</u> <i>n.</i> 脸; 面部 |
| <u>tendency</u> <i>n.</i> 趋势 | <u>tend</u> <i>v.</i> 倾向于; 照料; 护理 |

III. 补全短语

1. be limited to 被限制在; 局限于……
2. have an advantage over 比……有优势; 胜过
3. for instance 例如
4. focus on 集中(注意力、精力等)于……
5. get changed 换衣服
6. search for 搜寻; 寻找
7. change into 变成
8. reply with 用……回答
9. spread to 传播到; 扩展到

IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: the way that/in which
Users of emojis say that they facilitate the way in which we communicate and express ourselves.
表情符号的使用者说它们更便于我们沟通交流、表达自我。
2. 句型公式: It takes sb. some time...
It took me a minute before I realised what it meant.

我花了一会儿的工夫才理解这条消息的意思。

3. 句型公式: It seems that...

It seems that emojis have clear advantages over written language.

表情符号似乎比书面语言更具明显优势。

4. 句型公式: with 复合结构

With a smiling or sad face added to a message or post, your reader can “see” your facial expression while reading your words.

在信息或帖子中加一个微笑表情或悲伤表情, 你的读者就可以在读你的文字时“看到”你的面部表情。

5. 句型公式: would rather do sth. than do sth.

After all, how many of us today would rather send a message packed with emojis than make a telephone call?

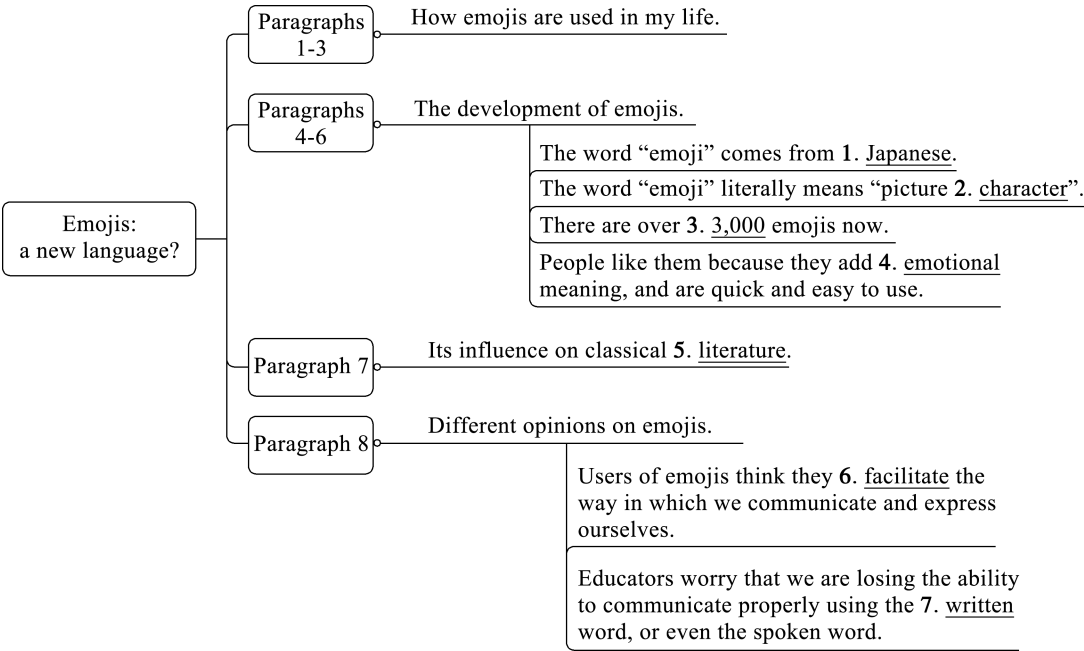
毕竟, 如今, 我们当中有多少人宁愿发送一条满是表情符号的信息, 也不愿意打个电话呢?

任务型课堂

Part 1 课文理解

文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text.



文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text.

- Why was an emoji chosen as the Oxford Dictionaries Word of the Year?
A. Because emojis are easy to type.
B. Because emojis make people happy.
C. Because emojis are popular.
D. Because emojis add emotional meaning.
- What will people do when they can't find the proper words to express their feelings?
A. They use emojis.
B. They use gestures.
C. They just smile.
D. They just go away.

- What's the meaning of "take away the heart and soul of Shakespeare's plays"?
A. The heart is missing.
B. The Shakespeare's plays are taken away.
C. It cannot express the spirits of the plays.
D. Shakespeare's plays are lost.
- What's the author's purpose in writing this text?
A. To guide readers to use emojis properly.
B. To discuss the development and influence of emojis.
C. To criticise the increased use of emojis.
D. To entertain readers with examples of how emojis have been used.

答案: 1~4 CACB

○语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them.

1. For instance, if your friend is moving across the country, you may just send them a string of crying faces to express your sadness over your separation.

[句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句。其中 if 引导条件状语从句；不定式短语 to express your sadness over your separation 作目的状语。

[尝试翻译]举个例子，假如你的朋友将要搬去另一个国家，你可以发给他们一串哭脸，来表达自己对于你们将要分离的忧伤之情。

2. Users of emojis say that they facilitate the way in which we communicate and express ourselves.

[句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句。其中 that 引

导宾语从句；in which 引导定语从句，修饰名词 way。

[尝试翻译]表情符号的使用者说它们更便于我们沟通交流、表达自我。

○思维品质培养

Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions.

1. Why do we use emojis in classics?

To make it easier for young readers to understand the classics.

2. What are the characteristics of emojis as a popular culture? Give your reasons.

Emojis are time-sensitive. Because new emojis appear every day, closer to the hot spots and more interesting. The old emojis seem boring by comparison, and their value decreases over time.

Part 2 语言梳理

1. intention n. 意图，目的

[教材原文]The **intention** of these adaptations is to make the classics more accessible to young readers.

这些改编本的目的是使经典著作更容易被年轻读者接受。

[归纳拓展]

(1)with an/the intention of 抱有……的目的；打算……

by/without intention 故意地/无意地

have no/every intention of doing sth. 无意做/一心做某事

(2)intend v. 计划，打算

intend to do sth. 打算做某事

intend sb. to do sth. 打算让某人做某事

be intended for 专供……使用；专为……而设计

had intended to do sth. 本打算做某事(实际上未做)

intend that... 打算……

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①What do you think was the author's intention (intend) in this passage?

②He wrote the letter with the intention of asking for some advice.

③It's reported that this money is intended for the development of the tourist industry.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之发言稿)召开这个会议旨在解决我

们目前面临的问题。

The meeting is intended to solve the problems we are facing currently.

2. adaptation n. 改编版

[教材原文]The intention of these **adaptations** is to make the classics more accessible to young readers.

这些改编本的目的是使经典著作更容易被年轻读者接受。

[归纳拓展]

(1)adapt v. 适应；改编

adapt to... 适应……

adapt oneself to... 使自己适应……

be adapted for 被改编成……

(2)adaptable adj. 能适应的，有适应能力的

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①He tried hard to adapt himself to the new conditions.

②Many children buy books after they have been adapted for television.

③Successful businesses are highly adaptable (adapt) to economic change.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之影评)这部电影改编自一部著名的小说。

The movie is adapted from a famous novel.

3. urgently adv. 紧急地；急迫地

[教材原文]And even if we could remember a

number and needed to call it **urgently**, it would still be more convenient to borrow a mobile phone from someone else than walk around looking for a phone box.

即使我们能记住一个电话号码,紧急时需要拨打,从其他人那里借个手机也比在附近找个电话亭方便。

[归纳拓展]

(1)in urgent need of 急需

(2)urge *vt.* 催促;极力主张;强烈要求
n. 冲动;强烈的愿望

urge sb. to do sth./into doing sth.
力劝/催促某人做某事

(3)urgency *n.* 紧急;催促;紧急的事

名师点拨

urge 用作动词,后面跟从句的时候要用 urge that sb. (should) do sth.或者 It is urged that sb. (should) do sth.,表示“强烈要求/极力主张某人做某事”。

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①In case of urgency (urge), call the police.

②The people in the earthquake-stricken area are in urgent (urge) need of food, medicine and shelters.

③Parents should actively urge their children to take (take) advantage of the opportunity to join sports teams.

④They urged that the library (should) be kept (keep) open during the vacation.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之倡议书)采取措施保护环境是**极为必要的**。

It is urgently necessary to take measures to protect the environment.

4. convincing *adj.* 有说服力的,使人信服的

[教材原文]What supporting arguments does the author give to make the point **convincing**?

为了使这一观点有说服力,作者提出了哪些论据?

[归纳拓展]

(1)convince *v.* 使确信;使相信;使信服;说服
convince sb. to do sth. 说服某人做某事
convince sb. of sth. 说服某人相信某事
convince sb. (that)... 说服某人相信……

(2)convinced *adj.* 确信的;信服的;坚信不疑的;有坚定信仰的

be convinced (that)... 确信/坚信……

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①You'll need to convince them of your enthusiasm for the job.

②It is true that many consumers are convinced to spend (spend) money on things they really do not need.

③Jennifer wasn't yet totally convinced (convince) that she'd profit from a more relaxed lifestyle.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之人物介绍)她**深信**努力工作会带来成功。

She is convinced that hard work will lead to success.

5. 状语从句的省略

[教材原文] **When first introduced** in Japan in 1999, emojis were limited to 176 simple designs. 表情符号于1999年首次在日本推出时,仅限于176个简单的图案。

[归纳拓展]

在状语从句中,如果从句的主语与主句的主语一致或者从句的主语为 it,且从句谓语中包含 be 动词,可以省去从句的主语和 be 动词,保留 be 动词之后的部分。常见的几种状语从句的省略:

①when, while, since, until, once 等引导的时间状语从句的省略。

②if, unless 引导的条件状语从句的省略。

③though, although, even if, even though,“疑问词+ever”或“no matter+疑问词”等引导的让步状语从句的省略。

④as, as though, as if 引导的方式状语从句的省略。

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①When comparing (compare) the two cities, we find they have much in common.

②While walking (walk) alone in the street, I heard my name called.

③Unless repaired (repair), the machine is of no use.

④He will come if asked (ask).

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之通知)即使**下大雨**,我们也不会改变计划。

Even if it is raining heavily, we will not change our plan.

多义词汇 专练

expand: A. v. 变得更自信(善谈) B. v. 扩展, 发展(业务) C. v. 扩大, 膨胀

① A tyre **expands** when you pump air into it. C

② We've **expanded** the business by opening two more stores. B

③ The guests started to **expand** a little after they had a glass or two of wine. A

Unit 3 课后素养评价(十二)

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

I. 单词拼写

- Both say they want to write literary books that are accessible (易懂的) to a general audience.
- The new system expanded (增加) the role of family doctors.
- An adaptation (改编版) of a book or play is a film or a television programme that is based on it.
- Schools were located in the same campus to facilitate (促进) the sharing of resources.
- It could also be broken down into its component (组成部分) parts—oxygen and hydrogen.
- The results can be divided into three main categories (类别).
- Experience is what matters—age is of secondary (次要的) importance.
- Now educators (教育工作者) are experimenting with ways to apply this model to academic subjects.

II. 单句语法填空

- He has already stated his intention (intend) to run for election.
- Toymakers are working to create these products for improving a child's emotional (emotion) intelligence.
- There is a growing tendency (tend) among employers to employ casual staff.
- Advanced technology has a great influence on/upon our daily life.
- Please send us the material at once; it's urgently (urgency) needed.
- Not only had he lied but his excuse wasn't a very convincing (convince) one.

III. 短语填空

instead of; be similar to; reply with; search for; be limited to; spread to; have an advantage over; have a tendency to; due to; replace... with...

- In the competition for a well-paid job, the graduates who can speak fluent English have an advantage over those who cannot.
- The doctor explained that our health might be at risk due to much smoking.
- It is not a good idea to miss meals and replace them with snacks.
- The new President's foreign policy is similar to that of the former.
- Instead of attending the meeting, it pleased him to play tennis.
- At present, all the experts are searching for the best way of curing the disease.
- With the advanced technology widely used, more and more people have a tendency to read e-books rather than paper books.
- As far as I am concerned, teaching should not be limited to the classroom.
- He replied with a smile and said, "Please excuse me, too."
- As a result, the disease spreads to even more people.

IV. 完成句子

- When heated, ice will be changed into water.
当冰受热时,它就会变成水。
- What surprised me was not what he said but the way (that/in which) he said it.
令我吃惊的不是他说的话而是他说话的方式。

3. In summer holidays, I would study in Shanghai as an exchange student rather than do a part-time job here.

暑假,我宁愿作为交换生在上海学习也不愿在这儿干兼职工作。

4. With all the things she needed bought, she went home.

买了她所需要的所有东西后,她回家了。

V. 语法填空

Classrooms 1. have changed (change) little in the past few centuries. Students attend class, take notes and do their homework. The teacher lectures and administrates a test. Students get their grades and move on to the next topic. By and large, students—2. especially (especial) the most disadvantaged ones—attend the school or university 3. built (build) near their home, regardless of its quality.

These routines are starting to change. In a small but growing number of schools, students watch 4. lectures (lecture) online and come to class prepared to handle homework and work with teachers and classmates. They interact with computer programmes that allow them to work 5. at their own pace. Teachers rely on the same programmes 6. to score (score) tests and essays. And local schools are no longer a pupil's only option. Start-ups and nonprofits make high-quality courses available online to anyone with an Internet 7. connection (connect).

What is driving this digital revolution? One factor is that schools and universities are under 8. greater (great) pressure than ever before. More and more students are seeking higher levels of education at a time 9. when many schools cannot hire the teachers they need. At the same time, governments and institutions are raising 10. the standard for what students should know at every stage of school.

VI. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假如某中学英文报开展关于生活变化的征文活动,请你根据下表提示的要点,以“Changes in Our Life”为题写一篇短文,简述社会、家庭、学校及个人生活中的变化,展望未来生活。

| | | |
|----|----------------------------|------------------|
| 变化 | 家乡 | 小路→宽路 |
| | 交通 | 步行、骑车→乘坐公共汽车、开汽车 |
| | 学校 | 旧校舍→新教学楼 |
| | 个人 | 不仅通过书本学习还通过电脑学习 |
| 愿望 | 更加美好的生活(或自拟一点内容,说明自己的理想生活) | |

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;
2. 内容必须包含所给的要点,可以适当发挥。

【参考范文】

Changes in Our Life

With the rapid development of China's economy, great changes have taken place in our life in the past years.

In my hometown, the most important change is that many paths have been turned into wide roads. As a result, it's easier for us to travel. People used to walk or ride bikes to work, but now they often take buses and many even drive their own cars. In schools students sit in the new teaching buildings instead of old houses. There they not only learn from books but also through computers.

I hope our life will become better and better in the future.

第二节 读后续写

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Julia had a habit of carelessness, which her mother failed to correct. Her parents were afraid if this carelessness were not corrected, it might produce very unhappy consequences. One morning, the following conversation took place between Julia and her mother:

“Julia, my dear, did you put the china cups in the cupboard when I told you?”

Julia started, “Oh! I forgot!”

“Where did you leave them?”

“I believe I left them in little Henry’s room—yes, I did, Mum; but I’ll go and put them away this minute.”

Without a moment’s delay, Julia ran into Henry’s room. What she found were broken pieces of the cups on the floor. Two-year-old Henry, in lifting his toy horse down, had overturned and broken the cups. What’s worse, she saw a ruined book on the desk near the window. Caroline, Julia’s sister who was one year older than her, had brought home from school a very interesting picture book. Julia read it and forgot to put it away. She forgot to close the window, too. Now the book and the curtains were wet from the rain outside.

“Oh, the cups! And the book! Mum, I am sorry!” Julia cried.

“Yes, Julia, I believe you are sorry, but make this sorrow of use to you. It is true the broken cups and the book cannot be restored; but let it be a warning to you in future. If you continue to be so careless, you will not only suffer from it yourself, but it will be a constant source of trouble to others.”

“Mum, I will change—indeed I will,” throwing her little arms round her mother’s neck, Julia promised sincerely.

Time passed on; Julia grew older, and no very

bad effects resulted from her carelessness. Her mother gladly hoped that the habit was conquered; but no, Julia was far from that.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

【参考范文】

One night the family were alarmed by Caroline’s cry, “Fire! Henry’s room!” Hearing Caroline’s scream, Julia got up from bed quickly, wrapped up her clothes and ran for Henry’s room. By now, the air was filled with thick smoke, which made it difficult for her to open her eyes and breathe. Henry’s crying kept coming from the bedroom. Julia found her way to Henry’s bed, picked him up with one hand, and rushed out of the room filled with smoke. Fortunately, with everyone’s efforts, the fire was put out.

Everybody praised Julia for saving Henry, but suddenly Julia remembered she had left her candle there the night before. Julia felt guilty about her behaviour and told the truth to her family, and her parents forgave her once again. However, Julia felt very upset in her heart, “Everything is due to my carelessness, so I must change this bad habit.” Her mother’s words rang in her ears, “If you continue to be so careless, you will not only suffer from it yourself, but it will be a constant source of trouble to others.” From then on, she took great care of everything in case she would cause too much trouble to her family.

★ ★ ★
迁 · 移 · 应 · 用

Part 1 应用文写作

——关于变化的作文

○写作指导

关于变化的作文属于说明文范畴,写作时要用简洁的文字介绍事物的特性、构造、变化或结果,同时要注意以下要点:

- 1. 合理地使用动词的各种时态,以此更好地说明文章的主题。
- 2. 注意对事物细节的描写,以此充分展现文章的主题。

○典题示例

假如你是某报社记者,得知中国将进一步促进西部地区发展,准备写一篇文章介绍有关情况。请根据以下提供的信息写一篇英文稿进行简要报道。要点如下:

1. 基本信息

①范围:包括6个省、5个自治区(autonomous region)、1个直辖市(municipality);

②面积:约685万平方公里;

③人口:约3.8亿。

2. 实施要点

①环境保护:退耕还林,防治污染;

②资源利用:开发利用西部地区丰富的自然资源;

③人才引进:广纳各类专家、技术人员。

注意:1. 词数80左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

Step 1: 审题谋篇

| | |
|----|--|
| 文体 | 说明文 |
| 时态 | 以 <u>一般将来时</u> 为主 |
| 人称 | 以 <u>第三人称</u> 为主 |
| 要点 | 1. 指出进一步促进西部地区发展的政策 2. 促进西部地区发展的主要战略 3. 促进西部地区发展将带来的变化 |

Step 2: 要点补全

- ①This part of China includes (包括) six provinces, five autonomous regions and one municipality.
- ②It covers an area of (占地面积) about 6.85 million square kilometres.
- ③We should take measures (采取措施) to prevent pollution.
- ④Western China is rich in (富含) natural resources.
- ⑤The natural resources can be exploited and made full use of (开发并充分利用).
- ⑥To meet the needs of (为了满足……的需要) the development, all kinds of experts and skilled workers are to be brought in (将被引进).

Step 3: 句式升级

①用分词作状语合并 Step 2 中的①②句

This part of China includes six provinces, five autonomous regions and one municipality, covering an area of about 6.85 million square kilometres.

②用被动语态改写 Step 2 中的③句

Measures should be taken to prevent pollution.

③用 which 引导的定语从句连接 Step 2 中的④⑤句

Western China is rich in natural resources, which can be exploited and made full use of.

Step 4: 连句成篇**New Development for Western China**

The Chinese government has recently decided to further develop western China. This part of China includes six provinces, five autonomous regions and one municipality, covering an area of about 6.85 million square kilometres.

To protect nature, farmers will return farmland to forest. Also, measures should be taken to prevent pollution. Western China is rich in natural resources, which can be exploited and made full use of. To meet the needs of the development, all kinds of experts and skilled workers are to be brought in.

We have every reason to believe that the efforts of the government will be a great success. The people will have a better life and China will surely be richer and stronger.

○学以致用

请根据下面的表格,写一篇关于通信今昔对比的英语短文。词数 80 左右。

| 项目 | 过去 | 现在 |
|------|------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 通信方式 | 人们主要通过书信、电报联系,少数人用电话联系 | 人们通过电子邮件、电话等联系 |
| 通信质量 | 联系不方便 | 通过电子邮件、手机(mobile phone)联系,方便快捷 |
| 购买价格 | 电脑、手机价格高昂 | 电脑、手机价格便宜,手机成为人们必备的通信工具 |
| 使用收费 | 电报费、电话费昂贵 | 电话费、网费较低 |

【参考范文】

In the past, people contacted each other mainly by letter and telegraph, while the telephone wasn't widely used. People used to find communication neither easy nor cheap.

Now, the development of technology has brought great changes to people's ways of communication. Besides letters and telegraph, we have other ways of communication, such as email, the mobile phone, as well as the Internet. To people's joy, the computer and the mobile phone which used to be rather expensive are now so cheap that the mobile phone has become a must for people. What's more, the fees of communication have greatly gone down.

Part 2 读后续写

阅读下面的文章,完成任务。

Having struggled with financial difficulties for six months and failing to find a way out, I had to close my technology writing business. Fortunately, I found a new job as a salesperson and soon got a client. At the

time, I wondered if it was too good to be true.

By the second month, something didn't seem right, and I developed a bad feeling about the client and the work. When the third month's check didn't arrive on time, I sent the client an email to find out what was going on. But there was no reply. Then I sent another email, and another. The check never arrived, and I never heard from the client again. With no hope in sight, I hit rock bottom. Panic replaced cautious optimism along with my last self-confidence.

I hid myself from friends and locked myself in my room. One night, the phone rang. The call was from Eric, a friend of mine from high school. When he was in high school, he told me many times about his parents' divorce and his loss of confidence in the college entrance examination. During the difficult time, I gave him much comfort and encouragement. Later, he went to college and was always grateful for what I had done.

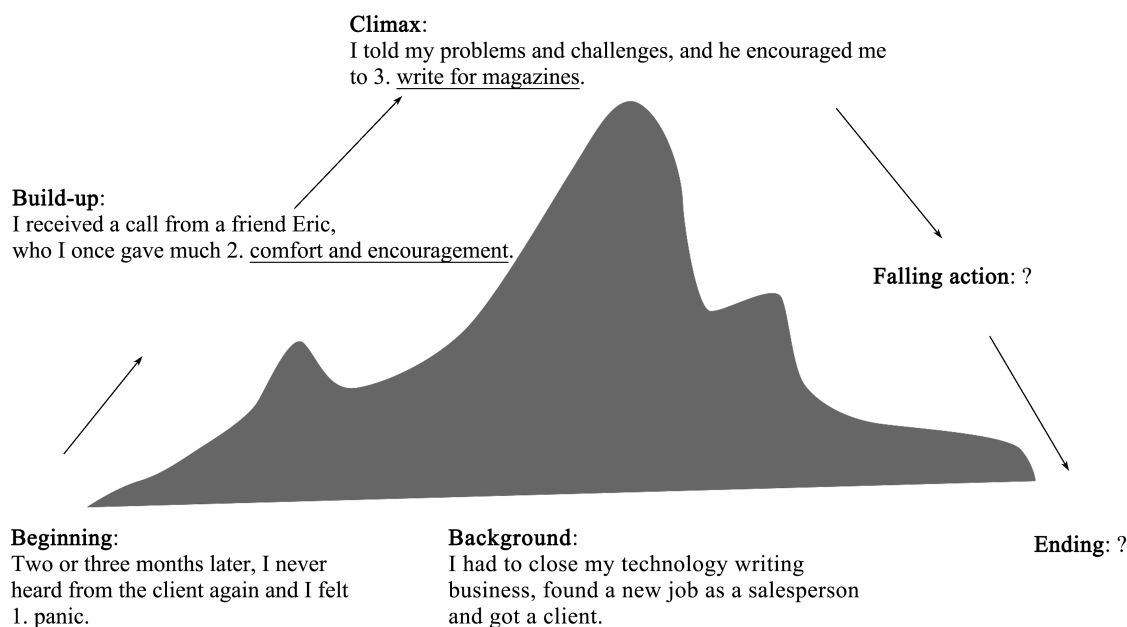
After the greetings, I told my problems and challenges, hoping my friend would say something comforting. What I didn't expect was a string of sharp words. "What is wrong with you? You can do anything you want to do," he said. "You are a writer, so start writing. Write for magazines." "Write for magazines? Are you out of your mind? I don't know the first thing about writing for magazines, let alone writing things that anyone would want to read. And I have to know where I can send an application form—to what magazines and to what editors," I shouted at him.

任务一：阅读文章，回答问题。

What does the article mainly talk about?

In this article, the author ends his technical writing business due to financial difficulties, finds a new sales job, and soon finds his first customer, but then the customer has not heard from him. When the author is feeling hopeless about life, a friend from high school, Eric, calls and suggests that the author start writing for magazines.

任务二：梳理故事情节，完成故事山(Story Mountain)。



任务三:回答下面的问题,并根据段落开头的提示语,构思和完善故事发展情节。

| | |
|---|---|
| <p>Paragraph 1:</p> <p>Surprisingly, I felt a little better after the shouting. _____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> | <p>1. How did Eric encourage me?</p> <p><u>He used what I said when he was in trouble. “No one can get you out of trouble but yourself.”</u></p> <p>2. What was my reaction to what Eric said?</p> <p><u>I was speechless and struck by the fact that it was easier to convince others than to convince myself.</u></p> <p>3. What did I do after hearing Eric’s words?</p> <p><u>I started searching for magazines and finally found one that accepted online contributions with various topics.</u></p> |
| <p>Paragraph 2:</p> <p>On finishing the application form I sent it to the editor. _____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> | <p>1. What happened after I sent the application form?</p> <p><u>Luckily, I received a positive response and an invitation to write.</u></p> <p>2. What was my development on writing?</p> <p><u>It went very smoothly and one of my articles appeared on the first page of the magazine.</u></p> <p>3. What happened to me later?</p> <p><u>I have been on my way to becoming an excellent writer.</u></p> <p>4. What was my attitude to Eric?</p> <p><u>I was grateful to Eric. It was he who enlightened me and helped me regain confidence to face challenges in my life.</u></p> |

任务四:根据材料内容和任务三中构思的故事发展情节续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

【参考范文】

Surprisingly, I felt a little better after the shouting. After a short silence, Eric replied in a firm voice, “I always remember what you said when I was in trouble. You said ‘No one can get you out of trouble but yourself.’” Hearing that, I was speechless and struck by the fact that it was easier to convince others than to convince myself. Inspired by Eric’s words, I started searching for magazines the next day and finally found one that accepted online contributions with various topics. Then I began to prepare my application form.

On finishing the application form I sent it to the editor. Luckily, two days later I received a positive response and an invitation to write. At first, I only wrote articles I was expert in. Gradually, I began trying new types. One day, much to my amazement, one of my articles appeared on the first page of the magazine! Since then, I have been on my way to becoming an excellent writer. That definitely should be credited to Eric. It was he who enlightened me and helped me regain confidence to face challenges in my life.

重 · 构 · 拓 · 展

一、单元重构

请根据本单元所学内容，完成思维导图。

| | |
|--|---|
| Words to describe the change of times and technological development <hr/> <hr/> <hr/> <hr/> | Write about the conveniences that the changing times have brought to you <hr/> <hr/> <hr/> <hr/> |
|--|---|

Times change!

Describe the advantages and disadvantages of the change of times

答案：略

二、拓展阅读

阅读下面的文章，完成后面的题目。

SMART HOMES TO MAKE LIFE EASIER

Have you ever forgotten to lock the door of your house? Or, have you ever forgotten to switch off the TV or computer? These kinds of things happen to us all the time, waste resources, and can sometimes lead to problems. However, in the not-too-distant future, we will be living in smart homes that will lock the door for us when we are away and remember to switch off the TV when we forget. These smart homes will keep us secure, save us energy, and provide a more comfortable environment to live in.

Intelligent Controls

Today, we have to use switches for our lights, knobs for our appliances, and remote controls for our TVs and air conditioners. In the future, we will be using advanced technology every day for automatic control of just about everything in our home. The future home will use integrated sensors to tell when you leave home each morning, and then go into an energy-efficient mode all by itself. You will no longer have to think about turning switches on and off yourself. Your home will also learn your daily routine and preferences, so everything will be ready for you when you get home each evening. Your lights will come on the instant you enter the door along with your favourite music or TV programmes, and you will find your dinner already prepared for you. All controls will respond to voice commands, so if you want to change your routine, you just say aloud what you want and the home system will obey.

Regular Health Checks

In addition, your smart home will be monitoring your health for you every day. Your bed, for example, will record how well you sleep every night. It will also be checking your body weight. If you start to have sleep or weight problems, it will send a warning to your phone. It will also give you suggestions on a healthier diet and how to sleep better. Smart toilets will be keeping constant track of your health as well. They can warn you early on if there is something abnormal or if you have a critical illness, such as cancer, and potentially save your life.

No More Disasters

Smart homes will be able to prevent serious damage from accidents. For example, if a water pipe starts leaking, or if there is a short in the electrical wiring, your smart home will detect it and provide you with the relevant information. This way, you will be able to fix the problem before your home becomes flooded or catches fire.

This smart technology is not a fantasy. Many of these new innovations are already available and being used in some homes. In this sense, the home of tomorrow is already the home of today. Nevertheless, it will take some years before most new homes begin to use this new technology.

1. How will you control your home system?
 - A. By switching on/off.
 - B. By being prepared in advance.
 - C. By touching the sensors.
 - D. By voice commands.
2. How do smart homes monitor your health?
 - A. By checking your daily routine and preferences.
 - B. By checking your sleep and body weight.
 - C. By sending a warning to your phone.
 - D. By changing your routine and commands.
3. What will a smart home do when a water pipe leaks?
 - A. Warn you early on and give suggestions.
 - B. Give you the relevant information.
 - C. Fix the problem all by itself.
 - D. Make your home flooded.

答案:1~3 DBB

单元测试卷(三)

(考查范围:Unit 3 时间:100 分钟 分值:120 分)

I. 阅读理解(共 15 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 37.5 分)

A

Thorny devils, rattlesnakes, kangaroo rats and more have developed smart ways for surviving in water-scarce (缺水的) environments.

Thorny devils

In Australian deserts live some animals known as thorny devils. These animals specialise in eating ants, which are also where they get their water.

But when ants are scarce, or conditions are even drier than normal, they have a backup. All they have to do is to kick the sand up onto their backs and let the network of tiny canals (沟渠) on their skins to catch small amounts of water and guide the liquid directly to their mouth.

Namib desert beetles

An ocean away in southwestern Africa, the Namib desert beetles pull off a similar trick. They use their backs as a cooler to catch water trapped in the morning fog. As the droplets grow in size, they run down the insects' backs towards their mouths.

Desert rattlesnakes

Desert rattlesnakes of the western US are able to live on just one hearty meal a year. But without a drink of water now and then, the snakes would dry up and breathe their last in a few days.

So how do they survive way up in the Rocky Mountains, where water is scarce? Easy. They turn their bodies into bowls in the evening to collect the dew (露水). With their cold bodies flattened into a bowl, the dew gathers on their skin.

Kangaroo rats

These pocket-size animals in the US Midwest plains never drink water. They spend 75 percent of their time in underground holes to avoid the heat in the desert. They survive on a diet of dry grass seeds, which they first bury underground. Because the underground soil is wetter than the surface soil, stored seeds may absorb as much as 30 percent more water than ones above ground. So when the rats eat their seeds, they get both food and water.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了棘蜥、响尾蛇等动物如何以独特的方式在缺水的环境中存活。

1. Where do Namib desert beetles live?

- A. In Australian deserts. B. In the US Midwest plains.
C. In southwestern Africa. D. In Canada's Rocky Mountains.

C 细节理解题。根据 **Namib desert beetles** 部分中的“An ocean away in southwestern Africa, the Namib desert beetles pull off a similar trick.”可知,这种甲虫生活在非洲西南部。故选 C。

2. What is unique about kangaroo rats?

- A. They drink underground water.
B. They bury their backs to get water.
C. They don't need water to survive.
D. They just use their food to gather water.

D 细节理解题。根据 **Kangaroo rats** 部分中的“‘They survive on a diet of dry grass seeds...’和“‘So when the rats eat their seeds, they get both food and water.’”可知,其独特的一点在于它们不喝水,只靠食物获取水分。故选 D。

3. Which may have a better chance of surviving in food-scarce environments?

- A. Thorny devils. B. Desert rattlesnakes.
C. Kangaroo rats. D. Namib desert beetles.

B 推理判断题。根据 **Desert rattlesnakes** 部分中的“Desert rattlesnakes of the western US are able to live on just one hearty meal a year.”可知,响尾蛇对食物的依赖度是最低的,更适合在食物短缺的环境下生存。故选 B。

B

Agriculture may feed the world, but it is also contributing to environmental problems. Agriculture production uses about 70% of the Earth's fresh water and makes up about a third of greenhouse gas emissions. But it doesn't have to. Farming is moving inside, and farmers aren't exactly what they used to be.

Take for example Grover and Phil, two robots, or farmers of the future, working at Iron Ox, a farm tech company in Silicon Valley, planning to set up farms around the country in order to grow crops closer to consumers in a greener way. “We have different robots that are looking after the plants. They can check and scan them for issues, and change the amount of nutrients plants get and the amount of water they get,” explained Brandon Alexander, CEO of Iron Ox.

Iron Ox's method is very different from what Alexander calls the “spray (喷洒) and pray” approach to agriculture on a Texas farm, where he grew up and more chemicals create more quantity at the expense of quality. “Besides, a lot of the water in field farming gets just washed out and never actually reaches the plants. And when 70% of your fresh water is going into farming, only 10% of that actually reaches the plants. It's just generating a lot of waste,” he said. However, the indoor farming allows farmers to grow any crop at any time, regardless of climate change. It also uses hydroponics (无土栽培), growing crops without soil so water goes directly to the roots.

“In the indoor farming industry today, even with all the investments into it, these investments are a drop in the bucket (桶) in spite of the great potential of this new industry,” he added.

Iron Ox is now magnifying its business in more states. Alexander says the company will produce about 100 times more produce over the next 18 months than it's currently producing to satisfy greater needs.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了一家农业科技公司使用机器人来服务新型的室内农业种植,这种方式比传统的农业种植更加绿色环保。

4. Which of the following may be Grover and Phil's work?

- A. Producing nutrients for crops. B. Curing plants of their diseases.
C. Watering plants scientifically. D. Delivering produce to consumers.

C 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“‘They can check and scan them for issues, and change the amount of nutrients plants get and the amount of water they get,’ explained Brandon Alexander, CEO of Iron Ox.”可知,这两个机器人可以调整植物获得的营养物质和水的多少。由此可知,它们可以科学地给植物浇水。故选 C。

5. What can we infer from Paragraph 3?

- A. Chemicals contribute a lot to the quality of crops.
B. Hydroponics is impractical in growing crops now.
C. It takes much more time for crops to grow indoors.
D. Indoor farming has advantages over traditional farming.

D 推理判断题。通读第三段的内容可知,第三段阐述了传统农业种植出现的一些不环保的问题,同时阐述了室内农业种植在环保问题上的优势。比较两者可知,室内农业种植比传统农业种植有优势。故选 D。

6. What does Alexander say about indoor farming in Paragraph 4?

- A. It causes a waste of more water.
B. It needs buckets to grow crops.
C. It is unlikely to attract investments.
D. Its investments are far from enough.

D 细节理解题。根据第四段的内容可知,Alexander 认为室内农业的投资远远不够。故选 D。

7. What does the underlined word “magnifying” in the last paragraph mean?

- A. Expanding. B. Changing. C. Reducing. D. Quitting.

A 词义猜测题。根据最后一段中的“Alexander says the company will produce about 100 times more produce over the next 18 months than it’s currently producing to satisfy greater needs.”可知,Alexander 在未来将扩大生产规模,由此可猜测 magnifying 意为“扩大”,expanding 与之意思一致。故选 A。

C

As computers become more popular in China, Chinese people are increasingly depending on computer keyboards to input Chinese characters. But if they use the computer too much, they may end up forgetting the exact strokes of each Chinese character when writing on paper. Experts suggest people, especially students, write by hand more.

Do you write by hand more or type more? In Beijing, students start using a computer as early as primary school. And computer dependence is more widely spread among university students. Almost all their assignment and essays are typed on a computer.

All the students interviewed say they usually use a computer.

It’s faster and easier to correct the mistake if using a computer. And that’s why computers are being applied more and more often to modern education. But when people are taking stock in computers increasingly, problems appear.

“When I’m writing with a pen, I find I often can’t remember how to write a character, though I feel I’m familiar with it.”

“I’m not in the mood to write when faced with a pen and paper.”

Many students don’t feel this is something to worry about. Now that it’s more convenient and efficient to write on a computer, why bother to handwrite?

Many educators think differently. Shi Liwei, headmaster of a famous primary school in the capital said, “Chinese characters enjoy both practical and aesthetic value. But those characters typed with computer keyboards only maintain their practical value. All the artistic beauty of the characters is lost. And handwriting contains the writer’s emotion. Through one’s handwriting, people can get to know one’s thinking and personality. Beautiful writing will give people a better first impression of them.”

To encourage students to handwrite more, many primary schools in Beijing have made writing classes compulsory (必修的) and in universities, some professors are asking students to turn in their homework and essays written by hand.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇议论文。随着电脑在中国越来越受欢迎,越来越多的人依靠计算机键盘输入汉字。文中论述了使用电脑打字和手写的各自的优缺点。为了鼓励学生动手写字,一些学校已经采取了一些相应的措施。

8. What’s the meaning of the underlined expression “taking stock in” in Paragraph 4?

- A. Getting bored with. B. Getting dependent on.
C. Becoming crazy about. D. Getting curious about.

B 词义猜测题。根据第四段的内容可推知,“But when people are taking stock in computers increasingly, problems appear.”中的画线词语的意思是“依赖,依靠”。故选 B。

9. Why do the students interviewed prefer to write using a computer?

- A. They can correct the mistakes they make quickly and conveniently.
B. They are usually asked to email their homework and essays.
C. They find it not easy to remember how to write a character.
D. Computers have become a trend and fashion in China.

A 细节理解题。根据第四段中的“It’s faster and easier to correct the mistake if using a computer. And that’s why computers are being applied more and more often to modern education.”可知,在电脑上修改错误

很方便,这是他们使用电脑的主要原因。故选 A。

10. What can we draw from the passage?

- A. More and more students will give up writing on a computer.
- B. Writing by hand will give way to typing by computer one day.
- C. More and more students will pay attention to handwriting.
- D. The typing article better expresses one's emotion and quality.

C 推理判断题。根据文章最后两段的内容可知,很多专家都要求书写汉字,并且一些学校也采取了相应的措施,由此可推断出越来越多的学生也会注意自己的书写。故选 C。

11. Which of the following can best serve as the title of the passage?

- A. To Type or to Handwrite
- B. The Importance of Handwriting and Typing
- C. Writing by Computer Will Replace Writing by Hand
- D. Practical and Aesthetic Value of Chinese Characters

A 标题归纳题。本文主要论述了随着电脑越来越流行,中国的学生在汉字书写方面出现了很大的问题。再根据第二段中的“Do you write by hand more or type more?”可知,A 项适合作为标题。故选 A。

D

With the invention of the Internet, humanity is now experiencing an adventure towards technological advancement. Nowadays, technology assists us with everyday tasks such as driving, grocery shopping and even dating. Technology is so closely connected to our lives that it's easy to overlook one important question: when technology really starts to control the world around us, what comes next?

Many experts and workers are scared that automation will take jobs from people who need them and give those jobs to robots. I understand their concern. However, if robots are outperforming us at our jobs, then what do humans have left to offer? We have the emotions and imagination that make us humans. A machine might work faster than a person, but that's because humans built the machines that way. That, itself, is an amazing accomplishment of the human imagination. We are talented, passionate creatures, who do not deserve to be trapped in miserable jobs anymore!

By now, I hope you're curious to hear which occupations we should focus on in the future. The obvious answer is jobs in technology and robotics. Tech-related jobs will continue to be in big demand, and people who work in these fields will continue to become more important. We should be grateful to them for doing work to take us higher as a society. Besides, we should also focus on jobs in the arts and entertainment. It may sound crazy, but what could better reflect the creativity of the human mind than the arts? I believe art has opened up our world, allowing us to share our imaginations with everyone!

So, we must ensure that future generations know that we mean it when we say, “Follow your dreams.” Welcome to the 21st century: what a time to be alive! There has never been a better time to be yourself, and I can only see it getting even better from here.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇议论文。科技的进步使得很多专家和工作者的担心机器会取代人工。然而,文章指出,人类有情感和想象力,这是机器无法替代的。因此,未来我们应该重视科技和机器人领域的工作,同时也应该注重艺术和娱乐领域的工作。

12. Why does the author end Paragraph 1 with a question?

- A. To present a fact.
- B. To illustrate a problem.
- C. To ask for approval.
- D. To arouse thinking.

D 推理判断题。文章第一段开门见山,引出话题:科技对人类的影响。作者在第一段结尾提出一个问题,是为了引起读者的思考和注意本文要讨论的问题:当科技发展到开始控制我们的世界时,人类的生活会受到什么影响。通过提问,作者希望读者能够思考技术对我们生活的影响,并引发讨论。

13. What's the author's attitude towards technological advancement?

- A. Favourable.
- B. Disapproving.
- C. Doubtful.
- D. Unclear.

A 观点态度题。根据第二段中的“A machine might work faster than a person, but that's because humans... in miserable jobs anymore!”可知,作者认为人类创造了机器,我们应该为此感到自豪,由此可推知,作者对技术进步的态度是赞成的。

14. Why are art-related jobs also important?

- A. They have opened up our world.
- B. They help people realise their dreams.
- C. They will be in great demand in the future.
- D. They can show the innovation of technology.

A 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“Besides, we should also focus on jobs in the arts and entertainment... imaginations with everyone!”可知,与艺术相关的工作之所以重要,是因为这些工作打开了我们的世界,展现了人类的创造力、想象力。

15. What is the tone of the passage?

- A. Narrative and serious.
- B. Persuasive and positive.
- C. Descriptive and critical.
- D. Informative and objective.

C 推理判断题。通读全文,尤其是第一段中的“Nowadays, technology assists us with everyday tasks such as driving, grocery shopping and even dating.”可知,作者描述了技术的现状及其对日常生活的影响,强调了它与人类生活的密切联系,这种描述的语气有助于为随后对技术控制世界的潜在后果进行批判性分析奠定基础。第二段以批判的视角展现对于技术对人类就业的负面影响的担忧,并提出人类应该如何应对。故文章的基调为“Descriptive and critical(描述性和批判性)”。

II. 七选五(共5小题;每小题2.5分,满分12.5分)

Could you remember the first thing you do each day? The first thing I do when I wake up in the morning is check my phone. And I'll keep doing that throughout the entire day until I go back to bed. If, like me, a lot of your technology habits are automatic, you may not even be aware of your behaviour. 16 But with some efforts, you can engage with the digital world in a way that's appropriate for you. Here's how to get started:

17 Try turning off push notifications and deleting social media apps from your phone to create natural obstacles to accessing them. Of course sometimes there are people you know you want to keep up with and usually connect with on a particular platform. In this case, let them know how they can stay in touch.

Whatever you do, don't go to bed with your phone. 18 Sleeping without smart phones improves sleep, relationships, focus and well-being, and increases happiness and quality of life. So charging your phone somewhere else could help you experience those benefits.

Get to know yourself again by reinvesting in your hobbies. You can start by shutting down your social media for about a week, and then slowly find your favourite apps one at a time over the following weeks. This will help you figure out which apps are contributing to your life and which aren't. Make a list of activities you enjoy and people you like hanging out with. 19

The goal with digital minimalism isn't to figure out how to live without social media or the Internet. 20 Technology should enhance your life, not distract you from it.

- A. Set some basic boundaries.
- B. It can be difficult to change.
- C. It gives you an opportunity to grow in ways.
- D. Ask yourself how you feel when you're using social media.
- E. When you feel the urge to grab your phone, try one of those hobbies.
- F. It's not ideal to put your phone next to the pillow to charge when sleeping.
- G. In a word, you should be intentional about when and how you use social media.

答案:16~20 BAFEG

III. 完形填空(共 15 小题;每小题 1 分,满分 15 分)

For many people today, reading is no longer relaxation. To keep up their work they must read letters, reports, trade publications and interoffice communications, not to mention newspapers and magazines: a never-ending flood of words. In 21 a job or advancing in one, the ability to read and comprehend 22 can mean the difference between success and failure. Yet the unfortunate fact is that most of us are 23 readers. Most of us develop poor reading 24 at an early age, and never get over them. The main difficulty 25 in the actual stuff of language itself—words. Taken individually, words have 26 meaning until they are strung together into phrases, sentences and paragraphs. 27, however, the untrained reader does not read groups of words. He laboriously reads one word at a time, often regressing to 28 words or passages. The tendency to look back over 29 you have just read is a common bad habit in reading. Another habit which 30 down the speed of reading is vocalisation—sounding each word either orally or mentally as 31 reads.

To overcome these bad habits, some reading clinics use a device called an 32, which moves a bar (or curtain) down the page at a predetermined speed. The bar is set at a slightly faster rate 33 the reader finds comfortable, in order to “stretch” him. The accelerator forces the reader to read fast, 34 word-by-word reading, regression and subvocalisation, practically impossible. At first 35 is sacrificed for speed. But when you learn to read ideas and concepts, you will not only read faster, but your comprehension will improve.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。阅读本来是一项愉悦身心的活动,但是忙碌的工作使人们阅读时带有很强的目的性。本文就如何开展有效的快速阅读进行了简单的说明。

21. A. applying B. doing C. offering D. getting
D 此处说的是“谋得一份工作”。分析选项可知 apply 后需加 for,意思是“申请”;do“做”;offer“提供”。此三项均不符合题意,只有 get“获得”符合。
22. A. quickly B. easily C. roughly D. decidedly
A 根据语境可知,快速阅读与理解的能力,是决定成败的关键所在。只有 quickly 与文意吻合。
23. A. good B. curious C. poor D. urgent
C 根据上文的“the unfortunate fact”及下文的“poor reading”可知,多数人都属于阅读能力薄弱的读者,因此选 poor。
24. A. training B. habits C. situations D. custom
B 此处的意思是“大多数人在早期养成不好的阅读习惯”。
25. A. lies B. combines C. touches D. involves
A 此处说的是“主要的困难在于语言的自身要素,即单词”。lie in 为固定搭配,意为“在于”。
26. A. some B. a lot C. little D. dull
C 此处的意思是“如果单个地看这些词,它们并没有什么意义”。little“很少”是否定词,合乎逻辑。
27. A. Fortunately B. In fact C. Logically D. Unfortunately
D 根据语境可知,作者对未受过阅读训练的人的不良阅读习惯感到遗憾。unfortunately“不幸地”,符合语境。
28. A. reusing B. rereading C. rewriting D. reciting
B 根据语境可知,未受过阅读训练的读者在阅读时经常重读(反复读)。故选 rereading“重读”。
29. A. what B. which C. that D. if
A 此处所填的词既是“look back over”的宾语,又是“you have just read”的宾语,只有 what 能充当这种双重成分。
30. A. scales B. cuts C. slows D. measures
C 根据语境并分析选项可知,scale down“按比例减少”;cut down“削减”,这两项不符合文意。measure 不能与 down 搭配。slow down“放慢”,符合语境。
31. A. some one B. one C. he D. reader

B 此处用 one 表示泛指。

32. A. accelerator B. actor C. amplifier D. observer

A 根据语境可知,训练快速阅读所使用的工具必然与提高阅读速度有关,因此选 accelerator“快读器”。下文的“The accelerator”亦是提示。

33. A. then B. as C. beyond D. than

D 根据上文的“faster”可知,此处应用 than,构成比较级。

34. A. enabling B. leading C. making D. indicating

C 此处指“快速阅读器迫使读者加快阅读速度,再也不能逐字阅读、回顾前文内容或者默读”。make“使,使得”,符合语境。

35. A. meaning B. comprehension C. gist D. regression

B 此处指“速读最初会影响理解”,所以选 comprehension“理解”。下文的“your comprehension”亦是提示。

IV. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分 15 分)

Diets have changed in China—and so too has its top crop. Since 2011, the country **36. has grown** (grow) more corn than rice. Corn production has jumped nearly 125 percent over **37. the** past 25 years, while rice has increased only 7 percent. A taste for meat is **38. actually** (actual) behind the change: An important part of its corn is used to feed chickens, pigs, and cattle. Another reason for corn's rise: The government encourages farmers to grow corn instead of rice **39. to improve** (improve) water quality. Corn uses less water **40. than** rice and creates less fertiliser (化肥) run-off. This switch has decreased **41. pollution** (pollute) in the country's major lakes and reservoirs and made drinking water safer for people.

According to the World Bank, China accounts for about 30 percent of the total **42. global** (globe) fertiliser consumption. The government finds that between 2005—when the government **43. started** (start) a soil-testing programme **44. that/which** gives specific fertiliser recommendations to farmers—and 2011, fertiliser use dropped by 7.7 million tons. That prevented the emission (排放) of 51.8 million tons of carbon dioxide. China's approach to protecting its environment while **45. feeding** (feed) its citizens offers useful lessons for agriculture and food policymakers worldwide.

V. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

第一节 应用文写作(满分 15 分)

假定你是李华,你的英国朋友 Alice 来信与你探讨音乐话题。请你用英语写一封回信,主要内容包括:

1. 你喜欢的音乐;
2. 你对音乐的看法。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

【参考范文】

Dear Alice,

I'm more than delighted to hear from you. I'm glad you like music as me. To tell you the truth, I like almost all kinds of music. In order to relax from the pressure of study, I always listen to light music. My favourite music is popular music and I'm a fan of many famous singers. I also like classical music. And I have also made a lot of friends because of music.

Different people have different ideas about music. Some people like classical music, some like rock and others like light music. Anyway, music can do much good to us. We can't live without music!

Wish you all the best!

Yours,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

A young man had bought an old house that was in bad shape, but he and his wife believed they could restore it. They immediately went to work. Their goal was to have the old building look best for New Year's Eve get-together.

Just two days before New Year, however, a storm swept through the area, leaving a hole in the wall of the house. There was obviously no time to repair the damage before New Year. Then, the sad couple attended a local auction (拍卖) that afternoon. One of the items put up for bids was an old gold-and-ivory-coloured tablecloth. Seized by an inspiration, the young man was the highest bidder at 6.50 dollars. His idea was to hang the cloth to cover the ragged hole.

On the day before New Year, it was snowy. As the young man unlocked the house door, he noticed an old woman standing at the bus stop. He knew the bus wouldn't be there within at least half an hour, so he invited her inside to keep warm.

When the woman walked in and saw the tablecloth, she rushed at it and said excitedly, "It's mine. It is my tablecloth." She told the surprised man its history and even showed him her name in one corner of the tablecloth. She and her husband had once lived in Vienna, Austria, and their village was hit by a deadly disease. So they decided to flee to Switzerland, but her husband told her to leave first, saying he had something urgent to deal with. A few days later, it was reported that the bus her husband took fell off the cliff (悬崖) and he was never to be found. Her husband was believed to have died. Touched by her story, the young couple asked about her address, planning to send the tablecloth to her after New Year. As the bus came, she left.

In the candlelight of New Year's Eve, the tablecloth looked even more beautiful. As the man's friends left the house, they thanked the man for his arrangement and mentioned how beautiful the house looked.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

【参考范文】

One old gentleman stayed, admiring the tablecloth. At the same time, he said to the young man, "What a coincidence! Many years ago my wife and I also owned such a tablecloth. But we lived in Vienna then." On hearing these words, the young man told the old man about his encounter with the old woman in the house that snowy day. "Can it be true that she is alive?" asked the old man, tears streaming down his cheeks. "How can I find her?" Fortunately, the young man remembered her address.

The young man drove the old man to that old woman's home. Together they knocked on her apartment door. When she opened it, both of them recognised each other immediately. Obviously, they were too surprised and excited to express themselves. With trembling hands, they hugged tightly. "I was told you had died. How did you find me?" the old woman asked. "Thanks to that magical tablecloth," the old man replied. The young man witnessed the tearful, joyful and thrilling reunion of the old couple.

阶段测试卷

(考查范围:Unit 1—Unit 3 时间:100 分钟 分值:120 分)

I. 阅读理解(共 15 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 37.5 分)

A

New Zealand has been home to many famous movies because of its breathtaking and unreal landscapes. From rainforests and fish-filled rivers to magical caves, New Zealand has it all. Besides having the most beautiful landscapes on earth, New Zealand is a centre for many exciting sports! Whatever purpose of your visit to the land is, there is certainly something for everyone!

Fiordland National Park

This park has some of the most beautiful landscapes of the country. If you are lucky enough to visit this place, you can explore the rainforests, the wide lakes, the hidden islands, and the flowing waterfalls. This national park is considered one of the best for hiking lovers.

Bay of Islands

This bay is the most preferred by the tourists for holiday destinations. It is located in the north of Auckland and is made up of more than 144 islands, making it a good place for sailing. The beautiful Bay of Islands is one of the most popular vacation destinations in the country.

Queenstown

Queenstown is the place for adventures! It is the go-to place for those who like rock climbing and skiing. This wonderful place offers not only activities full of excitement but also first-class hotels, restaurants and even the “Middle Earth” where *The Lord of the Rings* was filmed.

Tongariro National Park

This national park can be found in the middle of North Island. It has New Zealand's largest lake passing right through it. It is one of the oldest national parks in the world and luckily it has been protected perfectly. Besides sightseeing, the national park also includes other activities such as camping and hiking.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章主要介绍了新西兰的四个旅游胜地。

1. What can you do in Fiordland National Park?

- A. Climb the mountain.
- B. Go sailing.
- C. Go skiing.
- D. Explore the rainforests.

D 细节理解题。根据 **Fiordland National Park** 部分中的 “If you are lucky enough to visit this place, you can explore the rainforests, the wide lakes, the hidden islands, and the flowing waterfalls.” 可知,在峡湾国家公园可以探索雨林。故选 D。

2. Which destination may a camping lover choose?

- A. Queenstown.
- B. Bay of Islands.
- C. Fiordland National Park.
- D. Tongariro National Park.

D 细节理解题。根据 **Tongariro National Park** 部分中的 “Besides sightseeing, the national park also includes other activities such as camping and hiking.” 可知,一个露营爱好者会去汤加里罗国家公园旅游。故选 D。

3. From which is the text probably taken?

- A. A travel brochure.
- B. A news report.
- C. A health magazine.
- D. A research paper.

A 文章出处题。通读全文,尤其是第一段的内容可知,这篇文章主要介绍了新西兰适合旅游的地方,所以应该是选自旅游小册子。故选 A。

B

In 1999, John Smyth, a high school teacher decided it was time to retire. Together with his wife Helen, he set off on a journey around Australia. But when they returned, John found he missed the classroom, so he spent another eight years doing casual teaching.

Then he heard about a programme known as Volunteers for Isolated Students' Education (VISE), which pairs up energetic people with educational experience, usually retired teachers, with children whose schooling is largely done remotely, because they live too far away from towns and cities to attend regular schools. John grew up in the country and as a kid in the bush, he always dreamed of running with the circus, but he didn't even have much chance to see the circus in person. Therefore he was immediately interested in the programme and got a travelling post as a teacher with the Stardust Circus.

The lesson timetable was built around the kids' performance schedules. "The eight-year-old I tutored was an awesome gymnast who was part of the teeterboard (跷跷板) act," he explains. "A big guy would jump on the other side, he would swing up in the air, do a couple of twirls (旋转) and land on his uncle's shoulders, and his uncle was standing on the boy's father's shoulders!"

The circus still includes some animal acts, including lions, monkeys, horses, goats and pigs. John and his wife Helen found it extraordinary enough to sink into sleep to the sound of lions roaring, but one day the lion-trainer, Matt, gave him a very special privilege, inviting him in to meet four 13-month-old lions in person. While it was understandably a little scary at first, for John it was a never-to-be-forgotten experience, which helped him realise his boyhood dream in his 75th year.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了退休高中教师 John 参加了 VISE 项目,通过这个项目,John 实现了自己小时候想和马戏团一起巡演的梦想。

4. What can we know about the children in the Stardust Circus?

- A. They missed the classroom.
- B. Most of them lived downtown.
- C. They were dreaming of travelling.
- D. They were lacking in regular schooling.

D 细节理解题。根据第二段中的 "Then he heard about a programme known as Volunteers for Isolated Students' Education (VISE), which pairs up energetic people with educational experience, usually retired teachers, with children whose schooling is largely done remotely, because they live too far away from towns and cities to attend regular schools." 可知,孩子们无法上普通学校,他们的学业基本上是远程完成的,因此他们缺乏普通学校教育。故选 D。

5. What can we learn from the passage?

- A. John taught the gymnast to perform in the air.
- B. Teachers of the programme had a flexible schedule.
- C. John's dream came true as a volunteer in the circus.
- D. The couple were fed up with the sound of lions roaring.

C 细节理解题。根据第二段中的 "John grew up in the country and as a kid in the bush, he always dreamed of running with the circus, but he didn't even have much chance to see the circus in person." 和最后一段中的 "While it was understandably a little scary at first, for John it was a never-to-be-forgotten experience, which helped him realise his boyhood dream in his 75th year." 可知,在马戏团里,John 作为一名志愿者教师,他实现了自己小时候想和马戏团一起巡演的梦想。故选 C。

6. How did John probably feel after meeting the little lions?

- A. Scared.
- B. Excited.
- C. Calm.
- D. Regretful.

B 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的 "...but one day the lion-trainer, Matt, gave him a very special privilege, inviting him in to meet four 13-month-old lions in person. While it was understandably a little scary at first, for John it was a never-to-be-forgotten experience, which helped him realise his boyhood

10. What will help students deal with the short attention span problem?

- A. Receiving emails. B. Texting messages.
C. Watching quickie movies. D. Reading more books.

D 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“I am trying to persuade my pupils to read more books, so that they concentrate on one subject for longer.”可知,读更多的书能帮助学生解决注意力持续时间短的问题。故选 D。

11. What is Ray Cole's attitude towards looking through websites quickly?

- A. Supportive. B. Unfavourable.
C. Skeptical. D. Cautious.

A 观点态度题。根据最后一段中的“In a world, with so much information available, this is an important skill.”可推知, Ray Cole 对快速浏览网站的态度是支持的。故选 A。

D

Will artificial intelligence (AI) replace my job? This is a question that many people think about these days. At present, the application of AI robotics in professional fields, as well as ChatGPT's abilities to write essays, solve complex problems and more, have heightened moral concerns.

Some people see AI as the ultimate cure for society's most fundamental problems, while others fear that AI will overtake human intelligence. These two views are based on the assumption that AI is better and smarter than humanity and may ultimately replace human decision-making. But given the fact that technology is the product of human civilisation, the challenge from AI is something we have created for ourselves as we keep pushing our own boundaries. In other words, AI's progress, functions and future direction are all determined by the human brain.

Before AI becomes a threat to humanity, the international community should reach an agreement on the role it is to play. More importantly, related laws and regulations must ensure that AI will benefit society and prevent it from threatening human life. Robots, for example, are believed to develop emotional intelligence sometime, which enables them to recognise, understand and express emotions in a way that is similar to humans, but we must avoid AI copying human emotions. Without legal restrictions, AI may become a social disaster.

The AI-driven new industrial revolution is irreversible. This, like previous ones, which introduced changes that had been unimaginable before, will certainly affect human employment. But it always turned out humanity was able to adapt to each industrial revolution and create new forms of employment. Therefore, it's unnecessary to worry AI will replace our jobs. While technology advances at a rapid pace, what we need to do is to welcome the AI era rather than block its unfolding for fear of the unknown.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇议论文。本文讨论了人工智能给人类社会带来的挑战。

12. Why are some people concerned about AI?

- A. It may outsmart humans. B. It has led to social problems.
C. It has been applied widely. D. It is the product of humanity.

A 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“Some people see AI as the ultimate cure for society's most fundamental problems, while others fear that AI will overtake human intelligence. These two views are based on the assumption that AI is better and smarter than humanity and may ultimately replace human decision-making.”可知,一些人担心人工智能将超越人类的智慧,这是基于他们认为人工智能比人类更好、更聪明,最终可能取代人类决策的假设。故选 A。

13. How can we prevent AI's potential threat?

- A. By stirring emotions. B. By blocking functions.
C. By setting restrictions. D. By changing regulations.

C 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“More importantly, related laws and regulations must ensure that AI will benefit society and prevent it from threatening human life.”可知,为了应对人工智能的潜在威胁,需要出台相关法律法规,也就是通过设置限制,防止人工智能威胁人类生命。故选 C。

14. What does the underlined word “irreversible” in the last paragraph mean?

- A. Undesirable. B. Unavoidable.
C. Unpredictable. D. Unbelievable.

B 词义猜测题。根据画线词后面的内容“This, like previous ones, which introduced changes that had been unimaginable before, will certainly affect human employment.”可知,人工智能驱动的新工业革命就像以前一样会带来无法想象的变化,一定会影响到人类的就业,因此人工智能驱动的新工业革命是不可逆转的。故画线词与 B 项“Unavoidable(不可避免的)”为近义词。故选 B。

15. What does the writer suggest readers do with the coming of the AI era?

- A. Accept it passively. B. Deal with it positively.
C. Respond to it randomly. D. Defend it unconditionally.

B 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“Therefore, it’s unnecessary to worry AI will replace our jobs. While technology advances at a rapid pace, what we need to do is to welcome the AI era rather than block its unfolding for fear of the unknown.”可知,作者建议对于未来人工智能时代的到来,不要因为害怕而去阻止它,而是应该欢迎人工智能时代的到来,即积极地对待它。故选 B。

II. 七选五(共 5 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 12.5 分)

To some extent, smartphones are extensions (延伸) of our hands, but it’s easy to forget how much time we actually spend on them. Here are ways for you to get rid of (摆脱) this addiction.

16. They keep us connected to friends, work, the news and funny videos. But when you start feeling anxious about not having your phone around, that’s different. It’s one thing to feel inconvenient, but it’s another to feel really anxious. Is that the case with you? 17? If so, start slow. Try leaving your phone at home for short, controlled periods to take a quick walk. Gradually, it’s okay even without a phone for a long time.

I found myself checking my phone from time to time. And what do I find? Nothing new. 18. It’s just the habit of checking for the sake of (为了) checking. So, how have I been getting rid of this habit? One strategy is to create some trouble. Set your phone to require a password to unlock rather than immediately open it through facial recognition.

If you find yourself pulling out your phone during dinner with friends, at family gatherings, or even when someone is telling you something important, this might be a sign of phone addiction. 19. That is, when I’m about to meet with friends, I set my phone to “Do Not Disturb (干扰)” mode or put it on airplane mode. I’ve even left my phone in my bag, car, or another room just to break the constant desire to check it. It feels awkward at first. 20.

- A. Here’s a trick I’ve found helpful
B. Our phones are necessary tools these days
C. There’s not any urgent task I need to handle
D. What can you do about it effectively and easily
E. You can set screen time limits on certain apps to handle this situation
F. Do you want to feel more comfortable without your phone sometimes
G. Actually, the conversations are more enjoyable without being disturbed

答案:16~20 BFCAG

III. 完形填空(共 15 小题;每小题 1 分,满分 15 分)

I was appointed to tend to this patient several weeks ago and began to grow closer to her. Communicating with her was 21 because everything she wanted to say to me had to be written on a notepad. As a nursing graduate, I was able to read her mind by observing even a slight 22 in a patient’s facial expression.

One day, when I was checking the patient, she 23 me on the shoulder to show me a note, “Do you think I could leave the hospital in a month to see my niece get married?” Taking her hand in mine, I told her that I could not 24 her, because I did not want to leave her a false sense of hope. 25, I made her believe that I would be there with her every step of the way on her journey towards 26. Hearing that, the patient gave me a 27 and a hug.

Day by day, I built her 28 by walking around the floor with her. As I did this, I could see before my own eyes that her health was 29 improving and that she was able to walk more steadily. On her last day in hospital, just before her niece’s 30, she wrote me one last note, “I couldn’t have done this 31 you; I love you.” After kissing goodbye, I had a strong sense of achievement. I realised that moments like this were 32 I woke up early for work in the hospital and spent long hours with her. I truly felt, as her 33 confirmed, that I was an 34 part of this woman’s recovery. My experience with this patient shows me that this career allows me to touch the lives of people in ways that people in other 35 will never get to experience.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。作者作为一名护士,在帮助一位沟通困难的病人康复并能按时参加侄女的婚礼后,收到她感谢的纸条,这也带给作者极大的成就感。

21. A. difficult B. funny C. simple D. interesting

A 根据下文的“because everything she wanted to say to me had to be written on a notepad”可知,她跟作者的交流需要通过记事本,所以和她交流可能是困难的。故选 A。

22. A. worry B. change C. pain D. excitement

B 根据上文的“I was able to read her mind”以及下文的“in a patient’s facial expression”可知,作者可以通过病人面部表情的变化读懂她的心思。故选 B。

23. A. tapped B. hit C. knocked D. struck

A 根据下文的“on the shoulder to show me a note”可知,她轻拍肩膀给作者纸条。故选 A。

24. A. disappoint B. promise C. comfort D. trust

B 根据上文的“show me a note, ‘Do you think I could leave the hospital in a month to see my niece get married?’”可知,她问作者自己能否参加侄女的婚礼,所以是希望作者给她承诺。故选 B。

25. A. Therefore B. Besides C. However D. Furthermore

C 根据上文的“I told her that I could not 24 her”以及下文的“I made her believe that I would be there”可知,虽然不能承诺,但是作者让她相信作者都会陪在她身边,前后为转折含义。故选 C。

26. A. death B. success C. destination D. recovery

D 根据上文的“I was appointed to tend to this patient”可知,作者负责照顾这位病人,让她康复。故选 D。

27. A. surprise B. stare C. smile D. whistle

C 根据上文的“I made her believe that I would be there with her every step of the way on her journey towards 26”可知,作者的话给了她信心,所以她笑了。故选 C。

28. A. future B. strength C. habit D. awareness

B 根据下文的“by walking around the floor”可知,陪她来回走动是为了训练体力。故选 B。

29. A. slowly B. completely C. rapidly D. finally

A 根据上文的“Day by day, I built her 28 by walking around the floor with her.”可知,通过日复一日地锻炼体力,她的健康状况慢慢地有所好转。故选 A。

30. A. presence B. visit C. wedding D. presentation

C 根据上文的“Do you think I could leave the hospital in a month to see my niece get married?”可知,她是要参加侄女的婚礼。故选 C。

31. A. without B. behind C. except D. beside

A 根据上文的“I couldn’t have done this”可知,纸条上是感谢的话,所以应为双重否定表示肯定,对作者的照顾的肯定。故选 A。

32. A. what B. why C. when D. how

B 根据下文的“I woke up early for work in the hospital and spent long hours with her”以及上文的“I had a strong sense of achievement”可知,前后为因果关系,作者早起去医院上班,花很长时间陪伴她,就是为了这样的时刻。故选 B。

33. A. expression B. note C. feeling D. treatment

B 根据上文的“she wrote me one last note, ‘I couldn’t have done this 31 you; I love you.’”可知,是这位病人的纸条内容的肯定,让作者有了成就感。故选 B。

34. A. irrelevant B. insignificant C. instructive D. important

D 根据上文的“she wrote me one last note, ‘I couldn’t have done this 31 you; I love you.’”可知,作者是这位女士康复过程中重要的一部分。故选 D。

35. A. hospitals B. areas C. lands D. fields

D 根据上文的“this career allows me to touch the lives of people”可知,这个职业让作者能够接触到人们的生活,而别的领域的工作可能实现不了。故选 D。

IV. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分 15 分)

Tri-coloured glazed pottery (釉陶) is a Chinese national treasure. It became popular in the Tang Dynasty and was later called Tangsancai, **36.** a type of glazed pottery with the main colours of yellow, green and white.

Tangsancai was usually used as burial objects. Those human and animal figures have smooth **37.** and graceful lines. The soldier figures have strong muscles and carry swords or arrows. The human figures stand quietly, **38.** looking (look) natural and elegant. The animal figures are mainly of horses and camels.

Tri-coloured glazed pottery of the Tang Dynasty was mostly produced in Xi’an, Luoyang and Yangzhou, **39.** which were important cities along the Silk Road. Camels were the major form of transport **40.** on the ancient trade route during the Tang Dynasty. Seeing these glazed pottery artworks, we can imagine the travellers and camels making their hard journey across the desert, depending on one another for **41.** survival (survive).

Tang people were open-minded **42.** to accept (accept) different cultures from all over the world. Foreign traders, officials, and artists **43.** travelled (travel) thousands of miles along the Silk Road to visit the Tang’s capital city Chang’an. The evidence of cultural integration can be found in tri-coloured glazed pottery of the Tang Dynasty.

Tri-coloured glazed pottery is the **44.** highest (high) point of Tang pottery and it developed **45.** successfully (successful) during the dynasty’s early and middle period.

V. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

第一节 应用文写作(满分 15 分)

假定你是李华,在课堂上你的英语老师请同学们展望 2050 年的校园生活。请你写一篇英语短文,内容可从以下方面展开:

1. 校园的自然环境;
2. 智慧教室;
3. 宿舍和餐厅。

注意:词数 80 左右。

【参考范文】

In 2050, the campus will be like a beautiful garden, in which there will be more trees and flowers. The air will be fresh and clean, and there will be small parks where students can relax.

The smart classrooms will be amazing. Teachers can use advanced VR technology to teach. Everything in the classroom can be controlled by AI.

Dormitories will be more comfortable because students can make use of intelligent facilities. In the canteen, robots will serve us. There will be a variety of healthy and delicious food for students to choose from.

第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

James Selton was one of the rudest boys in the village where he lived; If a person in the street was well dressed, he would cry out, “Dandy (花花公子)!” If a person’s clothes were dirty or torn, he would throw stones at him, and annoy him in every way.

One afternoon, just as the school was over, a stranger passed through the village. His dress was plain and somewhat old, but neat and clean. He carried a walking stick in his hand, on the end of which was a parcel, and he wore a round hat.

No sooner had James seen the stranger than he winked to his playmates, and said, “Now for some fun!” He then silently went towards the stranger from behind, knocked off his hat, and ran away.

The man turned and saw him, but James was out of hearing before the man could speak. The stranger put on his hat, and went on his way. Again James approached; but this time, the man caught him by the arm, and held him tightly. However, he contented himself with looking James a moment in the face, and then pushed him away. As soon as the naughty boy found himself free again, he began to throw dirt and stones at the stranger.

But James was very frightened when the man was struck on the head by a brick and badly hurt. All the boys ran away, and James slipped across the fields to his home.

As he drew near the house, his sister Caroline came out to meet him, holding up a beautiful gold chain and some new books for him to see. She told James that their uncle, who had been away several years, had come home, and was now in the house; that he had bought beautiful presents for the whole family; that he had left his carriage at the inn, a mile or two off and walked on foot so as to surprise his brother, their father.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

【参考范文】

She said while he was coming through the village, some wicked boys threw stones at him. He was severely hurt and the wound was just over the eye. Hearing this, James immediately realised that it was he that hurt his uncle. Shameful and frightened, he dared not step into the house. At that time, he heard his father calling him to come in. “What makes you look so pale?” asked Caroline, changing her tone. With palms sweating, he had no choice but to obey. Inside the room sat the stranger, or rather his uncle, with his forehead bound up, talking happily with his father. What a sense of shame did James now feel! Hanging down his head, he approached his uncle.

His uncle went up to him but quickly stepping back, he cried, “Oh! It’s you!” But when his uncle saw the puzzled father, he immediately explained that he just met James in the street. In a flash, James learned that his uncle was ready to forgive him. But facing such a kind uncle, he couldn’t conceal his guilt. Having confessed what he had done to his uncle, James felt relieved. He never forgot this lesson so long as he lived. It cured him entirely of his low and rude manners.

单元概览

学习导航

The theme of this unit is humans and society, whose topic is breaking boundaries. This unit features a diverse range of discourse types to introduce the unremitting efforts made by people from all over the world, past and present, to break boundaries—from establishing the organisation of Doctors Without Borders, to the concept of “the global village”; from Abraham Lincoln’s “The Gettysburg Address” over a century ago, to American journalist Edgar Snow reporting the real China to the world through his book *Red Star over China* in the 1930s—aiming to guide students to think about the causes of boundary problems, the significance of breaking boundaries, and measures to break boundaries, ultimately creating a more harmonious and beautiful world.

学习目标

| 核心素养 | 具体要求 | | |
|------|--|----|---|
| 语言能力 | 语言知识 | 词汇 | 能正确使用与“打破边界”主题相关的单词和词组。 |
| | | 语法 | 恰当使用 it 作形式主语来描述人们在打破边界中所做出的改变以及不同城市在包容性方面的举措。 |
| | | 语篇 | 基于单元提供的视频信息、个人日记、演讲稿、模拟联合国决议草案等多模态语篇,综合运用各种语言技能,读懂与“打破边界”相关的语篇内容。 |
| | | 语用 | 学会表达对他人的兴趣以及描述某种普遍存在的现象,并能在实际生活中运用所学知识。 |
| | 语言技能 | 听 | 听懂并谈论“地球村”的话题。 |
| | | 说 | 恰当运用所学词汇和表达描述与“边界”相关的话题。 |
| | | 读 | 在理解的基础上感悟课文主题,从而加深对单元主题意义的认识;读懂语篇,获取文章的主要观点,并梳理文章的写作脉络。 |
| | | 写 | 1. 能运用本单元所学语言,恰当表达自己的观点,有理有据地进行论述; 2. 通过阅读范文,运用所学内容写一篇演讲稿,介绍一位为促进两国交流和理解做出重大贡献的人物。 |
| 学习能力 | 能通过运用各种学习策略,在自主学习、合作学习与探究式学习的过程中,结合单元所提供的反思性和评价性问题,不断监控、评价、反思和调整自己的学习内容和进程,激发英语学习的兴趣,提高分析和解决问题的能力,提高自己的理解能力和表达能力,最终促进自身语言能力、文化意识、思维品质和学习能力的综合提升。 | | |

| | |
|----------|---|
| 核心 素养 | 具体要求 |
| 文化 意识 | 学习优秀人物面对边界限制时所做出的努力和取得的突破,学习他们创新的思维方式和坚定的勇气,深化对单元主题意义的理解。 |
| 思维 品质 | 能运用单元所学内容,思考当今社会仍存在的边界问题,以及如何打破这些边界,倡议大家采取行动、共同努力,创造一个更加公平、和谐的世界。在深入理解语篇内容的同时联系自身实际,实现知识与思维能力的迁移。 |

◦ 必备知识

| | |
|----------|---|
| 必背 单词 | boundary, statistic, assist, tackle, vital, specialist, infectious, clinic, disinfect, devotion, twin, ward, realistic, minority, cast, mankind, joint, harmonious, rewarding, mount, civil, civilian, division, liberty, altogether, nobly, influential, communist |
| 重点 表达 | take any chances, comrade in arms, put... at risk, in memory of, at a great cost, die for, dedicate to, be engaged in, in a larger sense, bring forth, in vain |
| 重点 知识 | 1. It is the first time (that)... 2. 形容词作状语 |
| 单元 语法 | it 作形式主语 |
| 单元 写作 | 演讲稿 |

探 · 究 · 构 · 建

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas— Comprehending

学习任务目标

1. Understand the video, and gain a clearer understanding of our world today through data analogies.
2. Understand the pictures, and talk about your own views on boundary issues combining with your own personal experience, triggering preliminary thinking on the topic of the unit.
3. Read the diary, understand some of the daily problems faced by the author as a Doctors Without Borders worker, and obtain the main points of the article.

○ 自主式预习 ○

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一) 核心词汇

1. boundary *n.* 分界线; 边界
2. assist *v.* 协助, 帮助
3. vital *adj.* 极其重要的
4. specialist *n.* 专家
5. devotion *n.* 奉献
6. regardless of 不管, 不顾
7. end in 以……结束
8. be caught up in 被卷入; 牵涉
9. work on 从事于

(二) 阅读词汇

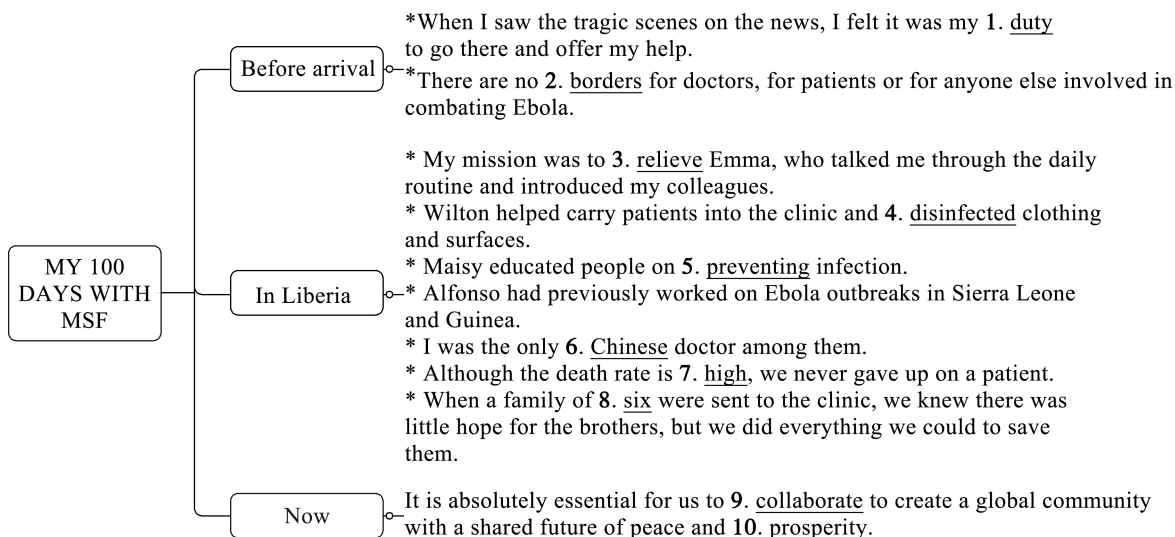
1. tragic *adj.* 悲惨的, 不幸的
2. statistic *n.* (一项) 统计数据
3. infectious *adj.* 传染性的
4. tackle *v.* 处理, 对付(难题)
5. comrade *n.* 同志; 朋友

6. combat *v.* 防止, 抑制
7. relieve *v.* 给(某人)换班
8. outbreak *n.* 爆发, 突然发生
9. miracle *n.* 意外的幸运事; 奇迹
10. compensate *v.* 弥补, 补偿
11. clinic *n.* 诊所; 门诊部
12. disinfect *v.* 为……消毒, 给……杀菌
13. ward *n.* 病房
14. Ebola *n.* 埃博拉病毒
15. vomit *n.* 呕吐物
16. van *n.* 小型货车
17. collaborate *v.* 合作, 协作
18. take any chances 冒险
19. against all odds 尽管困难重重
20. put... at risk 让……处于危险之中
21. step into one's shoes 代替某人的位置; 接替某人
22. not to mention 更不用说

任务型课堂

文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text.



文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text.

- Which of the following words has the closest meaning to “relieve” in the third paragraph?
A. Replace. B. Assist.
C. Guide. D. Supervise.
- What can we know about Alfonso from the text?
A. He has retired for at least 5 years.
B. He once worked in Africa.
C. He feels proud of his staff.
D. He was a bit frightened by the rate of death.
- Why did the author mention the brothers' survival in Paragraph 5?
A. To show his amazement.
B. To prove they are right.
C. To stress the importance of the work.
D. To show their efforts sometimes end in miracles.
- Which of the following words can be used to describe the author's working with MSF?
A. Helpful but uncomfortable.
B. Frustrating and stressful.
C. Life-threatening but meaningful.
D. Hard and boring.

答案: 1~4 ABDC

语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them.

- When I saw the tragic scenes on the news, I felt it was

my duty as a doctor to go there and offer my help.

[句子分析] 本句是一个主从复合句。其中 When 引导时间状语从句; it was my duty as a doctor to go there and offer my help 为宾语从句, 其中 it 作形式主语, 不定式短语 to go there and offer my help 作真正的主语。

[尝试翻译] 当我从新闻上看到那些凄惨的场面时, 我觉得作为医生去那里并提供我的帮助是我的责任。

- With each person I met, I felt a growing sense of pride as part of this extraordinary team, whose devotion to the cause shone from their eyes.

[句子分析] 本句是一个主从复合句。其中 I met 为定语从句, 修饰名词 person, 从句省略关系代词 that/whom; whose 引导非限制性定语从句, 修饰名词 team。

[尝试翻译] 能够和在这里遇到的人一起, 成为这个杰出小组的一员, 我心中的自豪感油然而生, 大家的双眼中都闪耀着奉献精神的光芒。

- To be caught up in such a crisis creates powerful bonds between people, not only between carers and patients, but also between all those who have come from different parts of the world and joined together in a common cause.

[句子分析] 本句是一个主从复合句。其中不定式短语 To be caught up in such a crisis 作主句的主语; who 引导定语从句, 修饰代词 those。

[尝试翻译] 患难与共的经历在人与人之间建立了强有力的纽带, 不仅仅在于医护人员与患者之间,

还在于所有来自世界各地、因为共同事业聚在一起的人们之间。

○思维品质培养

Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions.

1. What does the author think of working with MSF

in Liberia?

It is tiring, dangerous but meaningful.

2. Do you think it is necessary for people all over the world to cooperate in combating terrible diseases? 略

Unit 4 课后素养评价（十三）

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

I. 阅读理解

This fall, students at the University of Massachusetts found a new menu at their canteens: the “diet for a cooler planet” menu. This meant herb-roasted lamb, raised with a carbon-friendly approach. It included sweet potatoes that had been picked from a local farm’s field post-harvest. The options were plant-heavy, locally grown, and involved little to no packaging.

“We wanted to let students participate in climate action by making choices about their food,” says Kathy Wicks, sustainability director for UMass Dining. The university is not alone in this effort. Increasingly, American consumers and institutions are thinking about how their food choices impact climate change. For many, small choices at the grocery store, dining hall, and restaurant can feel more accessible than big-ticket options like buying a fuel-efficient car or installing home solar panels.

Small changes in dietary habits may make a big difference. Climate activists often target fossil fuels and transportation systems, but studies point to the food system as a significant contributor to global warming. According to Project Drawdown, a research organisation that evaluates climate solutions, the way food is grown, transported, and consumed accounts for about a quarter of the world’s greenhouse gas emissions. Beef is a regular target. “If, on average, Americans cut a quarter pound of beef per week from their diet, it’s like taking 10 million cars off the road a year,” says Sujatha Bergen, director of health campaigns for the Natural Resources Defense Council. Food waste ranks third among climate solutions. While much waste occurs before consumers are involved—food left on the field or “chucked” because it does not fit appearance standards. Americans also throw out a lot of food

they have purchased: about \$1,600 worth a year per family of four.

“People are beginning to understand that their food choices have a big impact on climate,” says Megan Larmer, director of regional food at the Glynwood Center for Regional Food and Farming in New York. But, she cautions substantial change will need to come from the whole food system.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了人们可以通过选择低碳食物对改善气候做出贡献。

1. What is the purpose of the new menu at the University of Massachusetts?

- A. To market the cold dishes.
- B. To reduce the cost of packaging.
- C. To popularise the plant-heavy diet.
- D. To promote low-carbon awareness.

D 推理判断题。根据第一段的内容和第二段中的“‘We wanted to let students participate in climate action by making choices about their food,’ says Kathy Wicks, sustainability director for UMass Dining.”可推知,马萨诸塞大学推出新菜单的目的是让学生参与气候行动,增强学生的低碳生活意识。故选 D。

2. What can be inferred from Paragraph 2?

- A. Food is a decisive factor for climate change.
- B. Food choices matter much to global warming.
- C. Universities are working together in climate action.
- D. Fuel-efficient cars are not affordable for consumers.

B 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“Increasingly, American consumers and institutions are thinking about how their food choices impact climate change. For many, small choices at the grocery store, dining hall, and restaurant can feel more accessible than big-ticket options like buying a fuel-efficient car or installing home solar panels.”

可知,食物选择影响气候变化,比起节能汽车等昂贵的物品,食物选择是人们更容易做到的。由此可推知,食物选择对全球变暖意义重大。故选 B。

3. What does Sujatha Bergen say about beef?

- A. It has a great influence on carbon reduction.
- B. It is popular among millions of car drivers.
- C. It has a close relationship with gas emission.
- D. It plays a significant role in Americans' diet.

A 推理判断题。根据第三段中 Sujatha Bergen 说的话 “If, on average, Americans cut a quarter pound of beef per week from their diet, it's like taking 10 million cars off the road a year...” 可推知, Sujatha Bergen 认为减少食用牛肉对减少碳排放量有很大的影响。故选 A。

4. Which of the following is a suitable title for the text?

- A. Food System Reform: A Successful Trial
- B. Global Warming: An Approaching Danger
- C. Carbon Emission: A Killer, or Healer?
- D. Low-carbon Diet: A Craze, or More?

D 标题归纳题。通读全文,尤其是第三段中的 “Small changes in dietary habits may make a big difference.” “studies point to the food system as a significant contributor to global warming” 和最后一段中的 “People are beginning to understand that their food choices have a big impact on climate...” 可推知,文章主要介绍了人们可以通过选择低碳食物对气候变化做出贡献。D 项 “低碳饮食: 是一种狂热,还是有更多意义?” 适合作文章标题。故选 D。

II. 七选五

Exposure to different cultures is one of the main reasons I enjoy visiting other countries. There are other types of food, interesting people, new experiences. 1

A country usually has its own money, such as RMB in China, rupee in India, and rufiyaa in Maldives. 2 This can make travel among such countries much easier and more convenient. In my

opinion, however, I like having different kinds of money to use and get used to that while I travel. 3 When I visited Thailand and Vietnam last month, getting used to the fact that £1 is equal to over 42 Thai baht and 27,000 Vietnamese dong was also quite a good test for my maths skills!

If you've ever been to the UK, you will know the Queen's head is on every banknote and every coin. I was living in the Quebec Province of Canada last year and money there surprised me greatly.

4 This is because she's also Canada's Head of State. Images on the Canadian money are various, including former prime ministers, as well as Canadian wildlife like the beaver, caribou and polar bear.

5 Wartime Prime Minister Winston Churchill appears on £5 banknotes and writer Jane Austen £10 banknotes. The banknotes are also made of a material called polymer rather than paper. In Canada, they are already using polymer banknotes and some people even think that the money smells of maple syrup (枫糖浆), probably the country's most well-known food!

- A. There are new historical figures on the pound notes.
- B. They have the British Queen on their \$20 banknotes.
- C. Money represents preference and development of a country.
- D. Of course, there're many countries using euros or US dollars.
- E. You will also be amazed by the images on the money.
- F. One more thing to mention in a new country is a different currency.
- G. It's part of the cultural experience to hold money with a foreign figure.

答案: 1~5 FDGBA

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—
Language points

学习任务目标

- 1. Read the diary to understand the challenges faced by the author as a Doctors Without Borders worker on a daily basis, and to grasp the main ideas of the article.
- 2. Find out the relevant details, sort out the writing context of the text, and summarise the author's experience and feelings from before departure to today.
- 3. Based on the content of the article, perceive the significance of the theme from the selfless dedication of Doctors Without Borders.

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- 1. **Statistics** are facts which are obtained from analysing information expressed in numbers.
统计数据
- 2. Trust is a **vital** component in any relationship.
极其重要的
- 3. At first, the new manager didn't know how to **tackle** the conflict with the partner.
处理
- 4. The fence marks the **boundary** between her property and her neighbour's.
分界线
- 5. A **clinic** is a place, often in a hospital, where medical treatment is given to people who do not need to stay in the hospital.
诊所; 门诊部
- 6. The patient lay quietly on his bed in the medical **ward**.
病房
- 7. **Disinfect** the wound before you bandage it up.
为……消毒, 给……杀菌

II. 拓展词汇知变形

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|------------------------------------|--|
| <u>assist</u> <i>v.</i> 协助, 帮助 | <u>assistant</u> <i>n.</i> 助手 |
| | <u>assistance</u> <i>n.</i> 帮助, 援助 |
| <u>tragic</u> <i>adj.</i> 悲惨的, 不幸的 | <u>tragically</u> <i>adv.</i> 悲惨地, 不幸地 |
| | <u>tragedy</u> <i>n.</i> 不幸; 悲剧(作品); 悲剧性事件, 惨剧 |
| <u>relieve</u> <i>v.</i> 给(某人)换班 | <u>relief</u> <i>n.</i> (痛苦或忧虑的)减轻或解除; 减轻痛苦的事物 |

续表

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|------------------------------------|--|
| <u>specialist</u> <i>n.</i> 专家 | <u>specialism</u> <i>n.</i> 专长, 专业, 特长; 专业化 |
| | <u>special</u> <i>adj.</i> 特殊的, 特别的; 格外的; 有专门作用的 |
| | <u>specially</u> <i>adv.</i> 专门地, 特意; 特别, 尤其 |
| <u>infectious</u> <i>adj.</i> 传染性的 | <u>infection</u> <i>n.</i> 感染; 传染 |
| | <u>infect</u> <i>v.</i> 使感染; 传染 |
| | <u>infected</u> <i>adj.</i> 受感染的; 受细菌污染的 |
| | <u>disinfect</u> <i>v.</i> 为……消毒, 给……杀菌 |
| <u>devotion</u> <i>n.</i> 奉献 | <u>devote</u> <i>v.</i> 致力于; 奉献 |
| | <u>devoted</u> <i>adj.</i> 献身的; 忠诚的 |

III. 补全短语

- 1. work on 从事于……
- 2. take any chances 冒险
- 3. not to mention 更不用说
- 4. regardless of 不管, 不顾
- 5. end in 以……结束
- 6. be caught up in 被卷入; 牵涉
- 7. against all odds 尽管困难重重
- 8. put... at risk 让……处于危险之中
- 9. step into one's shoes 代替某人的位置; 接替某人

IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: it was + 名词 + to do sth.

When I saw the tragic scenes on the news, I felt it was my duty as a doctor to go there and offer my help.

当我从新闻上看到那些惨状时,我觉得作为医生去那里并提供我的帮助是我的责任。

2. 句型公式: as 引导时间状语从句

As she talked, I could hear at least three different languages being spoken at the tables around us. 当她说话的时候,我能听到从周围桌子传过来的

谈话声中至少有三种不同的语言。

3. 句型公式: do all/everything sb. can/could to do sth.

We knew there was little hope for the brothers, but we did everything we could to save them.

我们知道兄弟俩没什么希望了,但我们还是竭尽所能去救治他们。

4. 句型公式: It is the first time (that)...

It is not the first time the author has worked with MSF.

这不是作者第一次与无国界医生合作。

任务型课堂

1. assist v. 协助, 帮助

[教材原文] It assists people based on need, regardless of which country they are from. 它根据需要帮助人们, 不管他们来自哪个国家。

[归纳拓展]

(1) assist sb. to do sth. 帮助某人做某事

assist sb. in/with sth. 帮助某人某事

assist sb. in doing sth. 帮助某人做某事

(2) assistance n. 帮助, 援助

come to one's assistance 帮助某人

with the assistance of 在……的帮助下

(3) assistant n. 助手; 助理; 售货员

名师点拨

assist 只是表示辅助性的帮助; aid 多指经济上或其他方面急需的援助; help 用法则比较广泛, 常用于日常谈话中, 表示任何形式的帮助。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① Mary was chosen as an assistant (assist) to help Mr Brown finish his research.

② We asked him to assist us in designing a new bridge.

③ Here are some good sources of information to assist you to make (make) the best selection.

④ With the assistance of my English teacher, I've made rapid progress in English.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之体育运动) 教练帮助运动员提高跑步速度。

The coach assisted the athlete in improving/assisted the athlete to improve his running speed.

2. put... at risk 让……处于危险之中

[教材原文] I knew I was putting my life at risk, but I thought, "If I don't do it, who will?"

我知道我在拿自己的生命冒险, 但我想: “如果我不这么做, 谁会这么做呢?”

[归纳拓展]

(1) at risk 遭受危险; 处境危险

at the risk of... 冒着……的危险

run the risk (of doing sth.) 冒险(做某事)

take risks/a risk 冒险

(2) risk doing sth. 冒险做某事; 冒……的危险

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① Those robbers broke into the bank at the risk of being caught (catch) by the police.

② In fighting the fire, he risked being burnt (burn) to death.

③ The report found that youngsters felt their friendships could be at risk if they did not respond to social media posts quickly, and around the clock.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之劝告信) 如果他继续迟到, 就有失去工作的风险。

He will run the risk of losing his job if he continues to be late.

3. relieve v. 给(某人)换班;解除;缓解

[教材原文] My mission was to **relieve** Emma, a Canadian specialist in infectious diseases at the end of her posting.

我的任务是接替埃玛,她是一位加拿大传染病专家,任期届满。

[归纳拓展]

(1)relieve sb. of... 解除某人……的负担、困难等
(2)relief n. (痛苦或忧虑的)减轻或解除;减轻痛苦的事物

in relief 如释重负;松了口气

to one's relief 使某人欣慰的是

relief of/from... ……的减轻/消除/缓和

It is a relief to... ……是让人欣慰/轻松的事。

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①Those who suffer from headache will find they get relief (relieve) from the medicine.

②This will relieve you of the pain.

③Make sure it's a relief from daily stress rather than another thing to worry about.

(2)写作微练

①(读后续写之情绪描写)令他们极为宽慰的是,在地震期间救援队及时赶到了。

To their great relief, the rescue team arrived just in time during the earthquake.

②(应用文写作之告知信)在截止日期之前完成所有任务是一件非常令人宽慰的事。

It is a great relief to finish all the tasks before the deadline.

4. It is the first time (that)...

[教材原文] It is not **the first time** the author has worked with MSF.

这不是作者第一次与无国界医生合作。

[句式分析]此处是“It/This/That + is/was + the first/second/... time (that)…”句型的应用,该句

型表示“这是第一/二……次……”。

[归纳拓展]

It's time for (doing) sth. 该是(做)某事的时候了。

It's time (for sb.) to do sth. 该是(某人)做某事的时候了。

It's (about/high) time (that)... should do/did sth. 该是……做某事的时候了。

It was a time when... 那是一段……的时期。

名师点拨

句型“It/This/That + is + the first/ second/... time (that)…”中,从句的时态一般用现在完成时;句型“It/This/That + was + the first/ second/... time (that)…”中,从句的时态一般用过去完成时。

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①It's high time that we students should work/ worked (work) harder at our lessons as the College Entrance Examination is approaching.

②Though it was the first time that I had visited (visit) the small town, I fell in love with it at once.

③I hope that it is the last time that you have made (make) such a foolish mistake.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之推荐信)这是她第二次在这个比赛中获得一等奖。

It is the second time that she has won the first prize in the competition.

多义词汇 专练

tackle: A. v. 处理,对付(难题) B. v. (为了解决难题)与……商谈 C. v. 抢断,拦截

①I **tackled** him about the money he owed me. B

②He was **tackled** just outside the penalty area. C

③The government is determined to **tackle** inflation. A

Unit 4 课后素养评价(十四)

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points

I. 单句语法填空

1. It is an independent, non-profit organisation whose mission is to provide medical care to those

affected (affect) by conflict, epidemics and disasters.

2. We asked him what the prospects are for a vaccine

to prevent infection (infect) in the first place.

3. I felt a growing sense of pride as part of this extraordinary medical team.
4. We all believe that her intelligence can finally compensate for her poor experience in the job.
5. We know that there was little hope for the patient, but we did everything we could to save (save) her.
6. First of all, this difficult problem has to be tackled (tackle), thus enabling us to proceed to the others.
7. Much to my relief (relieve), after experimenting with this method for some time, I realise my great changes!
8. The teacher's selfless devotion (devote) to the cause of education is well known, and all her students respect and love her deeply.

II. 短语填空

put... at risk; end in; not to mention; take any chances; a lack of; regardless of

1. A lack of money prevented him from going abroad for further study.
2. His bad habit of smoking puts him at risk of suffering from lung cancer.
3. The volunteers aim to help victims (受害者) of disasters regardless of their race or nationality.
4. The river ran so fast that we couldn't take any chances to cross it.
5. To their satisfaction, their hard work ended in great success.
6. The boy can't finish his homework on time, not to mention help his mother with housework.

III. 完成句子

1. How time flies! It is three months since I became a volunteer in the hospital.
时间过得真快! 我在医院做志愿者已有三个月了。
2. It is vital to be honest with friends because trust lies in it.
对朋友坦诚十分重要, 因为信任基于坦诚。
3. Caught up in heavy snow, the firemen had difficulty in arriving at the village on time.
困在大雪之中, 消防队员们很难按时到达村庄。
4. The sad mother sat on the roadside, shouting as

she was crying.

伤心的妈妈坐在路边, 边哭边叫喊。

5. It is the first time in my life that I have taken part in such a grand celebration.

这是我有生以来第一次参加如此盛大的庆典。

IV. 完形填空

My son, daughter and I all needed new glasses this year. After searching for an optometrist (验光师) we scheduled a(n) 1. The exams went well and we all 2 our new glasses. The 3 was enough to make my wallet weep, though.

When the new glasses arrived, we all tried them on and 4 seeing clearly again. Like I always do, I put the 5 ones in an old shoe box, which was full of glasses 6 stored. I felt bad about all of them just sitting there 7 dust. My daughter soon found a company that accepts second-hand glasses and then gives them to those who need but can't 8 new ones.

As we packed all the 9 to mail out, my mind went back to a time when I was the one in need. I can still remember 10 my broken, plastic glasses' frames (镜框) for the twelfth time because we couldn't afford new ones. I didn't know why we 11 so much when my young family didn't do anything wrong. It was one of those questions I asked but never expected to get a 12.

At present I think I 13 know what that answer is. The truth is that we all 14 pain, struggles and suffering in this life. We can use them to grow selfish and bitter or we can use them to grow loving and kind. May you always choose 15. May you always choose love.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章通过讲述作者购买新眼镜和捐赠旧眼镜的经历, 强调了善良和爱的力量。作者希望人们能够选择善良, 在面对困难和苦难时, 以一颗慈爱的心去对待他人。

1. A. operation B. vote
C. treatment D. appointment

D 根据上文的“searching for an optometrist (验光师)”和下文的“The exams went well”并结合常识可知, 作者寻找了验光师并预约了时间进行验光。故选 D。

2. A. removed B. ordered
C. adjusted D. sold

B 根据下文的“our new glasses”可知,检查进行得顺利,所以作者他们都订购了新眼镜。故选 B。

3. A. cost B. device
C. label D. route

A 根据下文的“enough to make my wallet weep”可知,是新眼镜的费用让作者的钱包哭泣。故选 A。

4. A. enjoyed B. missed
C. escaped D. recommended

A 根据“tried them on and 4 seeing clearly again”可知,新眼镜到了,试戴并且再次看清楚的乐趣让作者很享受。故选 A。

5. A. heavy B. new
C. used D. thick

C 根据上文的“When the new glasses arrived, we all tried them on”可知,此处是指把用过的眼镜放进一个旧鞋盒里。故选 C。

6. A. digitally B. separately
C. previously D. illegally

C 根据上文的“Like I always do”可知,作者像往常一样把用过的眼镜放在一个旧鞋盒里,旧鞋盒里装满了以前的眼镜。故选 C。

7. A. brushing B. gathering
C. removing D. covering

B 根据“all of them just sitting there 7 dust”并结合常识可知,眼镜被放置在盒子里,一直不用,会积满灰尘。故选 B。

8. A. donate B. issue
C. afford D. discount

C 根据“those who need but can't 8 new ones”可知,作者的女儿找到了一个接受二手眼镜并将它们分发给那些需要但买不起新眼镜的人的公司。下文“because we couldn't afford new ones”也是提示。故选 C。

9. A. notes B. accounts
C. boxes D. glasses

D 根据上文的“found a company that accepts second-hand glasses and then gives them to those

who need but can't 8 new ones”及“As we packed all the 9 to mail out”可知,此处是指把不用的眼镜邮寄给这家赠送他人免费眼镜的公司。故选 D。

10. A. shaping B. setting
C. providing D. gluing

D 根据下文的“my broken, plastic glasses' frames (镜框) for the twelfth time because we couldn't afford new ones”可知,作者当时是因为买不起新的,所以粘上破碎的塑料眼镜框架。故选 D。

11. A. changed B. struggled
C. leaked D. cycled

B 根据上文的“my broken, plastic glasses' frames (镜框) for the twelfth time because we couldn't afford new ones”可知,通过作者记得第 12 次修补眼镜的事情,想不明白自己和家人为什么生活得那么困难,即挣扎着生活。故选 B。

12. A. grade B. benefit
C. key D. question

C 根据上文的“It was one of those questions I asked”可知,它是作者一直想问的问题,但是从没想到得到答案。故选 C。

13. A. simply B. directly
C. secretly D. finally

D 根据上文的“It was one of those questions I asked but never expected to get a 12.”可知,作者一直想知道问题的答案,如今终于知道了。故选 D。

14. A. go through B. sum up
C. search for D. focus on

A 根据下文的“pain, struggles and suffering in this life”可知,我们在一生中都会经历痛苦、挣扎和磨难。故选 A。

15. A. passion B. kindness
C. profits D. evidences

B 根据上文的“We can use them to grow selfish and bitter or we can use them to grow loving and kind.”并结合上文作者送出眼镜帮助有需要的人可知,作者是要强调“loving and kind”,即希望人们选择善良。故选 B。

Section III Using language

学习任务目标

1. Master *it* as an empty subject, and use *it* in the real context.
2. Understand and be able to express the phenomenon of integration, promotion, and tolerance brought about by the “global village”.
3. Learn to express interest in other people’s conversations and describe a certain universal phenomenon that exists using what you have learned.

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. I hold the firm belief that with the **joint** efforts of both teachers and students, our school will become a more enjoyable place in the near future.
共同的, 联合的
2. A deep **mutual** respect and understanding developed between them.
共有的, 共同的
3. The **cast** of a play or film is all the people who act in it.
全体演员

II. 拓展词汇知变形

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|---|---|
| <u>realistic</u> <i>adj.</i> (目标、希望)能够实现的 | reality <i>n.</i> 真实, 现实 |
| | realise <i>v.</i> 实现; 意识到 |
| <u>minority</u> <i>n.</i> 少数派; 少数 | minor <i>adj.</i> 较小的, 次要的, 轻微的 |
| <u>inclusive</u> <i>adj.</i> 包容广阔的 | include <i>v.</i> 包括 |
| | including <i>prep.</i> 包括……在内 |
| <u>harmonious</u> <i>adj.</i> 和睦的, 融洽的 | harmony <i>n.</i> 和睦, 融洽; 和谐, 协调 |
| <u>rewarding</u> <i>adj.</i> 值得做的, 有意义的 | reward <i>n.</i> 报酬; 奖金 <i>v.</i> 酬劳; 奖赏 |

III. 补全短语

1. in particular 尤其, 特别
2. be responsible for 对……负责
3. play a role in 在……中扮演角色, 在……中起作用
4. at least 至少
5. as if 仿佛, 好像
6. merge into 并入; 结合
7. strike a chord with 引起共鸣
8. all over again 再一次, 重新

IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: as if 引导方式状语从句
Nowadays, people all over the world are becoming more and more connected, as if the world were getting smaller ...
现在, 全世界的人联系得越来越紧密, 好像世界变得更小了……
2. 句型公式: so that 引导目的状语从句
Rather, it’s about countries and people making a joint effort to come together to create a more harmonious and understanding world, so that we can all enjoy the mutual benefits.
而是国家和人民共同努力、共同创造一个更加融洽、更富同情心的世界, 这样我们都能享受到互惠互利的好处。
3. 句型公式: can’t wait to do sth.
... I can’t wait to do it all over again.
……我迫不及待地想再做一遍。

任务型课堂

1. **harmonious** *adj.* 和睦的, 融洽的

[教材原文] Rather, it’s about countries and people making a joint effort to come together to create a more **harmonious** and understanding world, so that we can all enjoy the mutual

benefits.

而是国家和人民共同努力、共同创造一个更加融洽、更富同情心的世界, 这样我们都能享受到互惠互利的好处。

[归纳拓展]

- (1) a harmonious society 一个和谐的社会
(2) harmony *n.* 和睦,融洽;和谐,协调
in harmony with 与……和谐相处;与……一致

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

- ① We Chinese should work together for a harmonious (harmony) society.
② Only when we learn to exist in harmony with nature can we stop being a threat to wildlife and to the planet.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之演讲稿) **和谐社会**是一个我们可以通过集体努力实现的实际目标。

A harmonious society is a practical goal that we can achieve through collective efforts.

2. rewarding *adj.* 值得做的,有意义的

[教材原文] It was **rewarding** to see how our work helped bring people together from different cultures.

看到我们的工作如何帮助来自不同文化的人聚集在一起是很有意义的。

[归纳拓展]

(1) reward *n.* 报酬;奖金

as a reward (for...) 作为(对……的)报酬/奖赏
in reward for 为酬谢;作为……的奖励

(2) reward *v.* 酬劳;奖赏

reward sb. for sth. 因某事而酬谢某人

reward sb. with sth. 用某物酬谢某人

(3) award *n.* 奖,奖品,奖金 *v.* 授予

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

- ① The students have been working hard on their lessons and their efforts will be rewarded with success in the end.
② The nurse received a gift from her patient as a reward for her kindness.
③ As far as I'm concerned, it's rewarding (reward) to keep a diary of daily happenings.

(2) 写作微练

① (读后续写之人物描写) 小女孩得到了一个漂亮的玩偶,作为她对每个人都有礼貌的奖励。

The little girl was given a beautiful doll as a reward for her being polite to everyone.

② (应用文写作之人物介绍) 他们因对科学研究的贡献而被授予特殊的待遇作为回报。

They were granted special privileges in reward for their contribution to the scientific research.

多义词汇 专练

cast: A. *v.* 选派(角色) B. *v.* 投射(光、影子等)

C. *v.* 向……投以(视线、笑容等)

D. *n.* 全体演员

- ① The setting sun **cast** long shadows across the field. B
② She was **cast** as the female lead in the play due to her outstanding acting skills. A
③ The **cast** of the play was made up of experienced professionals. D
④ The teacher **cast** an encouraging smile at the nervous student. C

语法研习课

it 作形式主语

语法感知

- ① **It** is difficult to get there before dark.
② **It** was his duty to attend to this matter.
③ **It** takes a lot of effort to recover the system.
④ **It's** no use doing a lot of work without thoughtful planning.
⑤ **It** was very difficult getting everything ready in time.
⑥ **It** is clear that the chosen pattern is not the correct one.

当句子的主语是不定式、动名词或主语从句时,常常用 **it** 作形式主语,而把真正的主语移到句子后部。用 **it** 作形式主语的好处是避免句子由于主语太长而显得头重脚轻。句①②③中,**it** 作 不定式 的形式主语;句④⑤中,**it** 作 动名词 的形式主语;句⑥中,**it** 作 主语从句 的形式主语。

语法精讲

英语中 **it** 可用于代替上文中提到的事物、事件或人(尤其是不知身份、性别和姓名的人),也可以用来表示时间、天气、距离、计算结果等。**it** 还可用来代替

不定式、动名词、从句等,充当形式主语或形式宾语。
本单元主要学习 it 作形式主语的用法。

1. 作形式主语代替不定式

① It is + *adj.* + (of/for sb.) to do sth.

名师点拨

在此句型中当形容词表示对逻辑主语的评价时,不定式前用 of sb., 常见的形容词有 brave, careless, foolish, honest, kind, modest, rude, silly, stupid, wise, wrong 等;当形容词表示重要性、紧迫性、频繁程度、难易度、安全性等情况时,不定式前用 for sb., 常见的形容词有 important, necessary, easy, hard, natural, impossible 等。

② It is/was + one's turn/duty/pleasure (a pity, great fun, a habit, time, a rule, a shame) + to do sth.

③ It takes sb. some time to do sth. 花费某人多少时间做某事。

④ It costs sb. some money to do sth. 花费某人多少钱做某事。

⑤ It's up to sb. to do sth. 应由某人(负责)做某事。

It's very kind of you to help me.

你帮助我真是太好了。

It is important to pay your electricity bill on time,
as late payments may affect your credit.

按时交电费很重要,因为晚交电费可能会影响你的信誉。

It is your turn to read the text.

轮到你读课文了。

It takes me an hour to walk there and back.

我步行一个来回用了一个小时。

It is up to you to make the plan.

应该由你制订这个计划。

2. 作形式主语代替动名词

有些句型中 it 用作形式主语,真正的主语为动名词:

① It's useless/(of) no use/(of) no good doing...
做……是徒然的/没有用的/没有益处的。

② It is a waste of... doing sth. 做某事是浪费……的。

It is no use giving him some advice.

= **It is useless giving him some advice.**

给他提建议是没有用的。

It is no good living alone without keeping in touch with others.

独居而不和他人来往没有好处。

It is a waste of time trying to persuade him to change his mind. As is known to us all, he is so stubborn.

试图说服他改变主意是在浪费时间。众所周知,他是如此固执。

3. 作形式主语代替主语从句

① It is + *adj.* + that... (常用于此句型的形容词有 certain, doubtful, important, necessary, easy, strange 等)

② It is + 过去分词 + that... 据…… (常用于此句型的过去分词有 said, announced, believed, reported, known, hoped 等)

③ It is + a/an + *n.* + that... 做……是……的。(常用于此句型的名词有 pity, honour, shame, wonder 等)

④ It happens/turns out/occurs to sb. that...
碰巧/结果是/某人突然想起……

It is necessary that the work should be done well.
这项工作应该被很好地完成,这一点是必要的。

It's a pity that I didn't think of it earlier.
真是遗憾我没有早一点想起它。

It so happened that the tickets were sold out.
碰巧票都卖光了。

It occurred to her that she might adopt a homeless child.

她突然想到她可以收养一个无家可归的孩子。

It turns out that the situation is quite serious.
结果表明情况很严峻。

语法冲关

I. 单句语法填空

1. It is reported that more than twenty people were injured in that bus accident.
2. I know it is important to know my own limitations, but what is difficult is to help others to know their own limitations.
3. It is known (know) to us that he is one of the most famous football players in the world.
4. It never occurred to me that you could succeed in persuading him to change his mind.
5. It is no good having a car if you can't drive.

II. 句型转换(用 it 作形式主语)

1. People say that the weather in the north is quite different from that in the south.
→ It is said that the weather in the north is quite different from that in the south.

2. She is reported to have won several gold medals in the Olympic Games.
→ It is reported that she has won several gold medals in the Olympic Games.

3. To get to school from my home by bike takes me half an hour.
→ It takes me half an hour to get to school from my home by bike.

Unit 4 课后素养评价（十五）

Section III Using language

I. 词语填空

as a result; be responsible for; harmonious; make a joint effort; happen to; play an important role; as if

- At present, scientists all over the world are making a joint effort to search for the cure for the disease.
- Music plays an important role in our life, because it can make us feel relaxed both mentally and physically and help reduce our pressure from work and life.
- A young couple on a boat were eating, talking and laughing loudly as if they were the only people in the world.
- It is advised that parents should get on with children and teach children to be responsible for what they do.
- When you phoned me, I happened to go to the school library without my mobile phone.
- Mr Wang is an experienced teacher and he works hard. As a result, he is popular among all of his students.
- In short, a good and harmonious environment at home is necessary for a child to grow healthy.

II. 单句语法填空

- While setting goals, make sure that your goals are realistic (real).
- It is interesting to learn how the words for animals and meat develop.
- According to the survey, only a minority (minor) of students don't like playing games.
- The computer game is designed for game lovers, young ones in particular.

5. Travelling along the old Silk Road is an interesting and rewarding (reward) experience.

III. 阅读理解

Warming seas across the globe are endangering coral reefs (珊瑚礁), a key ecosystem that supports marine life to live and thrive. As a possible way to save them from extinction, scientists have recently frozen and revived groups of adult corals for the first time, according to a recent study.

Freezing biological materials, or “cryopreserving” them, refers to keeping them in a deep freeze for long periods without affecting the cell's viability (活性), according to the *Science Times*.

This method usually cools them to very low temperatures, commonly to -196°C . Since cells would normally die at such a low temperature due to the formation of ice inside, scientists need to monitor the freezing rate and choose the freezing medium carefully.

Researchers in the US experimented with freezing pea-sized pieces of a common coral in Hawaii. After removing the microbes on the corals, they sealed the corals in metal containers filled with a chemical solution that partially dehydrated (脱水) them and helped control ice growth.

When the corals reached a temperature of around -200°C , the remaining water in the corals solidified into a glassy form. The corals were still alive, with their life-driving functions becoming extremely slow. After being cryopreserved for a few minutes, the researchers pulled the corals out and placed them in warm water. In two minutes, they started consuming oxygen—a sign of them staying alive.

Previously, researchers had already successfully cryopreserved coral larvae (幼虫), according to a study in 2018. However, the larvae can only be collected when corals lay eggs, which happens just a few nights each year. “That’s putting a lot of eggs in one basket,” US marine scientist Liza Roger told *Science News*.

This breakthrough offers more hope to the world’s corals, said Roger. However, there’s more work to be done. A few days after thawing (解冻), the corals became “stressed out” from the process and were killed by the bacteria they normally live in harmony with. The researchers are working on using antibiotics to help them survive for a longer period of time.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了科学家通过冷冻的方式来保护珊瑚礁免于灭绝。

1. What is the purpose of the recent study?
 - A. To bring dead corals back to life.
 - B. To freeze and revive coral larvae.
 - C. To find a way to preserve corals.
 - D. To study the conditions of coral growth.

C 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“As a possible way to save them from extinction, scientists have recently frozen and revived groups of adult corals for the first time, according to a recent study.”可知,科学家将珊瑚冷冻是为了使它们免于灭绝。
2. What happened to the corals when they were

cryopreserved?

- A. They died for the time being.
 - B. Their life functions slowed down.
 - C. They remained alive and unchanged.
 - D. They fed on microbes in the containers.

B 细节理解题。根据第五段中的“The corals were still alive, with their life-driving functions becoming extremely slow.”可知,当珊瑚被冷冻时,它们还活着,但是它们的生命机能减缓。
3. What does Roger think about cryopreserving coral larvae?
 - A. It is not a reliable solution.
 - B. It needs a large number of eggs.
 - C. It holds promise for restoring corals.
 - D. It requires overly expensive technology.

A 推理判断题。根据倒数第二段的内容可推知,Roger认为这个方法很不可靠。
4. What issue do the researchers still need to approach?
 - A. Finding a suitable freezing medium.
 - B. Identifying the bacteria on the corals.
 - C. Expanding the collection of coral larvae.
 - D. Maintaining the corals’ health after thawing.

D 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的“A few days after thawing (解冻), the corals became ‘stressed out’ from the process... survive for a longer period of time.”可知,研究人员还需要维持珊瑚解冻后的健康。

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

学习任务目标

- 1. Understand the historical background and significance of “The Gettysburg Address”, and feel the power of the speech.
- 2. Comprehend the topic of the article, so as to deepen your understanding of the topic of the unit.
- 3. By reading the sample text, use what you have learned to write a speech draft, introduce a person who has made a significant contribution to promoting exchanges and understanding between two countries.

○ 自主式预习 ○

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- 1. The headmaster **mounted** the platform and addressed the students. 走上,登上
- 2. The members of the **union** will meet tomorrow in an attempt to reach a peaceful settlement. 联邦,联合会
- 3. The American **Civil** War broke out during the presidency of Lincoln. 公民的,国民的
- 4. Only a small **portion** of the budget is spent on books. 一部分
- 5. The train went slower and slower until it stopped **altogether**. 完全
- 6. He is in charge of the **civilian** side of the UN mission. 平民的

II. 拓展词汇知变形

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| <u>slave</u> <i>n.</i> 奴隶 | <u>slavery</u> <i>n.</i> 奴隶制度 |
| <u>division</u> <i>n.</i> 分歧,分裂 | <u>divide</u> <i>v.</i> 分割;划分;分配 |
| <u>liberty</u> <i>n.</i> 自由 | <u>liberate</u> <i>v.</i> 解放;使获得自由 |
| | <u>liberation</u> <i>n.</i> 解放;解放运动(为获得平等权利和地位的行为) |
| <u>nobly</u> <i>adv.</i> 高尚地,崇高地 | <u>noble</u> <i>adj.</i> 高尚的,崇高的;贵族的;堂皇的,壮丽的 |
| <u>influential</u> <i>adj.</i> 有影响力的 | <u>influence</u> <i>n. & v.</i> 影响 |
| <u>communist</u> <i>adj.</i> 共产主义的 | <u>communism</u> <i>n.</i> 共产主义 |

III. 补全短语

- 1. in memory of 为了纪念……
- 2. dedicate to ... 献身于;把(时间、精力)用于……
- 3. carry out 实现;施行
- 4. set down 写下,记下;制定,规定
- 5. at a great cost 以巨大代价
- 6. carry on 继续;坚持;进行(生意、谈话)等
- 7. in vain 白白地;徒劳,无结果
- 8. bring forth 使产生,使出现
- 9. be engaged in 参与;从事
- 10. step by step 一步步地
- 11. set foot in 踏入;进入
- 12. set... apart 使……与众不同;使……突出
- 13. in a larger sense 在更大的意义上

IV. 补全句子

- 1. 句型公式:介词+宾语从句
He gave them a new vision of what the United States of America should be, based on the ideals set down by its Founding Fathers 87 years before. 他以 87 年前开国元勋们所确立的理想为基础,向他们展示了美利坚合众国的新愿景。
- 2. 句型公式:It is/was up to sb. to do sth.
Now it was up to the living to remove not only the divisions between North and South, but the boundaries between black and white, and work step by step towards the equality of humankind. 现在,责任落到了生者身上,不仅要消除南北之间的分歧,还要打破黑人与白人之间的界线,一步步地为人类的平等而努力。
- 3. 句型公式:it 作形式主语
It is altogether fitting and proper that we should

do this.

我们这样做是完全应当而且是非常恰当的。

4. 句型公式: what 引导宾语从句

The world will little note, nor long remember,

what we say here, but can never forget what they
did here.

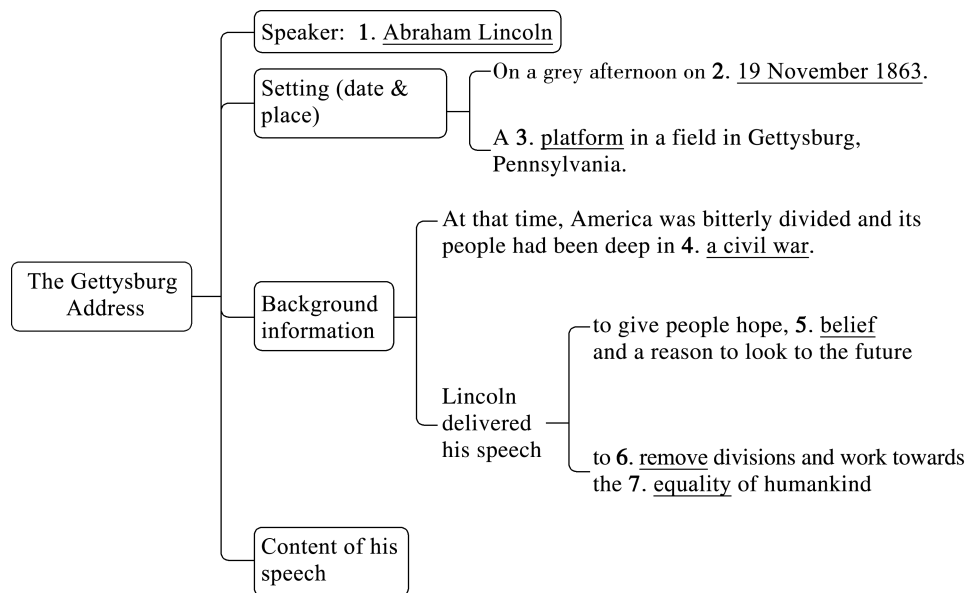
世界不会留意,也不会铭记我们在这里说了什么,
但是它永远不会忘记他们在这里做的事情。

任务型课堂

Part 1 课文理解

文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text.



文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text.

- What's the meaning of the word "score" in Paragraph 4?
A. Ten. B. Twenty.
C. Thirty. D. Decade.
- What can we know from "The Gettysburg Address"?
A. Any nation conceived in Liberty will long endure.
B. Only dead brave men can consecrate this land.
C. This speech will always be remembered by the world.
D. Lincoln called on the living to continue the unfinished work.
- Why did Lincoln mount a platform in a field in Gettysburg, Pennsylvania?
A. To declare a war.
B. To be in memory of the soldiers who had died.
C. To defend against slavery.
D. To announce himself to be the president.

答案: 1~3 BDB

语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them.

- He gave them a new vision of what the United States of America should be, based on the ideals set down by its Founding Fathers 87 years before.
[句子分析] 本句是一个主从复合句。其中 what 引导宾语从句; 过去分词短语 based on... 在句中作状语; 过去分词短语 set down by its Founding Fathers 87 years before 作定语, 修饰名词 ideals。
[尝试翻译] 他以 87 年前开国元勋们所确立的思想为基础, 向他们展示了美利坚合众国的新愿景。
- We have come to dedicate a portion of it as a final resting place for those who here gave their lives that that nation might live.
[句子分析] 本句是一个主从复合句。其中 who 引导定语从句, 修饰代词 those; 第一个 that 引导目的状语从句, 从句省略 so。
[尝试翻译] 我们来到这里, 是为了把这里的一部分土地献给那些为了国家存续而献出自己生命的人, 作为他们最终的安息之地。
- It is rather for us to be here dedicated to the great task remaining before us—that from these

honored dead we take increased devotion to that cause for which they here gave the last full measure of devotion—that we here highly resolve that these dead shall not have died in vain; that this nation shall have a new birth of freedom; and that this government of the people, by the people, for the people, shall not perish from the earth.

[句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句。其中含有四个 that 引导的同位语从句,分别是:that from these honored dead... measure of devotion; that we here highly resolve that these dead shall not have died in vain; that this nation shall have a new birth of freedom 和 that this government of the people, by the people, for the people, shall not perish from the earth,它们均为名词 task 的

同位语。for which 引导定语从句,修饰名词 cause;that these dead shall not have died in vain 是宾语从句,作动词 resolve 的宾语。

[尝试翻译]我们应该把自己奉献于在我们面前的伟大事业——从这些光荣的逝者身上汲取更多的信仰,来投身于他们为之竭尽最后一丝力量的事业——我们在这里下最大的决心,不让逝者白白失去生命,要让国家获得自由的新生,要使民有、民治、民享的政府永存。

○思维品质培养

Activity 4: Think and answer the following question.

According to the text, what effect did Abraham Lincoln's speech have on the civilian people?

His speech gave them hope, belief, a reason to look to the future and helped shape a nation.

Part 2 语言梳理

1. division n. 分歧,分裂

[教材原文]Now it was up to the living to remove not only the **divisions** between North and South, but the boundaries between black and white, and work step by step towards the equality of humankind.

现在,责任落到了生者身上,不仅要消除南北之间的分歧,还要打破黑人与白人之间的界线,一步一步地为人类的平等而努力。

[归纳拓展]

divide v. 分割;划分;分配

divide... into... 把……分成……

divide... from... 把……与……隔开

divide sth. between/among sb. 把某物分配给某人

divide A by B A 除以 B,用 B 除 A

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①Divide 21 by 3 and you will get 7.

② The class are divided into several smaller groups to talk about different parts of the subject.

③ Division (divide) of the opinion among themselves contributed to their defeat.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之活动介绍)全班分成四个小组,开始讨论这个话题。

Divided into four groups, the whole class began to discuss the topic.

2. carry on 继续;坚持;进行(生意、谈话等)

[教材原文]It is for us, the living, rather to be

dedicated here to the unfinished work which they have, thus far, so nobly **carried on**.

他们英勇地坚持至今,现在我们这些生者献身于这未完成的事业的时候了。

[归纳拓展]

carry on with sth. 继续某事

carry on doing sth. 继续做某事,坚持做某事

carry away 运走,冲走;使着迷

carry out 实施;开展;完成

carry through (常指艰难地)坚持做,完成

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①If you carry on working like that, you'll break down sooner or later.

②The research centre worked out a new plan and decided to carry it out immediately.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之报道)尽管很累了,但他们决定继续这个科学实验。

Though tired, they decided to carry on with the scientific experiment.

3. influential adj. 有影响力的

[教材原文]Edgar Snow was an American journalist who wrote **influential** books and articles about China in the 1930s.

埃德加·斯诺是一位美国记者,他在 20 世纪 30 年代写过关于中国的有影响力的书籍和文章。

[归纳拓展]

(1)influence v. 影响;对……起作用

influence sb. to do sth. 影响某人做某事

(2) influence *n.* 影响; 作用

have a/an... influence on/upon 对……有……影响

under the influence of 在……的影响下

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① Influenced (influence) by the growing interest in nature, more and more people enjoy outdoor sports.

② The social environment is extremely influential (influence) when we're making decisions.

(2) 写作微练

① (应用文写作之人物介绍) 她积极的态度对她周围的每个人都有影响。

Her positive attitude has an influence on everyone around her.

② (应用文写作之人物介绍) 在他老师的影响下, 他对绘画产生了兴趣。

Under the influence of his teacher, he became interested in painting.

4. 形容词作状语

[教材原文] Four score and seven years ago our fathers brought forth, upon this continent, a new nation, conceived in Liberty, and dedicated to the proposition that all men are created **equal**.

87年前, 我们的先辈在这块大陆上创立了一个新的国家, 它孕育于自由之中, 献身于人人平等而平等的理想。

[句式分析] 同位语从句 that all men are created equal 中的形容词 equal 作状语。

[归纳拓展]

形容词或形容词化的分词作状语可以表示方式、原因或伴随状况等, 可位于句首、句末或句中, 常用逗号与句子其他成分隔开。

名师点拨

形容词作状语时常用来说明句子主语的状态, 即和主语构成系表关系。如果用来修饰句子的谓语动词或修饰整个句子, 则应用副词作状语。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① Cheerful (cheer), efficient and warm-hearted, they will do everything to make your journey smooth and comfortable.

② He spent three days in the forest, cold and hungry (hunger).

(2) 写作微练

① (应用文写作之人物介绍) 又冷又饿, 他在街上徘徊。(作伴随状语)

Cold and hungry, he wandered in the street.

② (应用文写作之人物介绍) 由于害怕被责骂, 这个男孩没有告诉他妈妈真相。(作原因状语)

Afraid of being scolded, the boy didn't tell his mother the truth.

③ (应用文写作之人物介绍) 尽管很贫穷和节约, 但他们还是捐钱去帮助那些有需要的人。(作让步状语)

Poor and frugal, they gave money to help those in need.

多义词汇 专练

mount: A. *v.* 走上, 登上 B. *v.* 逐步增加

C. *v.* 安排, 组织开展

① The gallery has **mounted** an exhibition of art by a famous woman painter. C

② Pressure is **mounting** on the government to deal with the rise of underemployment. B

③ The professor **mounted** the stage and began to make a speech. A

Unit 4 课后素养评价 (十六)

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

I. 单词拼写

- The right to vote is a basic civil (公民的) right.
- Altogether (全部, 完全) there are some ten thousand of these volcanoes on Earth, all but a few hundred of them extinct.
- It is believed that he is an influential (有影响力的) player in the school football team.

- As a communist (共产主义的) leader, you should spare no effort to serve people.
- Attempts to find civilian (平民的) volunteers are said to have met with embarrassing failure.

II. 单句语法填空

- When they were separated from others, the infected patients endured (endure) pain, worry

and loneliness.

2. It's believed that any successful business relies on a division (divide) of labour.
3. In the novel, Atkinson is a nearly perfect character and behaves most nobly (noble).
4. When we mounted (mount) the top of the mountain, we were all out of breath.
5. We should not only respect our liberty (liberate) but also others'.
6. Industries have expanded quickly and at a great cost to the environment.

III. 短语填空

in memory of; be engaged in; bring forth; in vain;
set foot on; carry on; carry out; take place; step
by step; in a larger sense

1. He tried to persuade his father to give up smoking, but in vain.
2. Her bravery has given him the will to carry on with his life and his work.
3. It is believed that polluted water might bring forth a host of diseases.
4. The university was built by a couple in memory of their only son who died of a strange disease.
5. In a larger sense, winning the World Cup helps put Argentina on the map.
6. The boy has realised the importance of studying step by step.
7. All the secretaries are engaged in making preparations for the conference on educational work.
8. The moment we set foot on the island, we were impressed with the beautiful scenery.
9. Great changes have taken place in the way people communicate in recent years.
10. You can't imagine what trouble the scientists have carrying out the experiment.

IV. 完成句子

1. The boss said it was up to you to decide whether to take it or not.
老板说由你负责决定要它还是不要它。
2. After the long journey, the three of us went back home, hungry and tired.
长途旅行之后,我们三人回到了家,又饿又累。
3. It is reported that the old man came from what we call ancient Greek.
据报道,这位老人来自我们所说的古希腊。

4. To be honest, I didn't understand what the professor said in the scientific report.
说实话,我不明白教授在科学报告中说的话。

5. In order to master grammar knowledge, it is necessary to practise as much as possible.
为了掌握语法知识,尽可能多做练习是有必要的。

V. 语法填空

Table manners are the important process in our daily life. We get used to using chopsticks 1. while Englishmen use knives and forks. It's impolite 2. to laugh (laugh) when you are eating in Britain, which suggests you don't respect others. 3. On the contrary, we laugh and talk during a meal. What's more, in Britain, people have to drive along the left side of the road, but traffic in our country 4. keeps (keep) to the right. Besides, for Chinese students, what they have experienced in studying is 5. an organised learning way. Students tend to follow a clear plan.

6. Compared (compare) with Chinese education, British education is flexible and 7. imaginative (imagine). Students there are encouraged to discuss the subject they want to learn. Last but not least, in China, "Thank you" is not frequently used between friends and family members. However, "Thank you" is 8. widely (wide) used in Britain.

There is no sense in debating 9. which is better. We owe these manners to the different history, but you should do 10. as the Romans do when in Rome.

VI. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假定你是星光中学的李华,你将参加主题为“Let's Ride Bicycles”的英语演讲比赛。请撰写一份演讲稿,主要内容包括:

1. 目前汽车带来的空气污染和交通堵塞等问题;
2. 骑自行车的益处,如节能环保、有利于健康等。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 开头已给出,不计入总词数;

3. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

【参考范文】

Good morning, everyone!

I am Li Hua from Xingguang Middle School. The topic of my speech is "Let's Ride Bicycles".

Cars bring great convenience to our life.
However, they have also caused some problems

such as air pollution and traffic jams.

How can we solve these problems then? As far as I'm concerned, riding bicycles is a good solution. For one thing, bicycles don't need any petrol and they are energy-saving. For another, bicycles are environmentally friendly because they won't give off waste gases. And riding bicycles is also good for our health.

Therefore, let's take the responsibility to build up a low-carbon city by riding bicycles. Come on and join us! Thank you!

第二节 读后续写

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Yoghurt

It was a rough week. The price of oil skyrocketed as the temperature dropped sharply in Maine. We were looking at a high of eight degrees that week, and I had missed three days of work so my paycheck was going to be lower than normal. I was stressed, to say the least. I shopped strategically, looking for every possible way to save money so I could buy groceries and keep the house warm.

My eight-year-old son didn't understand when I told him we were struggling that week. He wanted a special kind of yoghurt, but I didn't have the extra three dollars to buy it for him. It was the kind of yoghurt with a cartoon kid riding a skateboard on the front of the box, and a mere two spoonfuls in each cup. It was the kind of product that wasted a parent's money and made me hate advertising. I felt guilty as a parent when those big eyes looked at me with confusion, as if to say, "It's just yoghurt. What's the big deal?" So I found a way. I put

something back as single mothers often do. He got his yoghurt.

On the way driving back from the grocery store, I noticed a homeless man holding a sign by the side of the road. My heart hurt, and I tried not to look at him. I watched people stay away from him on the street and walk by without even meeting his eyes. My son didn't seem to care much, either. I looked at the man closely then—bare hands grasping a piece of cardboard, snot (鼻涕) frozen to his face, a worn-out jacket. And there I was struggling because I had to buy oil and groceries. But I decided to help him. I pulled over to the man and handed him a five-dollar bill.

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

【参考范文】

Seeing this, my son became confused and surprised. "Mum, why are you so generous to this stranger while so mean to me when I asked for a yoghurt?" I explained that if we were blind to the poor man's situation he would be freezing. He didn't have a home or food to eat after all. We could spare five dollars even if we were financially stressed. Finally my son nodded and fixed his eyes on his yoghurt.

On that day, my son performed an act that most adults wouldn't have done. He took his yoghurt and handed it to the man outside his window. Even if it was a matter of a few spoonfuls of yoghurt, it was all he had, and he gave it to someone who needed it more than he wanted it. He showed me that I am doing well as a mother. There are always blessings to count if we open our eyes, and we always have the opportunity to be a blessing to someone else.

★★★
迁 · 移 · 应 · 用

Part 1 应用文写作

——演讲稿

○写作指导

演讲稿属于应用文的一种。写作时要首先点明演讲的主题和目的,引起听众的注意;然后通过事例、细节描述等展开对主题的介绍;结尾时要对主题进行概括、强调。

本单元的写作要求是写一篇人物介绍类的演讲稿,所以,文章除要符合一般演讲稿的特点和要求外,还要指明人物、时间、地点、事件及结果等要素。写作时可主要从以下三个方面入手:

1. 介绍人物的身份、成就及其产生的影响;
2. 描述该人物与众不同的方面;
3. 阐述自己的感受:从人物事迹中学到的品质以及对该人物的评价。

○典题示例

假若你是李华,将参加主题为“My Favourite Hero”的演讲比赛。请你写一篇英文演讲稿,内容包括:

| | |
|----|---|
| 人物 | 郑和 |
| 朝代 | 明朝 |
| 事迹 | 1. 1371 年出生,著名的航海家 2. 1405 至 1433 年先后七次下西洋,进行物品贸易,如金、银、丝绸等 3. 促进了文化和技术的交流 |
| 评价 | |

- 注意:1. 词数 80 左右;
2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

Step 1: 审题谋篇

| | |
|----|----------------------------|
| 文体 | 应用文 |
| 时态 | 一般现在时和一般过去时 |
| 人称 | 第三人称 |
| 要点 | 1. 郑和的事迹与贡献 2. 人们对郑和的评价 |

Step 2: 要点补全

- ① I would like to say (我想说) Zheng He is my favourite hero in history.
- ② He was born in (出生于) about 1371, and became a famous voyager in the Ming Dynasty.
- ③ His voyages are a huge achievement (一项巨大的成就).
- ④ People still remember him as (记得他作为) a pioneer in promoting cultural exchange between different countries around the world.

Step 3: 句式升级

- ① 用分词作状语改写 Step 2 中的句②
Born in about 1371, he became a famous voyager in the Ming Dynasty.
- ② 用 such... that... 合并 Step 2 中的句③和句④
His voyages are such a huge achievement that people still remember him as a pioneer in promoting cultural exchange between different countries around the world.

Step 4: 连句成篇

Hello, everyone. I would like to say Zheng He is my favourite hero in history. Born in about 1371, he became a famous voyager in the Ming Dynasty. From 1405 to 1433, Zheng He went on seven trips to trade goods, such as gold, silver and silk. What's

more, the voyages also encouraged the exchange of cultures and technologies and contributed to the development of those countries and regions. Zheng He is really an international hero and his voyages are such a huge achievement that people still remember him as a pioneer in promoting cultural exchange between different countries around the world.

Thank you!

○学以致用

假如你是李华, 请你写一篇 80 词左右的英文演讲稿, 向来你校参观访问的英国学生代表介绍获得诺贝尔生理学或医学奖的中国科学家——屠呦呦。

参考词汇: 青蒿素 *qinghaosu*

【参考范文】

It's an honour for me to introduce the Chinese woman of great achievement, Tu Youyou, to all of you.

Tu Youyou, a famous scientist, was admitted to Beijing Medical College in 1951 and majored in medicine. After graduation, she received two and a half years of training in traditional Chinese medicine and worked in China Academy of Chinese Medical Sciences. She succeeded in discovering and developing *qinghaosu* from a traditional Chinese medicine, curing the malaria patients around the world, and thus won many awards. She won the Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine on October 5, 2015, becoming the first Chinese to win the Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine.

Part 2 读后续写

阅读下面的文章, 完成任务。

As I stood in line waiting to cash out at a “pack your own” kind of store, where customers pack their items by themselves, I stared at the customer in front of me reading the magazines. She was young, but she already had a tired look, with her head bent forwards—as if life had beaten her too many times.

Her face looked pale from extreme tiredness. Her winter coat was thin and unbuttoned. The well-worn scarf around her throat probably did little to protect her from the cold weather. Her hands, turning a few pages, were rough and red. When I looked down at her boots, I could see a small piece of a clear plastic bag partially visible through a hole in her left boot.

The items in her cart (手推车) included the cheapest cuts of meat and some things like rice and potatoes. There were also lots of noodles, Day-old bread, inexpensive soap, and tissues on sale—well, almost. In a far corner sat a little toy and a pretty dress that was 50 percent off.

She continued to look at the magazines as we waited, and more people lined up behind us. She finally took one out and turned it over several times, trying to find a price before finally turning to me.

“I’m sorry to bother you,” she began in a shy and nervous tone. “But can you tell me how much this is? I forgot my glasses at home.”

“Of course,” I said with a smile.

When I finally found the small print and told her, she shook her head and put it back.

“They’ve become so expensive, haven’t they?” I said sympathetically.

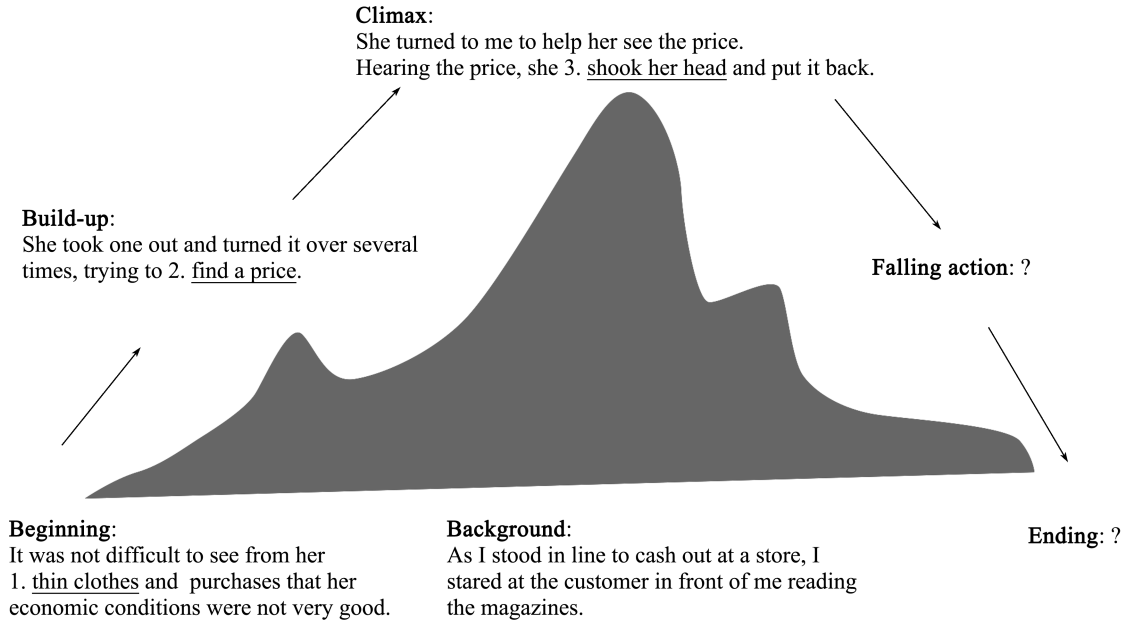
“Next!” the cashier called in a gentle voice before she could answer, and she moved forwards to begin her transaction (交易).

任务一: 阅读文章, 回答问题。

What does the article mainly talk about?

The author was waiting in line at a store to check out when a female customer in front of the author caught the author’s attention. She asked the author to help her to see the price of the goods. Hearing the price, she shook her head, and put it back in place.

任务二：梳理故事情节，完成故事山(Story Mountain)。



任务三：回答下面的问题，并根据段落开头的提示语，构思和完善故事发展情节。

| | |
|---|--|
| <p>Paragraph 1:</p> <p>When the woman was told the cost, her face paled. _____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> | <p>1. Why did the woman's face pale? <u>She was surely short of money.</u></p> <p>2. How did she solve the problem? <u>She removed the items in her cart, even some much-needed goods.</u></p> <p>3. What was the woman's following behaviour? <u>She cut back on her groceries, paid and moved down to pack them.</u></p> |
| <p>Paragraph 2:</p> <p>I approached the cashier and whispered, "Include her removed items in my bill, please!"</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> | <p>1. What did the cashier do? <u>She nodded knowingly, winking at me and finishing the transaction.</u></p> <p>2. How did I slide the extra things into her old cart? <u>The cashier came up with an idea that let the woman help her pick up the runaway fruit. Then I quickly finished the plan.</u></p> <p>3. What did I feel by doing so? <u>I was very happy and proud of my behaviour. I thought of "The rose is in her hand, the flavour in mine".</u></p> |

任务四：根据材料内容和任务三中构思的故事发展情节续写两段，使之构成一篇完整的短文。

注意：续写词数应为 150 左右。

【参考范文】

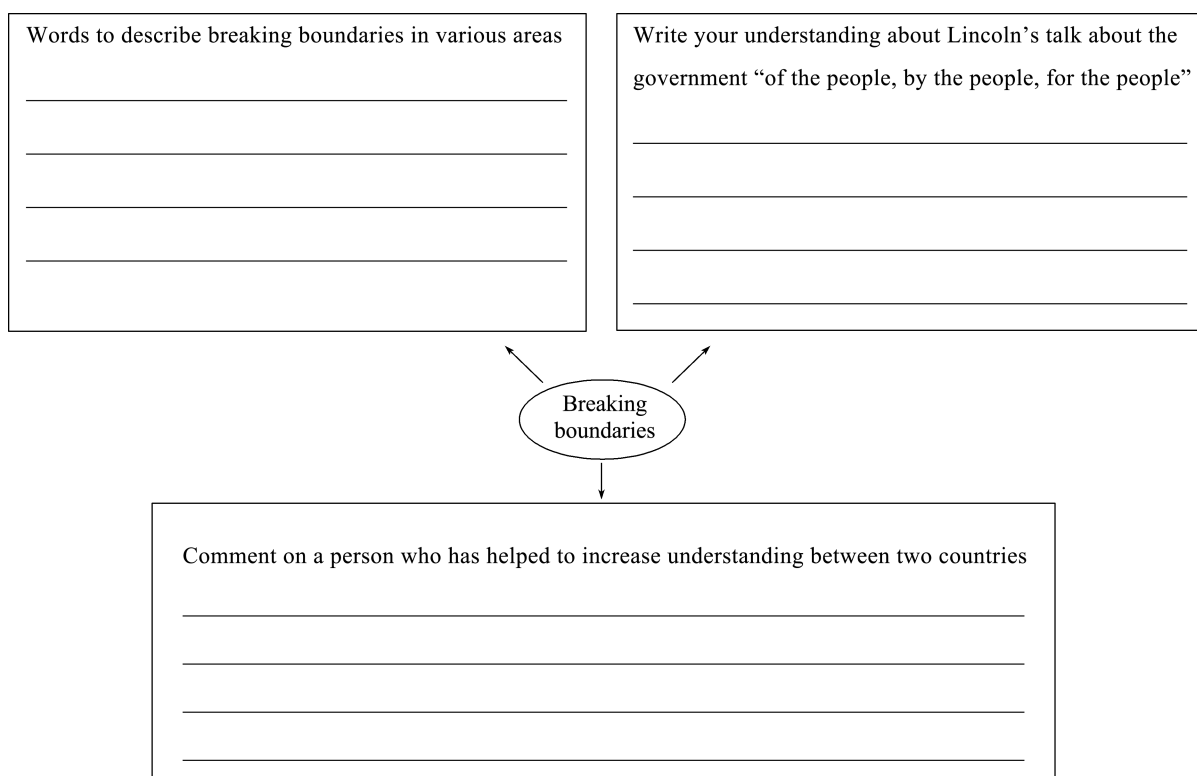
When the woman was told the cost, her face paled. She opened a worn out change purse, counting small bills and change. With a deep breath, she scanned her groceries to see what she could do without. One by one, she removed things, but she still came up short. She continued to get rid of much-needed goods while the cashier patiently took away things with a pleased smile, setting them aside. The woman finally cut back on her groceries, paid, and moved down to pack them.

I approached the cashier and whispered, "Include her removed items in my bill, please!" She nodded knowingly, winking at me and finishing the transaction. I moved next, wondering how to slide the extra things into her old cart. The cashier solved the problem by "accidentally" dropping several oranges which flew past the lady. "I'll get those," the woman offered kindly to pick up the runaway fruit. I quickly finished our plan. Then, my thoughts wandered to the lady who was enjoying a hearty delicious dish with her little girl. I was very happy and proud of my behaviour. I thought of "The rose is in her hand, the flavour in mine".

重 · 构 · 拓 · 展

一、单元重构

请根据本单元所学内容，完成思维导图。



答案：略

二、拓展阅读

阅读下面的文章，完成后面的题目。

Chinese Scientist Wins 2015 Nobel Prize

Tu Youyou has become the first female scientist of the People's Republic of China to receive a Nobel Prize, awarded for her contribution to the fight against malaria, one of the deadliest diseases in human history. Thanks to her discovery of *qinghaosu*, malaria patients all over the world now have had a greatly increased chance of survival.

Born in 1930, in Ningbo, Zhejiang Province, Tu studied medicine at university in Beijing between 1951 and 1955. After graduation, she worked at the China Academy of Chinese Medical Sciences. She completed further training courses in traditional Chinese medicine, acquiring a broad knowledge of both traditional Chinese medicine and Western medicine.

Tu's education was soon to prove very useful. In the 1960s, many people were dying of malaria, and in 1969 Tu became head of a team that intended to find a cure for the disease. She collected over 2,000 traditional Chinese medical recipes for malaria treatment and made hundreds of extracts from different herbs. When they failed to produce any promising results, Tu referred to the ancient books of traditional Chinese medicine again. Inspired by an over 1,600-year-old text about preparing *qinghao* extract with cold water, Tu

redesigned the experiments and tried extracting the herb at a low temperature in order not to damage its effective part. On 4 October 1971, after 190 failures, she succeeded in making *qinghao* extract that could treat malaria in mice.

However, it was hard to produce enough *qinghao* extract for large trials because research resources were limited. Tu and her team managed to find solutions to the problem. When there was no research equipment, they had to extract herbs using household water containers. They worked day and night and their health began to suffer because of the poor conditions, but they never gave up.

Even with large amounts of *qinghao* extract produced, however, they still faced another problem. The trials on patients were likely to be postponed because they did not have sufficient safety data. To speed up the process and ensure its safety, Tu and her team volunteered to test *qinghao* extract on themselves first.

The efforts of Tu and her team finally paid off. In November 1972, through trial and error, they successfully discovered *qinghaosu*—the most effective part of the *qinghao* extract. As a key part of many malaria medicines, *qinghaosu* has since benefited about 200 million malaria patients. More than 40 years after its discovery, Tu was eventually awarded a Nobel Prize for her work. In her Nobel Lecture, she encouraged scientists to further explore the treasure house of traditional Chinese medicine and raise it to a higher level. Perhaps the next generation of scientists, drawing on the wisdom of traditional Chinese medicine, will indeed discover more medicines beneficial to global health care.

1. In the 1960s, what was Tu Youyou's role in the fight against malaria?

- A. She was just a normal researcher.
- B. She was in charge of patient care.
- C. She provided financial support.
- D. She became head of a research team.

2. What inspired Tu Youyou to redesign the experiments?

- A. Western medical theories.
- B. A modern research paper.
- C. An ancient Chinese medicine book.
- D. Her own previous experience.

3. Why was it difficult to produce enough *qinghao* extract for large trials?

- A. Because the herb was rare.
- B. Because research resources were limited.
- C. Because the extraction method was too complex.
- D. Because there was no demand for it.

4. What did Tu Youyou encourage scientists to do in her Nobel Lecture?

- A. To focus on Western medicine only.
- B. To abandon traditional Chinese medicine.
- C. To further explore traditional Chinese medicine.
- D. To stop malaria research.

答案:1~4 DCBC

单元测试卷(四)

(考查范围:Unit 4 时间:100 分钟 分值:120 分)

I. 阅读理解(共 15 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 37.5 分)

A

Thanks to exchange programmes, an increasing number of young students are following educational courses in foreign countries. The Erasmus Programme, which started in 1987, is a European Union student exchange programme. It provides opportunities for young people from Europe to study in a foreign country. An intercontinental version of the programme, known as Erasmus Mundus, has existed since 2004, providing non-Europeans the opportunity to study in Europe.

Student's name: Paul Dupont

Erasmus trip: Lyon—Aberdeen

Cool! What an amazing time that was! We had joy, we had fun, and we had seasons in the sun! To me, Erasmus means discovering a completely new lifestyle. You live together with new friends in a different country. Sorry, the heating system in our apartment was horrible and the food was strange, but hey... anyhow. It's amazing!

Student's name: Beatrice Giletti

Erasmus trip: Verona—Dublin

I went to Dublin, Ireland. It was a great discovery, which opened up the world to me and I made many friends from different countries and cultures. The experience changed my life. I felt richer, smarter and happier after my time on Erasmus. My English became almost fluent and I knew so much about the world and about the people who live in it... Internationality has become part of my life, and I could not imagine living or working in a non-multicultural or non-multinational environment.

Student's name: Wilmie Boot

Erasmus trip: Rotterdam—Naples

When I first arrived, the first of the city of Naples struck me and I loved it from the first second! The language is a beautiful mixture of Italian, Greek, Latin, Spanish and the influences of the villages surrounding Naples. I have wonderful memories of my year in the Università Federico II in Naples and the time spent in our dormitory, where I was the only foreigner among the Italian students. If I were to do it all over again, I wouldn't change a thing!

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章介绍了伊拉斯谟交换生项目和几名交换生的相关信息。

1. Which of the following can be the best title of the text?

- A. Student Exchange Programmes
B. Worldwide Programmes
C. Educational Programmes
D. Continental Programmes

A 标题归纳题。根据第一段中的“The Erasmus Programme, which started in 1987, is a European Union student exchange programme.”可知,本文介绍了始于1987年的伊拉斯谟交换生项目。故选A。

2. What was Paul Dupont not satisfied with according to the passage?

- A. Seasons in the sun.
B. A completely new lifestyle.
C. Living with new friends.
D. The apartment heating system.

D 细节理解题。根据第一名交换生的信息介绍中的“Sorry, the heating system in our apartment was horrible...”可知,Paul Dupont 认为公寓的供热系统很糟糕。故选 D。

- 3. What do you know from the passage?**

- A. Erasmus Mundus has lasted for nearly 10 years up to now.

- B. Beatrice Giletti went to Dublin from Rotterdam.
- C. Naples was so beautiful that Wilmie Boot loved it at first sight.
- D. Paul Dupont studies together mostly with Italians.

C 细节理解题。根据第三名交换生的信息介绍中的“*When I first arrived, the first of the city of Naples struck me and I loved it from the first second!*”可知, Wilmie Boot 第一次来那不勒斯就爱上了它。故选 C。

B

All day long, at an MSF distribution centre, humanitarian (人道主义的) supplies make their way to some of the most dangerous spots on the planet. Specially marked boxes are being packed with medicines and supplies, which are on their way to Ebola-affected Liberia, Guinea and Sierra Leone.

Kathy Dedieu became a sanitation (卫生设备) and water engineer for MSF a decade ago. She has just returned from Liberia, where MSF is working to help reopen the hospitals. Her job is to make sure that clean parts of the hospitals are kept separate from areas that are polluted. She says the situation there is a complete disaster. “Even during the war, I haven’t seen a health system close so fast. The hospitals are empty because the health staff just aren’t there,” she says. Dedieu was in Liberia during that country’s civil war in 2003.

MSF was founded in 1971 by a group of doctors and journalists. “I remember being criticised in the 1980s as a ‘medical cowboy’,” says Rony Brauman, who headed MSF from 1982 to 1994. “We were blamed for riding in, distributing our pills and creating unreasonable expectations.” But Brauman says that’s the nature of health care. “We raise expectations; we create new diseases by treating old diseases,” Brauman says. “That’s how it works in general. It was a kind of fight. MSF won that fight.”

MSF doctor Cameron Bopp says he’s worked with other humanitarian organisations but always missed the level of devotion and motivation he’s found at MSF. “The main thing that’s different about MSF from the point of view of someone like me who goes out and works in the field is that when there’s an emergency, other organisations say, ‘Whoa, this is an emergency. We’re gonna be there as soon as we get funding.’ And MSF has the funding,” he says. “We start right away.” Ninety percent of MSF’s funding comes from a devoted base of five million donors. That gives it the independence to speak out and do what’s really needed.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了“无国界医生”这一非营利组织。

4. What is the first paragraph mainly about?

- A. Showing the places affected by Ebola.
- B. Exploring a distribution centre of MSF.
- C. Introducing one of the functions of MSF.
- D. Encouraging donations to Ebola-affected areas.

C 段落大意题。通读第一段的内容可知, 第一段主要呈现的是无国界医生组织的一个分发中心为感染埃博拉病毒的国家配发物资的场景, 所以第一段的主要内容是介绍该组织的一项功能。故选 C。

5. What can we learn about Kathy Dedieu?

- A. She is working in Liberia.
- B. She was once a soldier in the civil war.
- C. She founded MSF with many other doctors.
- D. She helps with pollution prevention in hospitals.

D 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“*Her job is to make sure that clean parts of the hospitals are kept separate from areas that are polluted.*”可知, Kathy Dedieu 的工作是确保医院的清洁区和污染区是分开的, 即预防医院被污染。故选 D。

6. What was people’s attitude to MSF in the early years?

- A. Optimistic.
- B. Uncaring.
- C. Disapproving.
- D. Curious.

C 观点态度题。根据第三段第二、三句可知, 无国界医生组织成立之初是不被人们所接受的。故选 C。

7. How is MSF different from other organisations according to Cameron?

- A. It has a lot of faithful donors.

- B. It involves many journalists.
- C. It is operated by doctors themselves.
- D. It obtains funding from the government.

A 推理判断题。根据最后一段的内容可知,无国界医生组织不同于其他人道主义组织的主要特点之一在于它有许多可靠的捐赠者。故选 A。

C

Though it is not good for us to expose ourselves to sunlight for too long, allowing ourselves appropriate amounts of exposure to sunlight gives us many benefits and affects us in a number of ways.

Without the sun, life would not have developed. It gives us energy and heats our world. The sun gives us light and thus in turn we are able to see the beautiful colours in our world. It makes us feel good when we feel the warmth of its rays on our shoulders. We store the energy from the sun to help build and heat our houses.

Without sunlight we would not be able to survive. Sunlight gives balance. All living things live in a food chain and at the beginning of the food chain comes the plant which absorbs sunlight and transforms light energy into chemical energy, which will then be absorbed by another life to be turned into a new kind of energy and so on.

One of the benefits that we can get from sunlight is that we can receive vitamin D from sunlight. It helps us to keep a healthy body, control the amount of minerals in the body, which is needed to help keep our bones and teeth in good condition and helps to keep a well-balanced mind.

Different places on the earth receive varying degrees of sunlight, which will decide the region's climate. For example, the farther away it is from the equator (赤道), the sharper the angle (角度) of the sun's rays that reach it, which means that sunlight coverage will be more spread out, and receive less heat than lower latitude areas nearer the equator.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了太阳对人类生活的积极影响。

8. Why does sunlight give balance?

- A. It helps to pass energy.
- B. It helps to absorb energy.
- C. It helps to form new lives.
- D. It helps to protect new lives.

A 推理判断题。根据第三段中的“Sunlight gives balance. All living things live in a food chain and at the beginning of the food chain comes the plant which absorbs sunlight and transforms light energy into chemical energy, which will then be absorbed by another life to be turned into a new kind of energy and so on.”可知,阳光使万物保持平衡是因为它有助于传递能量。故选 A。

9. How can sunlight assist people?

- A. By increasing the amount of minerals.
- B. By obtaining a healthy nerve system.
- C. By keeping the bones and teeth healthy.
- D. By keeping a delighted mind.

C 细节理解题。根据第四段中的“It helps us to keep a healthy body, control the amount of minerals in the body, which is needed to help keep our bones and teeth in good condition and helps to keep a well-balanced mind.”可知,阳光可以帮助人们保持骨骼和牙齿的健康。故选 C。

10. What's the main idea of the last paragraph?

- A. Which place is the hottest.
- B. How sunlight affects the climate.
- C. How to get more sunlight.
- D. How much sunlight a place needs.

B 段落大意题。根据最后一段的内容可知,地球上不同的地方接受不同程度的阳光,这也决定该地区的气候。因此,最后一段主要介绍的是阳光如何影响气候。故选 B。

11. What would be the best title for the text?

- A. Avoid Being Exposed to Sunlight Too Long
- B. Follow the Researchers' Words
- C. Good Effects of Sunlight on Our Lives
- D. Making Full Use of Sunlight

C 标题归纳题。通读全文尤其是第一段的内容可知,文章主要介绍了太阳对人类生活的积极影响。所以短文的最佳标题为“阳光对我们生活的积极影响”。故选 C。

D

New archaeological discoveries suggest that trade between Europe and Asia along the Silk Road probably began in some form many centuries earlier than once thought. The findings, coupled with a widening range of scientific and historical research, could add a fascinating new page to the epic of the Silk Road.

The latest and most surprising discovery is pieces of silk found in the hair of an Egyptian mummy (木乃伊) from about 1000 BC, long before regular traffic on the Silk Road and at least one thousand years before silk was previously thought to be used in Egypt. Other research may extend human activity along this route back even further, perhaps a million years to the migration of human ancestors into eastern Asia.

The official origin of East-West commerce along the road is usually placed in the late 2nd century BC when an agent of the Chinese Emperor Wudi returned from a dangerous secret mission across the western desert into the remote high country of Central Asia. The agent, Zhang Qian, travelled as far as Afghanistan and brought back knowledge of even more distant lands such as Persia, Syria and perhaps Rome. Historians have called this one of the most important journeys in ancient times. His journey opened the way for what have been thought to be the first indirect contacts between the ancient world's two superpowers, China and Rome. Chinese silk, first traded to Central Asian tribes for war horses and to the Parthians of old Persia in exchange for acrobats and ostrich eggs, was soon finding its way through a network of merchants to the luxury markets of Rome.

But the new discoveries show that Chinese silk was apparently present in the West long before the Han emperor started organised trade over the Silk Road. The research could change thinking about the early history of world trade and provide insights into the mystery of just how and when Europe and the Mediterranean lands first became aware of the glorious culture at the other end of Eurasia.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了新的考古发现——欧洲和亚洲之间沿着丝绸之路的贸易可能以某种形式开始,比人们曾经认为的要早几个世纪。

12. What does the underlined word “coupled” in Paragraph 1 probably mean?

- A. Produced.
- B. Doubled.
- C. Combined.
- D. Contributed.

C 词义猜测题。根据第一段中的“The findings, coupled with a widening range of scientific and historical research, could add a fascinating new page to the epic of the Silk Road.”可知,这些发现,结合广泛的科学和历史研究可以为丝绸之路的历史新纪元增加迷人的一页,画线词与 combined 同义。故选 C。

13. What does the silk thread found in the hair of an Egyptian mummy suggest?

- A. Trade along the Silk Road began earlier than once thought.
- B. Historical research often achieves fascinating results.
- C. Egyptians had probably travelled to China to buy silk.
- D. The new light can now be thrown on ancient trading practices.

A 推理判断题。根据第一段中的“New archaeological discoveries suggest that trade between Europe and Asia along the Silk Road probably began in some form many centuries earlier than once thought.”及第二段中的“The latest and most surprising discovery is pieces of silk found in the hair of an Egyptian mummy (木乃伊) from about 1000 BC, long before regular traffic on the Silk Road and at least one thousand years before silk was previously thought to be used in Egypt.”可推知,在一具埃及木乃伊的头发上发现的丝线表明,丝绸之路的贸易比人们曾经认为的开始得更早。故选 A。

14. What did most historians believe until recently?

- A. They believed that trade along the Silk Road extended human migration into eastern Asia.
- B. They believed that trade along the Silk Road primarily benefited the Egyptians.
- C. They believed that trade along the Silk Road began a million years ago.
- D. They believed that trade along the Silk Road originated in the 2nd century BC.

D 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“The official origin of East-West commerce along the road is usually placed in the late 2nd century BC when an agent of the Chinese Emperor Wudi returned from a dangerous secret mission across the western desert into the remote high country of Central Asia.”可知,沿着这条路进行的东西方贸易的官方起源通常是在公元前2世纪晚期。由此可知,直到最近,大多数历史学家都认为,丝绸之路的贸易始于公元前2世纪。故选D。

15. Why have historians always considered Zhang Qian's mission important?

- A. Because he discovered the Silk Road.
- B. Because he helped establish East-West trade.
- C. Because he brought back knowledge of Rome to the emperor.
- D. Because he travelled as far as Afghanistan.

B 推理判断题。根据第三段中的“His journey opened the way for what have been thought to be the first indirect contacts between the ancient world's two superpowers, China and Rome.”可知,历史学家一直认为张骞的使命很重要是因为张骞出使西域帮助建立了东西方的贸易往来。故选B。

II. 七选五(共5小题;每小题2.5分,满分12.5分)

I still remember my first time going to the Chinese company's canteen. When I stepped into the elevator, each one was full of people. 16 However, there was no sign of fire and people were laughing and talking. I followed the flow of the crowd to the doors of the canteen. It occurred to me that in China everyone takes lunch at the same time. 17 The cafeteria followed this schedule, only being open a few hours per day.

When I stood in the doorway, I realised I had to act fast or I would be left behind. 18 Unlike my school lunchroom, here everyone lined up and took a tray, and instead of silverware, there were chopsticks and soup spoons.

As I was pushed along the line, I saw dishes I didn't recognise and a few people picked up dishes left and right. 19 I ended up going with a pork and cucumber dish and a tofu salad.

I have been at my company for over a year and a half. 20 I have learned what dishes I like, mostly by trial and error, and a lot of the workers know me and say hello.

I am still getting used to eating lunch at “lunchtime”, but I think the schedule definitely helps keep me on track during the day. I wish there was something like this at offices in my hometown.

- A. I thought I had missed a fire drill.
- B. There was no emergency; it was just lunchtime.
- C. I noticed things at lunchtime were a bit different.
- D. I felt that I needed to make some quick decisions.
- E. The canteen reminded me of my school lunchroom.
- F. And now I am glad to say I am more confident in the canteen.
- G. I was not very familiar with the local food or restaurants in China.

答案:16~20 ABEDF

III. 完形填空(共15小题;每小题1分,满分15分)

One person can change the world starting with a single blade of grass! When Brian Schwartz decided he wanted to make a 21 in people's lives, he set out by mowing lawns (修剪草坪) in New Jersey for free. Today, Schwartz runs the nonprofit organisation I Want to Mow Your Lawn, and is 22 people in 27 states across the US.

When Schwartz lost his job at a digital advertising agency, he made up his mind to stay active and busy.

He wanted to help those having a 23 time, and because of his warm affection for grandparents, he first chose to help 24 citizens. As lawn care can be 25 for the old, Schwartz's idea was 26.

Using his own lawnmower and minivan, Schwartz started with one 27 in the summer of 2020. This soon expanded to two, and then to ten. Within a month, Schwartz opened his nonprofit organisation and also started offering 28 to veterans, the disabled and single working mums.

One of his former co-workers posted what he did on the Internet. Schwartz explains on the website, "It just feels 29 to help out, to do something 30 that people need done and can't quite do themselves, something straightforward and clean-cut as newly mowed grass." The Internet helped to increase 31 for the nonprofit, and many people offered to help. In fact, the organisation recently attracted 50 more 32 in just one week, including professional landscapers!

This grassroots "mowment" has brought people together, 33 many others to be involved, and is continuing to 34. Schwartz, who is now fully employed again, is still 35 to do good and has plans to offer a snow plow service in the winter.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了 Brian Schwartz 和他的非营利组织“我想为你修草坪”为一些生活艰难的人提供帮助的故事。

21. A. difference B. profit C. list D. choice

A 根据上文的“One person can change the world starting with a single blade of grass! When Brian Schwartz decided he wanted to make a 21 in people's lives”可推知, Brian Schwartz 想要改变世界, 想要给人们的生活带来变化。make a difference in people's lives 意为“改变人们的生活”。故选 A。

22. A. teaching B. watching C. examining D. helping

D 根据上文的“nonprofit organisation”可知, 这一非营利组织正在“帮助”人们。故选 D。

23. A. long B. happy C. hard D. quiet

C 根据上文的“help those”可知, 此处用 hard 表示帮助那些生活“艰难的”人。故选 C。

24. A. active B. ordinary C. senior D. responsible

C 根据上文的“because of his warm affection for grandparents”可知, 此处用 senior 表示“年长的”人。故选 C。

25. A. boring B. tiring C. interesting D. exciting

B 根据下文的“for the old”可知, 对于老年人来说护理草坪应该是“累人的”, 所以此处用 tiring 表示“累人的”。故选 B。

26. A. welcomed B. rejected C. abandoned D. borrowed

A 根据上文可知, Brian Schwartz 帮助生活艰难的老年人, 结合常识可知, 他的这一想法应该是“受欢迎的”。故选 A。

27. A. park B. room C. shop D. office

D 根据下文的“This soon expanded to two, and then to ten. Within a month, Schwartz opened his nonprofit organisation”可推知, Brian Schwartz 的非营利组织是从一间办公室开始的, 后来到两间, 再到十间。故选 D。

28. A. courses B. discounts C. suggestions D. services

D 根据上文的“offering”和下文的“veterans, the disabled and single working mums”可知, 此处用 services 表示为他们提供“服务”。故选 D。

29. A. free B. good C. strange D. safe

B 根据下文的“help out”可知, 此处用 good 表示帮助别人感觉“很好”。故选 B。

30. A. true B. polite C. practical D. reasonable

C 根据下文的“people need done”可知, 此处用 practical 表示帮助人们做一些需要的“实用的”事情。故选 C。

31. A. levels B. prices C. production D. awareness

D 根据下文的“many people offered to help”可知, 此处用 awareness 表示提高了人们非营利的“意识”。故选 D。

32. A. volunteers B. friends C. engineers D. colleagues

A 根据上文的“and many people offered to help”和“the organisation”可知,这个组织吸引了 50 多名“志愿者”。故选 A。

33. A. hired B. inspired C. ordered D. elected

B 根据下文的“many others to be involved”可知,此处用 inspired 表示“激发”了人们参与其中。故选 B。

34. A. grow B. return C. train D. gather

A 根据上文的“continuing to”可知,此处用 grow 表示持续“发展”。故选 A。

35. A. paid B. required C. qualified D. motivated

D 根据下文的“plans to offer a snow plow service in the winter”可知,他仍然有动力做好事,所以此处用 is motivated to 表示“被激励着去做……”。故选 D。

IV. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分 15 分)

Yuan Longping was born in 1930. Considering that farmers often had poor harvests and sometimes even had a serious shortage of food to eat, he **36. chose** (choose) to study agriculture and graduated from Southwest Agriculture College in 1953. Since then, Yuan has devoted his life to **37. finding** (find) ways to boost rice yields. The common **38. assumption** (assume) then was that it was impossible to develop a hybrid of self-pollinating plants. Through intense effort, he overcame enormous technical **39. difficulties** (difficulty) to develop the first hybrid rice **40. that** could be used for farming in 1974. This hybrid can attain a higher yield than **41. conventional** (convention) crops.

Today, a great deal of domestic rice consumption in China is comprised of crops **42. generated** (generate) from Yuan's hybrid strains. Yuan's innovation helps feed not just China, **43. but** many other countries that depend on rice as well.

What impresses people most is his ongoing ability **44. to fulfil** (fulfil) his dreams. His vision for “seawater rice” has also become **45. a** reality.

V. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

第一节 应用文写作(满分 15 分)

假设你是晨光中学的李华。下周你校将与英国友好学校举行一场在线会议,探讨如何利用网络学习英语。请你根据以下提示用英语撰写一篇发言稿:

1. 介绍你是如何利用网络学习英语的;
2. 简单谈谈你对利用网络学习英语的看法;
3. 请友好学校的学生分享他们的经验。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯;

3. 开头已给出,不计入总词数。

【参考范文】

Good morning, dear friends. My name is Li Hua. I'd like to take this opportunity to talk about how I learn English on the Internet. Since I entered senior high school, I have formed the habit of visiting the website of *Studio Classroom* at weekends, where I can read some interesting English articles and download some listening materials, which broadens my horizons and helps me to know more about Western culture.

Personally, online learning benefits me a lot because so many learning materials are available. It allows me to learn English more conveniently and more efficiently.

Now I would like to hear some of you share your opinions about online learning.

Thank you.

第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Lungs nearly bursting, I struggled to lift my head out of the water. Inch by inch, my tired body reached for the end of the pool.

The extent of my swimming career was purely recreational, while the competitive swimmers nearby thought nothing of the seemingly simple task of a 500-metre swim test. Pushing myself to finish what I had started, I could only think: why not take the easy way out?

Earlier that week, I had turned in my first job application at a local pool. Overqualified, I was hired on the spot. However, the tasks were boring: helping confused visitors and measuring the height of children before they went down the slide, those sorts of things. I was capable of more.

So a swim test was required, establishing the mere fact that I was not completely helpless in a pool. Midway through, the manager administering the test remarked, “This looks really easy for you. Why aren’t you applying to become a guard?”

“The thought hasn’t crossed my mind.” “Well, lifeguarding demands more responsibility, strength and respect. Thus the position pays \$2 more per hour. Your swimming skills are strong enough. All you need to do is complete a certification class.”

Inside I was unsure of myself, but his words inspired me—You never know what you are capable of until you force yourself to do it.

Soon I passed the swim test. All left was to practise and learn first aid, CPR (心肺复苏), and procedures for different land- and water-based emergencies.

Work started soon. A well-intentioned yet anxious feeling in me soon passed. Days, weeks and months went by without incident; emergencies were rare. The skills and training I had so carefully studied and acquired seemed unnecessary.

Today appeared to be another uneventful day. However, shortly after the other guards signalled to the children to exit the pool, I noticed one boy was still in the middle while the others had climbed up.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

【参考范文】

“Something must have gone wrong with him,” I thought to myself. Sure enough, with a closer look, I found the boy waving his hands desperately. I quickly dived into the water, swimming towards the boy at full speed. By the time I reached him, he had sunk to the bottom of the pool, his head hanging down, which filled my heart with fright and concern. I picked the boy up and headed to the poolside, keeping his head above the water.

Having the boy on the floor, I put my ear to his mouth and my fingers at his neck. I could tell that he had no heartbeat and wasn’t breathing. Every second counted! Without hesitation, I did first aid, giving him mouth-to-mouth breathing and doing CPR as trained. Other guards watching anxiously, I carried on, sweating. Suddenly, a stream of water burst out of his mouth and the boy coughed intensely. Seeing the boy regain consciousness, those around broke into cheers. Exhausted, I sighed with relief. I thought had I accepted that easy position, I would have been nothing but a bystander. I’m happy I didn’t take the easy way out.

单元概览

学习导航

The theme of this unit is humans and nature, whose topic is to protect our fragile planet. This unit introduces the process of the ecosystem of Macquarie Island from being severely damaged to gradual recovery, the impact of the pet red-eared sliders on the local ecosystem after being released, the restoration of the ecological environment of Saihanba National Forest Park, the relationship between the ecosystem and the survival of bees, Shennongjia and Fanjing Mountain ecosystems. Good protection guides students to realise that human survival must depend on a good natural ecosystem. Protecting ecology is to protect human beings. Deepen students' understanding of the harmonious coexistence between humans and nature.

学习目标

| 核心 素养 | 具体要求 | | |
|----------|---|----|---|
| 语言 能力 | 语言 知识 | 词汇 | 能恰当运用与生态系统相关的单词和词组对目标内容进行描述。 |
| | | 语法 | 借助 it 作形式宾语理解和表达与生态系统相关的话题。 |
| | | 语篇 | 1. 能看懂与生态系统相关的图片和视频,并识别其特点和变化; 2. 能借助与生态系统相关的英语词汇和句式,读懂该话题下的记叙文、演讲和说明文等类型的语篇。 |
| | | 语用 | 1. 能积极使用与生态系统相关的英语词汇谈论与生态系统相关的话题; 2. 能以演讲的形式讲述人与生态系统和谐相处的范例; 3. 能以调研报告的形式介绍生态问题和应对情况。 |
| | 语言 技能 | 听 | 听懂并谈论有关生态平衡的话题。 |
| | | 说 | 使用所学语言描述某单一生物消失可能给人类带来的灾难性影响。 |
| | | 读 | 基于本单元提供的现象说明、流程图等多模态语篇,综合运用各种语言技能,读懂不同类型的语篇内容。 |
| | | 写 | 1. 能恰当使用 it 作形式宾语描述不同生态系统面临的问题和发生的变化; 2. 能描述人对生态系统造成的影响,学习以演讲的形式讲述人与生态系统和谐相处的范例。 |
| 学习 能力 | 能通过运用各种学习策略,在自主、合作与探究式学习的过程中,结合单元所提供的反思性和评价性问题,不断监控、评价、反思和调整自己的学习内容和进程,提高自己的理解和表达能力,最终促进自身语言能力、文化意识、思维品质和学习能力的综合提升。 | | |

续表

| 核心 素养 | 具体要求 |
|----------|--|
| 文化 意识 | 能使用所学语言描述某单一生物消失可能给人类带来的灾难性影响,深化对单元主题意义的认识,提高保护生态系统的意识,树立人类命运共同体的意识。 |
| 思维 品质 | 能运用单元所学知识描述某地生态系统的现状并思考采取何种保护措施,实现知识和思维能力的拓展和迁移。 |

◦ 必备知识

| | |
|----------|--|
| 必背 单词 | dramatically, habitat, subsequently, appetite, multiply, chaos, conservation, virus, decrease, trap, departure, explode, collapse, substantial, incident, intervention, owe, ecology, dissolve, nutrient, comparison, visual, session, status, criterion, rare, biological, apparently, vast, variation, elsewhere, secure, greeting |
| 重点 表达 | in harmony with, develop an appetite for, soil erosion, out of control, in consequence, a substantial number of, coexist with |
| 重点 知识 | 1. nor 置于句首引起的倒装句 2. as well as 连接并列成分 |
| 单元 语法 | it 作形式宾语 |
| 单元 写作 | 发言稿 |

探 · 究 · 构 · 建

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas— Comprehending

学习任务目标

1. Understand the video, perceive the diversity of the earth's ecosystem and the interdependence of all living things, and think about the impact of human activities on the ecosystem.
2. Understand the pictures, discuss what the next satellite photos of the Aral Sea may look like, and think about the reasons for these changes.
3. Quickly read the article to understand what happened on Macquarie Island.
4. Read the text and find out the author's writing purpose.

自主式预习

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一) 核心词汇

1. habitat *n.* 栖息地
2. appetite *n.* 胃口; 食欲
3. multiply *v.* (使) 大大增加, (使) 倍增
4. conservation *n.* 保护
5. virus *n.* 病毒
6. chaos *n.* 大混乱; 紊乱
7. decrease *v.* (使) 变小, (使) 减少
8. trap *n.* 夹子, 陷阱
9. departure *n.* 离开
10. explode *v.* 突然增加
11. collapse *v.* 倒塌; 塌下
12. owe *v.* 应该做; 对……负有……的义务
13. fail to do 做……失败
14. in harmony with 与……和谐相处
15. develop an appetite for 对……产生兴趣/食欲
16. out of control 失去控制

17. turn out 结果是; 证明是

18. die out 灭绝; 逐渐消失

19. in consequence 因此; 结果

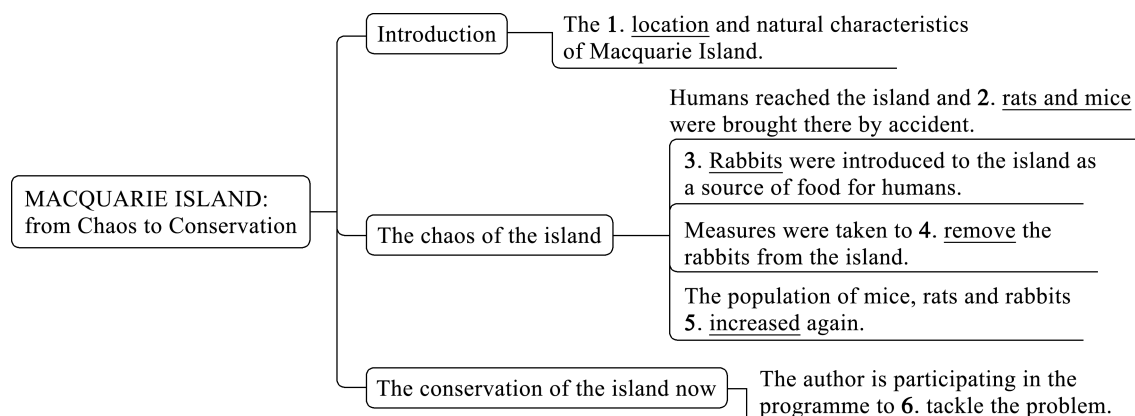
(二) 阅读词汇

1. ecology *n.* 生态
2. halfway *adj.* 中间的, 半途的
3. heritage *n.* 遗产; 传统
4. vegetation *n.* 植物, 草木(总称)
5. erosion *n.* 侵蚀
6. immunity *n.* 免疫力
7. substantial *adj.* 大量的, 多的
8. intervention *n.* 干预, 介入
9. be introduced to 被引入……
10. every last 每一个; 全部
11. a substantial number of 大量的, 多的
12. once and for all 一劳永逸地; 彻底地
13. remove... from... 从……把……清除
14. take over 接收; 接管; 取代

任务型课堂

文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text.



文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text.

- What does the author want to tell us in the first paragraph?
 - Macquarie Island is beautiful.
 - Macquarie Island has a world-class name.
 - There are lots of penguins on Macquarie Island.
 - It is not easy for people to get to Macquarie Island.
- What does the phrase “once and for all” mean in the fifth paragraph?
 - Completely.
 - Easily.
 - Partially.
 - Skilfully.
- Which of the following can be inferred from the text?
 - Rabbits caused the most damage to Macquarie Island among invading species.
 - Cats are the only cause of the extinction of parakeets on Macquarie Island.
 - Any method only controlling the number of one invading species was wrong.
 - The poison released did not affect native plants or animals.

答案: 1~3 AAC

语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them.

- Loose on the island, they did what rabbits do

best—they multiplied rapidly and began eating the native vegetation and digging holes, which caused soil erosion.

[句子分析] 本句是一个主从复合句。其中 what 引导宾语从句; which 引导非限制性定语从句, 修饰整个主句。

[尝试翻译] 由于在岛上放任其生存, 兔子做了自己最擅长的事——飞快地繁殖, 它们开始吃当地植被并挖洞, 造成了土壤侵蚀。

- This incident made it clear that the rat, mouse and rabbit problem needed solving once and for all.

[句子分析] 本句是一个主从复合句。其中 it 作形式宾语, that 引导宾语从句。

[尝试翻译] 这一事件清楚地表明, 大鼠、小鼠和兔子(泛滥)的问题需要彻底解决。

思维品质培养

Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions.

- According to the end of the text, why should humans interfere with Macquarie Island?

Ecological harmony is the fundamental guarantee for the coexistence of humans, nature and animals. Humans hope that the island's ecology would be finally on the road to recovery, restoring the good old days.
- People should be concerned about ecology. Can you give any reasons for the ecological imbalance?

略

Unit 5 课后素养评价(十七)

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

I. 阅读理解

Our world's forests are becoming isolated and broken. In fact, today we have only two remaining continuous forests systems in the world—the Amazon and the Congo. The rest of the world's forests are becoming separated—kind of like islands.

Why should that concern most of us city dwellers? It turns out that forests affect us in ways more than we can see and experience. If you had your breakfast this morning, blew your nose on a tissue, switched on a light or are reading this article, you have one thing to thank for—the world's forests and the products they supply us. Forest products are used by us in our daily lives either directly or indirectly. Think of paper and wood—your school textbook, newspapers your parents read, or the furniture you are sitting on. Even for our medicines and cosmetics we depend on forest products.

But that is only one way of looking at it. In another sense, forests are habitats for diverse plant and animal species; many people around the world depend on forests for their livelihood. Forests give us our rivers, help maintain the water cycle, act as a carbon sink and help prevent soil erosion.

For all that forests provide us, humans are using the resources faster than the forests can regain themselves, so much so that we are losing them fast—too fast for our own good! Forests today make up 30% of the land area of the world. But just in the last 50 years, more than one half of the world forests are gone. It is believed that forest areas, about half the size of Singapore, are being lost every day!

Forests don't disappear in a day. They are gradually eroded (侵蚀) away. The biggest cause is roads and man-made developments, as well as natural events such as wildfires. Did you know that when an area of a forest gets broken-up by artificial barriers, these areas tend to lose about 50% of all their species within a couple of decades?

The areas that are exposed by the disappearing

forests now begin to experience extreme temperature, pressure and wind. Now add to it, invasive species that destroy the habitat.

It is in our hands to do something about it. If government officials and local populations can work together to reconnect the mini-forests by planting linking trees, it may not be too late to preserve what we already have.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了世界上的森林正在变得孤立和破碎,我们有责任对正在消失的森林采取行动。

1. What is Paragraph 2 mainly about?

- A. Main causes of forest loss.
- B. Benefits of forests in our life.
- C. Different kinds of forest products.
- D. Waste of forest products in life.

B 段落大意题。根据第二段中的“*It turns out that forests affect us in ways more than we can see and experience.*”以及“*Forest products are used by us in our daily lives either directly or indirectly.*”可知,第二段主要讲的是森林在我们生活中的好处。故选 B。

2. What can we know from the passage?

- A. The forests can provide habitats only for humans.
- B. The forests can help speed up soil erosion.
- C. The forests can be preserved by planting linking trees.
- D. The forests can disappear on earth all of a sudden.

C 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的“*If government officials and local populations can work together to reconnect the mini-forests by planting linking trees, it may not be too late to preserve what we already have.*”可知,人们可以通过种植相连的树木来保护森林。故选 C。

3. What might be the most serious result of isolated forests?

- A. The blowing of strong wind.
- B. The coming of invasive species.
- C. The natural wildfires.
- D. The disappearance of species.

D 推理判断题。根据第五段中的“Did you know that when an area of a forest gets broken-up by artificial barriers, these areas tend to lose about 50% of all their species within a couple of decades?”可推知,孤立的森林会对物种的消失造成非常严重的影响。故选 D。

4. What's the best title for the passage?

- A. The Forests Meet with Wildfires
- B. The Earth Has Many Mini-Forests
- C. The Forests Are in Great Danger
- D. The Earth Suffers from the Loss of Its Species

C 标题归纳题。根据文章内容尤其是第一段的内容可知,本文主要介绍了世界上的森林正在变得孤立和破碎,我们有责任对正在消失的森林采取行动。因此 C 项“森林正处于极大的危险之中”最适合作文章标题。故选 C。

II. 七选五

You may have heard that some plants and animals are endangered. What does that mean exactly?

Being endangered means there are very few of that kind still alive. Someday they might become extinct. You may wonder what people can do to help them.

Plant trees.

As the date of Earth Day is near International Labor Day, planting trees is a popular Earth Day activity. Trees help to reduce greenhouse gas emissions, clean pollution, secure soil in place to prevent erosion, and provide homes for many birds, insects and other animals. 1.

Choose flowers that are native to your area.

2. Restoring the local plant life will help attract native bird life, pollinators (传粉者) and local mammals.

3.

Why not welcome these nonhuman neighbours into your yard? Here is how to do it. Instead of mowing the entire yard, leave a few sections unmowed. 4. Provide a source of water, like a bird bath or a small pond. Don't try to get rid of snakes, lizards, frogs, moles, squirrels, and the other creatures, many of which are beneficial.

Clean up litter in your community.

Many groups use the weekend of Earth Day to clear roadways, highways and neighbourhood streets of litter that has accumulated since the last clean-up day. 5.

- A. Welcome animals into your yard
- B. And plant them in your garden or on nature strips where plants are usually grown
- C. One way is to protect the animals' or plants' habitats
- D. Bees, butterflies, and many other insects will find this invitation
- E. It's a wonderful community project that you can do as an individual or with a group
- F. So planting trees is a long-lasting act you can do to celebrate Earth Day
- G. Encourage people to respect wild spaces by not damaging animal habitats, littering, and dumping in the water

答案:1~5 FBADE

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas— Language points

学习任务目标

1. Understand what happened on Macquarie Island.
2. Learn how to use different reading strategies to read different reading materials.
3. Predict the main content of the text and get the general idea.
4. Master the key words and phrases in this part.

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

续表

1. She had no **appetite**, and merely toyed (拨弄) with the bread and cheese. 胃口, 食欲
2. Thank you for the magazine you bought for me, but how much do I **owe** you? 欠(账)
3. As we all know, cigarette smoking **multiplies** the risk of cancer. (使)大大增加
4. Great efforts should be made to stop the flu **virus** from spreading. 病毒
5. The scientists are trying to make full use of natural energy to **decrease** air pollution. (使)减少
6. I still remember the time when Grandma set a **trap** over the mouse hole. 夹子
7. It was reported that the storm caused traffic **chaos** across the country. 大混乱; 紊乱
8. The roof **collapsed**, showering us with dust and debris (碎片). 倒塌; 塌下
9. We have the support of a **substantial** number of parents, so we are confident that our plan will work out well. 大量的, 多的
10. It's said that all three **incidents** occurred in the dead of night. 事件

II. 拓展词汇知变形

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| <u>dramatically</u> <i>adv.</i> 显著地 | dramatic <i>adj.</i> 引人注目的; 戏剧的; 急剧的 drama <i>n.</i> 戏, 剧; 戏剧艺术; 戏剧性 |
| <u>habitat</u> <i>n.</i> 栖息地 | habitation <i>n.</i> 居住; 住所 |

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|--|---|
| <u>subsequently</u> <i>adv.</i> 后来, 随后 | subsequent <i>adj.</i> 随后的, 继……之后的 subsequence <i>n.</i> 随后, 接着 |
| <u>conservation</u> <i>n.</i> 保护 | conserve <i>v.</i> 保存 |
| <u>departure</u> <i>n.</i> 离开 | depart <i>v.</i> 离开, 起程 |
| <u>explode</u> <i>v.</i> 突然增加 | explosion <i>n.</i> 爆炸; 爆发; 激增 explosive <i>adj.</i> 易爆炸的; 爆炸性的; 激增的 <i>n.</i> 炸药 |
| <u>intervention</u> <i>n.</i> 干预, 介入 | intervene <i>v.</i> 干预, 介入; 插嘴; 阻挠, 阻碍 |
| <u>ecology</u> <i>n.</i> 生态 | ecological <i>adj.</i> 生态的 ecologically <i>adv.</i> 从生态(学)方面 ecologist <i>n.</i> 生态学家 |

III. 补全短语

1. in harmony with 与……和谐相处
2. develop an appetite for 对……产生兴趣/食欲
3. out of control 失去控制
4. remove... from ... 从……把……清除
5. take over 接收; 接管; 取代
6. in turn 依次; 轮流; 反过来
7. lead to 导致; 造成(后果); 通向

8. come up with 想出;提出
9. in consequence 因此;结果
10. turn out 结果是;证明是
11. a substantial number of 大量的,多的
12. once and for all 一劳永逸地;彻底地
13. die out 灭绝;逐渐消失
14. decrease from... to ... 从……减少/降低到……
15. owe it to ... to do 应当为……做……

IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式:do you think 作插入语
What do you think a later satellite image would show?
你认为以后的卫星图像会显示什么?
2. 句型公式:it 作形式宾语
No visitor would think it surprising that the island is a UNESCO World Heritage Site.
这座岛是联合国教科文组织确立的世界遗产保护区,游客们都不会为此感到惊讶。
3. 句型公式:nor 置于句首引起的倒装句

Nor would they fail to imagine how its native inhabitants, including royal penguins, king penguins, and elephant seals, existed in perfect harmony with their natural habitat for thousands of years.

他们也不难想象,数千年来,包括皇家企鹅、王企鹅和象海豹在内的当地动物是如何与其自然栖息地完美地和谐共存的。

4. 句型公式:现在分词短语作状语

The exploding rabbit population provided plentiful food for the cats, meaning that the number of cats also increased.

迅速增加的兔子给猫提供了充足的食物,这意味着猫的数量也增加了。

5. 句型公式:with 复合结构

With this goal in mind, a virus was released onto the island.

怀着这个目标,一种病毒被投放到岛上。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. decrease v. (使)变小,(使)减少

[教材原文] But although the virus caused the rabbit population to **decrease** from 130,000 to around 10,000, it also meant less food for the cats.

然而,虽然病毒使得兔子的数量从 13 万只减少到 1 万只左右,但这也意味着猫的食物变少了。

[归纳拓展]

(1) decrease to... 减少到……

decrease by... 减少了……

decrease from... to... 从……减少/降低到……

(2) decrease n. 减少;降低;减少量

on the decrease/increase 正在减少/增加

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① After taking the medicine, his temperature decreased from 40℃ to 36.8℃.

② We have no idea when the price of housing decreases to the level we can afford.

③ The traffic accidents in the city decreased by 30% last year.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之社会现象分析) 这个小村庄的常住人口 正在减少, 因为许多年轻人为了更好的工作机会搬到大城市去了。

The permanent residents of the small village are on the decrease because many young people have moved to big cities for better job opportunities.

2. trap n. 夹子,陷阱

[教材原文] In the 1980s, **traps** and dogs were used to catch the cats.

在 20 世纪 80 年代,捕猎夹和狗被用来捉猫。

[归纳拓展]

(1) trap v. 使困住;诱捕;诱骗;使陷入困境

trap sb. into (doing) sth. 使某人陷入(做)某事的圈套;诱骗某人(做)某事

be/get trapped in... 被困在……中;陷入……中

(2) fall into a trap 落入陷阱/圈套

fall into the trap of doing sth. 落入做某事的圈套

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① The shopkeeper trapped me into buying (buy) his poor quality milk.

② Once you fall into a trap, it will not be easy to get out of it.

③ More heat energy is trapped in the atmosphere, causing the global temperature to go up.

(2) 写作微练

(读后续写之心理描写) 他 陷入了迷茫之中, 每天都感到深深的绝望和孤独。

He was trapped in confusion, feeling a deep sense of despair and loneliness every day.

3. explode v. 突然增加

[教材原文] It turned out that they developed an immunity to the virus, and their numbers **exploded** once again.

事实证明,它们对病毒产生了免疫力,其数量再次激增。

[归纳拓展]

(1) explode with/into 突然……

explode with anger 勃然大怒

(2) explosion n. 爆炸;爆发;激增

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① When the mine exploded (explode) in front of our truck, our hearts were in our mouths.

② Do you fear that you'll burst into tears or explode with anger in front of her?

③ The study also forecast an explosion (explode) in the market of low-sugar soft drink.

(2) 写作微练

(读后续写之场景描写) 当他们的球队获胜时,人群欣喜若狂。

The crowd exploded with joy when their team won.

4. owe v. 应该做;对……负有……的义务;欠(账);把……归功于

[教材原文] This intervention is a long, much-delayed ending to a sad story, but we humans **owe** it to the island to give it a happy ending.

这样的干预给这个悲伤的故事画上一个长长的、迟来的句号,但是我们人类有义务给这座岛屿一个美好的结局。

[归纳拓展]

(1) owe sb. an apology 应向某人道歉

owe sb. sth. = owe sth. to sb. 欠某人某物

(2) owe... to... 把……归功于……

owe it to sb. that... 多亏某人……

(3) owing to 因为;由于

名师点拨

如果 owe 的宾语是动词不定式或名词性从句,可使用 it 作形式宾语,将充当真正的宾语的动词不定式或名词性从句放在后面。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① Most parents owed it to the school when asked

the reason for their children's change.

② I owed it to you that I finished my work on time.

③ Owing to your help, I have made great progress.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之建议信) 我把自己的健康归功于经常锻炼和均衡的饮食。

I owe my good health to regular exercise and a balanced diet.

5. nor 置于句首引起的倒装句

[教材原文] **Nor would they** fail to imagine how its native inhabitants, including royal penguins, king penguins, and elephant seals, existed in perfect harmony with their natural habitat for thousands of years.

他们也不难想象,数千年来,包括皇家企鹅、王企鹅和象海豹在内的当地动物是如何与其自然栖息地完美地和谐共存的。

[句式分析] 句中“nor + 助动词 + 主语”为倒装句式。

[归纳拓展]

(1) “nor/neither + 助动词/be 动词/情态动词 + 主语”,意为“……也不这样”,表示某人或某物也有前面说的情况(否定情况)。

(2) “so + 助动词/be 动词/情态动词 + 主语”,意为“……也是如此”,表示某人或某物也有前面说的情况(肯定情况)。

(3) “so + 主语 + 助动词/be 动词/情态动词”,意为“……的确如此”,表示说话人同意对方的观点或对前述内容加以强调或肯定。

(4) 如果前面句子的谓语既有肯定又有否定,或者形式不同,就用 so it is with.../it is the same with...结构。

名师点拨

“主语 + do + so”在上下文中用来避免重复,可译为“某人/某物那样做了”。

The doctor asked him to eat more vegetables, and **he did so**.

医生让他多吃蔬菜,他就那样做了。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① I'm so excited at the news and so are (be) my friends Mary and Tom.

② He didn't finish his homework. Neither/Nor did I.

③Dr Johnson loves much music but he doesn't like jazz. It is the same with his wife.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之人物介绍)他从不抱怨自己的困难,也不向别人求助。

He never complains about his difficulties, nor does he ask others for help.

多义词汇 专练

1. **multiply**: A. v. 成倍增加, 迅速增加

B. v. 乘, 乘以 C. v. (使)繁殖, 增殖

①To calculate the area of a rectangle, **multiply** its length by its width. B

②In the areas where there is ample food and water, rabbits **multiply** rapidly, often leading to overpopulation. C

③The company's profits **multiplied** rapidly after the successful launch of the new product. A

2. **explode**: A. v. 突然增加 B. v. 爆炸

C. v. 突然爆发, 迸发(感情)

①The students **exploded** with laughter when the teacher made a funny joke. C

②The number of tourists **exploded** during the summer holidays. A

③The bomb **exploded** with a deafening roar, causing widespread damage. B

Unit 5 课后素养评价 (十八)

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points

I. 单句语法填空

1. Subsequently (subsequent), new guidelines were issued to all employees.
2. At work, he who took risks and could not lose was regarded as a miracle worker.
3. It's estimated that birth rate has dropped dramatically (dramatic) over the past decade.
4. As a musician, I owe much to the radio station in my home town.
5. He spent a lot of money in satisfying the appetite for excitement and amusement.
6. I had made it as plain as I could so that he could not fail to take (take) my meaning.
7. We need to produce better creative if we want to attract (attract) big clients.
8. The end result was that more and more listeners were added to the buddy list and never removed.
9. People could use it to quickly remove a list of contacts from a phone or computer.
10. As the saying goes, "The truth lies in action instead of words."

II. 短语填空

participate in; in consequence; turn out; out of control; die out; a substantial number of; owing to; lead to

1. Owing to circumstances beyond our control, the flight to Rome has been cancelled.

2. Addiction to cellphones might also lead to teenagers' poor performance at school.
3. In consequence, Jerry decided to drop out of school and started his own business.
4. It turns out that the expression of many emotions may be universal.
5. A substantial number of roads have been blocked by fallen trees.
6. Can overseas students participate in all kinds of activities in your school?
7. There was nothing we could do about it—the situation was out of control.
8. With the global warming getting more and more serious, many kinds of animals are dying out.

III. 完成句子

1. We were watching TV when all the lights went out.
我们正在看电视,这时所有的灯突然熄灭了。
2. Hearing the teacher's voice, the pupils stopped talking at once.
听到老师的声音,学生们立即停止了讲话。
3. With the meal over, we all went home.
吃完饭后,我们都回家了。
4. He hasn't made it clear when he is coming back.
他没有说明他什么时候回来。
5. Kate didn't expect to have a trip with Tom this week, nor did I.
凯特没料到这个周末会和汤姆一起去旅行,我也没想到。

IV. 完形填空

Don't let Aurora's small stature fool you—her spirit is strong. She is one of the 140 chickens 1 from a farm. When we saved her, she was tiny and sick and it seemed 2 that she would survive. Having never got the right care, many of the chickens were sick and some sadly died.

At a young age, Aurora and her sisters and brothers were 3 by their mum. Luckily, another mother took on their care. Aurora seemed the last to 4 food and attention. She grew at a much slower rate than her brothers and sisters. Everything seemed 5 her.

At the young age of seven months, Aurora had lost two mums and was 6 to find a place with the other chickens.

Aurora 7 found comfort from an old chicken named Margaret, staying under her wings during the cold nights, 8 Margaret was so old that a few months later she died. Aurora, in her own way, thinks of Margaret. Every evening you will find her in the 9 spot where she kept Margaret company. 10 when the other chickens try to 11 her away, Aurora comes back.

As Aurora grew, we became 12 at her love to simply live. Nothing 13 her.

So remember, when life seems so 14 that you can't take it, think of Aurora. She has lost two mums, watched her sisters and brothers die, and recovered from serious illness. Yet she enjoys the small, sweet 15 life has offered—safety, food, warmth and good friendships.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了一只鸡为了生存与各种困难顽强抗争的故事。

1. A. raised B. purchased
C. rescued D. collected
C 根据下文的“When we saved her...”可知,她是从农场救出来的140只小鸡中的一只。C项符合语境。
2. A. hopeful B. proper C. possible D. unlikely
D 根据上文的“she was tiny and sick”可知,小鸡生病了而且还很弱小,故此处是说她似乎不太可能活下来。unlikely表示“不太可能的”,符合语境。
3. A. punished B. refused
C. abandoned D. scolded
C 根据下文的“Luckily, another mother...”以及“Aurora had lost two mums”可以推断,第一个母

亲遗弃了她和她的兄弟姐妹们。C项符合语境。

4. A. get B. eat C. draw D. offer
A 根据下文的“She grew at a much slower rate than her brothers and sisters.”可知,此处是说她看起来像是最后一个得到食物和关怀的。
5. A. for B. around C. about D. against
D 根据上文的叙述可知,Aurora的生活不如意,因此一切似乎都在和她作对。against表示“与……作对,反对”,符合语境。
6. A. arranging B. choosing
C. struggling D. affording
C Aurora已经失去了两个妈妈,她需要努力找栖身之处。struggle表示“拼搏,努力”。
7. A. lately B. eventually
C. constantly D. frequently
B 此处与上一段相呼应,她在努力寻找之后,终于找到了安身之处。
8. A. unless B. so C. because D. but
D 虽然Aurora找到了安身之处,可是Margaret因为年老而死去了。此处上下文存在转折关系,因此选连词but。
9. A. same B. relevant C. similar D. normal
A Aurora每天晚上都到同样的地方去陪伴Margaret。此处用same表示她的执着。
10. A. Still B. Thus C. Even D. Yet
C 甚至当别的小鸡推开她时,她会再回来。C项符合语境。
11. A. clear B. put C. turn D. push
D push away意为“推开”。
12. A. nervous B. amazed
C. excited D. disappointed
B 根据第一段第一句“Don't let Aurora's small stature fool you—her spirit is strong.”可知,“我们”为Aurora想要活下来的热情感到惊讶。amazed“惊奇的”,符合语境。
13. A. helped B. attracted
C. impressed D. stopped
D 没有什么能使她停下来。stop表示“停止,停下”。
14. A. tough B. different C. smooth D. boring
A 根据上文内容可知,生活对于Aurora来说一直是艰难的,故A项符合语境。
15. A. chances B. pleasures C. dreams D. services
B 尽管尝尽生活的艰辛,Aurora却得到了生活给予她的小而甜蜜的乐趣,即后面所说的“safety, food, warmth and good friendships”。pleasure意为“乐事”。

Section Ⅲ Using language

学习任务目标

- 1. Find and summarise the usage and composition of *it* as an empty object.
- 2. Master relevant expressions about the food chain to understand the relationship between different species in the food chain.
- 3. Understand the dialogue about bees on the verge of extinction to further understand the importance of ecological balance.

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- 1. Heat the sugar slightly first to make it **dissolve** quicker. (使)溶解
- 2. The **primary** aim of this course is to improve your spoken English. 主要的

II. 拓展词汇知变形

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|---|--|
| <u>nutrient</u> <i>n.</i> 养分, 营养物质 | <u>nutrition</u> <i>n.</i> 营养 |
| | <u>nutritious</u> <i>adj.</i> 有营养的; 营养丰富的 |
| <u>impossible</u> <i>adj.</i> 不可能的 | <u>possible</u> <i>adj.</i> 可能的 |
| | <u>possibility</u> <i>n.</i> 可能(性) |
| | <u>impossibility</u> <i>n.</i> 不可能 |
| <u>investigate</u> <i>v.</i> 调查; 研究 | <u>investigation</u> <i>n.</i> 调查; 研究 |
| | <u>investigator</u> <i>n.</i> 研究者; 调查者 |
| <u>transform</u> <i>v.</i> 改变; 转换 | <u>transformation</u> <i>n.</i> [遗] 转化; 转变, 改观 |
| | <u>transformative</u> <i>adj.</i> 变化的, 变形的 |
| | <u>transformer</u> <i>n.</i> [电] 变压器; 使变化的人 |
| <u>chemical</u> <i>n.</i> 化学制品; 化学品 <i>adj.</i> 化学的 | <u>chemistry</u> <i>n.</i> 化学; 化学过程 |
| | <u>chemist</u> <i>n.</i> 化学家; 药剂师 |

续表

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|---|--|
| <u>producer</u> <i>n.</i> 制作人, 制片人; 生产者 | <u>produce</u> <i>v.</i> 生产; 引起 |
| | <u>productive</u> <i>adj.</i> 生产的; 多产的 |
| | <u>production</u> <i>n.</i> 生产; 产量 |

III. 补全短语

- 1. feed on 以……为食
- 2. refer to 指的是
- 3. due to 由于; 因为
- 4. rely on 依靠, 依赖
- 5. break down 分解
- 6. take in 吸收
- 7. be responsible for 对……负责; 是……的原因

IV. 补全句子

- 1. 句型公式: *it* 作形式宾语
Experts felt it necessary to come up with a plan to remove all the rabbits from the island.
专家们认为, 想出一个将所有的兔子从岛上清除的计划是有必要的。
- 2. 句型公式: *due to* + 名词
Due to its cute appearance, many people think keeping this turtle as a pet is a good idea.
由于它可爱的外表, 许多人认为养这种乌龟做宠物是个好主意。
- 3. 句型公式: *as well as* 连接并列成分
Secondary consumers prey on primary consumers, as well as eating other animal matter.
次级消费者捕食初级消费者, 也吃其他动物的残留物质。

任务型课堂

1. refer to 指的是;提及;参考;查阅

[教材原文] What does “it” **refer to** in sentences (a) and (c)?

句(a)和句(c)中的“it”指的是什么?

[归纳拓展]

(1) refer to... as... 把……称作……

(2) reference *n.* 提及;谈到;参考;查阅
with/in reference to 关于

[即学即练]

(1) 写出下列句中 refer to 的汉语意思

① What he **referred to** in his article was unknown to the general readers. 提及

② Your notes are excellent materials to **refer to** when you are studying for a test. 参考

③ We often **referred to** the dictionary for new words in reading. 查阅

(2) 单句语法填空

① He was recently diagnosed with liver cancer, which is referred to as an incurable disease.

② In reference to your question about the cost, the tickets for the film are 35 *yuan* each.

(3) 写作微练

(读后续写之情节描写) 她在写作中经常谈及她的童年记忆。

She often refers to her childhood memories in her writing.

2. as well as 连接并列成分

[教材原文] Secondary consumers prey on primary consumers, **as well as** eating other animal matter. 次级消费者捕食初级消费者, 也吃其他动物的残留物质。

[归纳拓展]

(1) as well as 意为“也, 和”, 后接名词、代词、形容词、介词短语、动词-ing 形式等。

(2) as well as 连接两个词或短语作主语时, 谓语动词的单复数形式与短语前面的名词的数保持一致, 相同用法的还有 with, together with, along with, except, besides, rather than 等。

(3) as well as 也可以是 well 的同级比较结构, 表示“和……一样好”。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① Mr White had breakfast, as well as reading (read) newspapers in less than half an hour.

② Lily, rather than her two sisters, was (be) admitted into Tsinghua University last year.

③ My sister, as well as her classmates who were late for class, was criticised by Mr Hunt just now. (be)

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之报道) 老师和学生们都出席了会议。

The teacher as well as the students was present at the meeting.

多义词汇 专练

dissolve: A. *v.* (使)溶解 B. *v.* 解除, 终止 C. *v.* 禁不住(笑起来或哭起来等)

① The partnership **dissolved** when the business failed to make a profit. B

② She couldn't help but **dissolve** into tears when she heard the sad news. C

③ After being stirred for a few minutes, the coffee **dissolved** completely. A

语法研习课

it 作形式宾语

语法感知

① No visitor would think **it** surprising that the island is a UNESCO World Heritage Site.

② Experts felt **it** necessary to come up with a plan to remove all the rabbits from the island.

③ This incident made **it** clear that the rat, mouse and rabbit problem needed solving once and for all.

④ I think **it** a breakthrough to transform a desert into a forest...

it 常可代替不定式, 如句②④(填序号); it 可代替动名词或从句, 如句①③(填序号), 在句中作形式宾语, 而将真正的宾语放在句子后面。

语法精讲

it 常可代替不定式(短语)、动名词(短语)或从句

在句子中作形式宾语,而将真正的宾语放在句子后面。it 作形式宾语常用于以下几种情况:

1. 动词+it+形容词/名词(+for/of sb.)+to do/从句

They **considered it important to have** the work done on time.

他们认为按时完成这项工作是重要的。

No matter where he is, he **makes it a rule to go** for a walk before breakfast.

不管在哪里,他养成了早餐前散步的习惯。

2. 动词+it+no good/no use/useless/a waste of time 等+doing...

He **thought it no use trying** to convince them.

他认为企图说服他们没有用。

3. 动词+it+介词短语+that...

He **owes it to his doctor's care that** he is quite well again.

多亏他的医生的照料,他的身体又好起来了。

4. 动词+介词+it+that 从句

You may **rely on it that** he will come to meet you. 你放心,他会来见你的。

5. 动词 appreciate/hate/love/like/dislike 等后面接 if 或 when 引导的从句作宾语时,中间需用形式宾语 it,构成“appreciate/hate/love/like/dislike+it+if/when 从句”。

She **hates it when** he bragged that he was the most important.

她讨厌他吹嘘他自己最重要。

I **would appreciate it if** you could take my suggestion into consideration.

如果您能考虑我的建议,我将感激不尽。

语法冲关

I. 单句语法填空

1. New technologies have made it easier to enjoy life than ever before.
2. You may depend on it that they will look after your daughter when you are away.
3. I would appreciate it very much if you could give me some suggestions.
4. Will you see to it that my children are taken good care of while I am away?
5. I think it necessary that we drink plenty of boiled water every day.

II. 完成句子

1. First of all, I think it very important to make more friends abroad.
首先,我认为在国外多交朋友是非常重要的。
2. Susan made it clear to me that she wished to make a new life for herself.
苏珊明确向我表示,她想为自己创造新生活。
3. They felt it difficult to finish the work in such a short time.
他们觉得在这么短的时间内完成这项工作是困难的。

Unit 5 课后素养评价 (十九)

Section III Using language

I. 词语填空

break down; as well as; dissolve; rely on; nutrient; feed on

1. Caterpillars (毛虫) feed on a wide range of trees and plants.
2. You should break down your methods so that each method does a particular job.
3. This substance will not dissolve in water.
4. They relied on the weekly boat for their supplies of food in the past.
5. Plants draw minerals and other nutrients from the soil.
6. This year numerous bands are playing, as well as comedy acts.

II. 单句语法填空

1. The lions in this area prey on deer and other wild animals.
2. Toronto has some top tourist attractions, which attract millions (million) of visitors every year.
3. The age of the corals would make them among the oldest living creatures in existence (exist).
4. Many rare animals and plants are native to this small island.
5. I think it no use talking about it with them.
6. You may depend on it that they will look after your daughter when you are away.
7. The town was cut off from the rest of the world due to heavy snow.

8. I would appreciate it if you could give me a hand with my work tomorrow.
9. The chemical (chemistry) dissolves in its constituent parts when heated.
10. It refers to anything that is acquired or learnt, rather than instinctive (本能的) or natural.

III. 阅读理解

Plants are boring. They just sit there photosynthesising (光合作用) while animals have all the fun. Right? Not so much. A new study has found that there is a long history of interactions between ants and plants. The ant and plant co-evolution (共同进化) started with ants feeding on plants and plants evolving ant-friendly features.

Plants make a number of different structures that are specific for ant use. Some plants have evolved features that persuade ants into defending them from attack from other insects and even mammals. These include hollow thorns that ants will live inside, or extra nectar (琼浆) on leaves or stems for the ants to eat. Some ants will just cheat and take the nectar and run, but some will stick around and attack anything that tries to hurt the plant. Other plants get ants to help them move their seeds around, by providing them with rich food packets attached to the seeds. The ant will pick up the seed and carry it away, eat the food packet, and leave the seed—often in a nutrient-rich area where it'll grow better, and since it's farther away from its parent, they won't have to compete for resources.

But scientists weren't sure how the evolutionary relationship between ants and plants got started. If evolution is an arms race between species developing ways to make use of their neighbours, then scientists wanted to know whether plants or ants fired the first shot. It was a chicken-and-egg question, whether things started with ants developing behaviours to take advantage of plants, or plants evolving structures to take advantage of ants.

The history of ants and plants evolving together goes back to the time of the dinosaurs, and it's not easy to tell from fossils who fired the first shot.

However, it is a question of little significance. Scientists say their study matters because it provides a look at how these widespread and complex interactions evolved.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了一项新的研究发现——蚂蚁和植物之间的互动有着悠久的历史,蚂蚁和植物的共同进化始于蚂蚁以植物为食,植物利用蚂蚁来保护自己,传播自己的种子。

- Why do some plants attach food packets to their seeds?
 - In order to reward the ants.
 - In order to make a fool of ants.
 - In order to provide nutrition for the seeds.
 - In order to get the seeds moved around.

D 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“Other plants get ants to help them move their seeds around, by providing them with rich food packets attached to the seeds.”可知,一些植物通过给蚂蚁提供附在种子上的丰富的食物使其帮助它们传播种子。故选D。
- What does Paragraph 2 mainly tell us?
 - How plants and ants interact.
 - What ants do to protect plants.
 - How plants and ants survive attacks.
 - Why plants and ants need co-evolution.

A 段落大意题。根据第二段中的“Plants make a number of different structures that are specific for ant use.”和“Some ants will just cheat and take the nectar and run... by providing them with rich food packets attached to the seeds.”可知,第二段主要介绍了植物和蚂蚁如何互动。故选A。
- What can we know about the evolutionary relationship between ants and plants?
 - Ants depended more upon plants.
 - It caused a race for better evolution.
 - How it got started was uncertain.
 - It was of little value for future studies.

C 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“But scientists weren't sure how the evolutionary relationship between ants and plants got started.”可知,科学家们仍不确定蚂蚁和植物之间的这种进化关系是怎样开始的。故选C。

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

学习任务目标

- 1. Understand the whole text.
- 2. Improve the ability of collecting information.
- 3. Master some key sentences.
- 4. Think about the relationship between human development and ecological system protection.

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- 1. After two late night **sessions**, the Security Council has reached an agreement. 一段时间
- 2. Practice is the only **criterion** for testing truth. 标准
- 3. Something that is **vast** is extremely large. 巨大的
- 4. We are surprised to find that the man has a **visual** impairment (损伤) in the right eye. 视觉的
- 5. **Elsewhere** in Asia even more astonishing actions are being taken. 在别处

II. 拓展词汇知变形

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|---|--|
| <u>comparison</u> <i>n.</i> 比较 | <u>compare</u> <i>v.</i> 比较; 对比 |
| | <u>comparable</u> <i>adj.</i> 可相比的; 同类的 |
| | <u>comparative</u> <i>adj.</i> 相对的 |
| <u>mysterious</u> <i>adj.</i> 神秘的 | <u>mysteriously</u> <i>adv.</i> 神秘地 |
| | <u>mystery</u> <i>n.</i> 神秘; 神秘事物; 悬疑故事 |
| <u>prosper</u> <i>v.</i> 兴旺, 发达 | <u>prosperity</u> <i>n.</i> 兴旺, 发达, 繁荣, 昌盛 |
| | <u>prosperous</u> <i>adj.</i> 兴旺的, 发达的, 繁荣的 |
| <u>biological</u> <i>adj.</i> 生物的, 与生物有关的 | <u>biology</u> <i>n.</i> 生物学 |
| | <u>biologist</u> <i>n.</i> 生物学家 |
| <u>apparently</u> <i>adv.</i> 据说; 看来, 似乎 | <u>apparent</u> <i>adj.</i> 显而易见的; 明显的; 表面上的 |

续表

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| <u>variation</u> <i>n.</i> 差异; 变化 | <u>vary</u> <i>v.</i> 变化 |
| | <u>various</u> <i>adj.</i> 各种各样的 |
| | <u>variety</u> <i>n.</i> 变化; 多样(化); 多变(性) |
| <u>endangered</u> <i>adj.</i> 濒临灭绝的 | <u>endanger</u> <i>v.</i> 使处于险境; 危及 |
| | <u>danger</u> <i>n.</i> 危险; 危害 |
| | <u>dangerous</u> <i>adj.</i> 有危险的; 引起危险的; 不安全的 |
| <u>secure</u> <i>adj.</i> 稳固的; 安全的 | <u>security</u> <i>n.</i> 安全; 保护; 保障 |
| <u>invasion</u> <i>n.</i> 涌入 | <u>invasive</u> <i>adj.</i> 侵入的 |
| | <u>invade</u> <i>v.</i> 侵略; 侵袭 |
| | <u>invader</u> <i>n.</i> 侵略者 |
| <u>greeting</u> <i>n.</i> 问候, 招呼 | <u>greet</u> <i>v.</i> 欢迎, 迎接 |
| | <u>greeter</u> <i>n.</i> (餐馆、商店等处的) 门迎, 迎宾 |

III. 补全短语

- 1. be famous for 因……而出名
- 2. on behalf of 代表
- 3. result in 导致
- 4. a variety of 种类繁多的……
- 5. regard... as ... 把……当……看待
- 6. thanks to 幸亏; 由于; 因为

IV. 补全句子

- 1. 句型公式: as we know
As we know, in 2016, Shennongjia made it onto the UNESCO World Heritage List.

正如我们所知道的,神农架在 2016 年正式入选联合国教科文组织的《世界遗产名录》。

2. 句型公式: what 引导主语从句

What is special about the honey is that it is produced by the earliest species of Chinese bee. 这种蜂蜜的独特之处在于它是由最古老的中华蜜蜂产的。

3. 句型公式: “介词+关系代词”引导定语从句

This is just one of the ways in which people of Shennongjia live and work in harmony with nature.

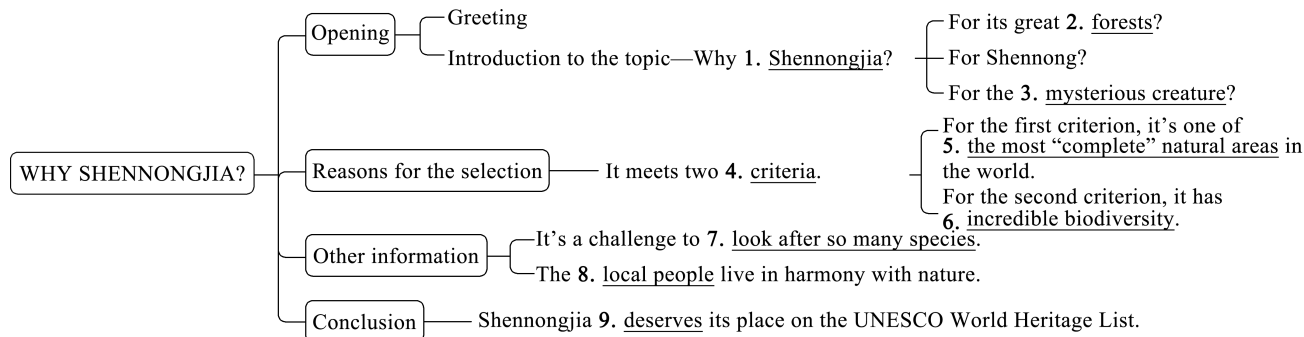
这只是神农架的人们与自然和谐相处的方式之一。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

Part 1 课文理解

○ 文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text.



○ 文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text.

- Why did Shennongjia make it onto the UNESCO World Heritage List?
 - It attracts tourists from home and abroad.
 - It is the best place for botanists to do their research.
 - Its unique location gives it an advantage.
 - It contains a naturally-balanced environment and it is also one of the rare locations in the world.
- How many kinds of insects have been recorded in Shennongjia?
 - More than 600.
 - Over 1,300.
 - Over 3,000.
 - Around 4,300.
- What can we learn from the text?
 - There is a mysterious creature “Yeren” in Shennongjia.
 - Shennongjia has the largest number of the Golden Snub-nosed Monkey in China.
 - The diversity of species in Shennongjia benefits from the variety of climatic conditions.
 - Shennongjia's inclusion in the UNESCO World Heritage List was questionable.

4. Why does the author think “the most impressive aspect of Shennongjia is the local people”?

- Because they live and work in harmony with nature.
- Because they can take things from nature as much as possible.
- Because they are all good at keeping bees and collecting their honey.
- Because they are more concerned about protecting the local wildlife.

答案: 1~4 DDCA

○ 语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them.

- It is also one of the rare locations in the world where scientists can observe in real time the ecological and biological processes that occur as the plants and animals develop and evolve.
[句子分析] 本句是一个主从复合句。其中 where 引导定语从句, 修饰名词 locations; that 引导定语从句, 修饰名词 processes; as 引导时间状语从句。
[尝试翻译] 在这里, 科学家们可以实时观察到植物和动物发展和进化过程中的生态学和生物学过程, 这在全世界都是很罕见的。
- What is special about the honey is that it is produced by the earliest species of Chinese bee.

[句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句。其中 What 引导主语从句;that 引导表语从句。

[尝试翻译]这种蜂蜜的独特之处在于它是由最古老的中华蜜蜂产的。

○思维品质培养

Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions.

1. According to the text, what are the two criteria that meet the UNESCO World Heritage List?
The two criteria include: the area contains a naturally-balanced environment that allows the

many and various species to live and prosper. Besides, it is one of the rare locations in the world where scientists can observe in real time the ecological and biological processes that occur as the plants and animals develop and evolve.

2. As of October 2018, what other places in China have been added to the UNESCO's World Natural Heritage List? Please search for relevant information and give some examples.

略

Part 2 语言梳理

1. comparison *n.* 比较

[教材原文]Data, examples and **comparisons** are then used to support the main ideas.

然后使用数据、例子和比较来支持主要的观点。

[归纳拓展]

(1)in comparison with/to... 和……相比

by comparison 相比之下

(2)compare *v.* 比较;对比

compared to/with... 与……比较

compare... to... 把……比作……

(3)comparable *adj.* 可相比的;同类的

(4)comparative *adj.* 相对的

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

① The high price of gasoline for cars and airplanes has made it very expensive for Americans to travel compared to/with past years.

② Reports of consecutive years should also be available for comparison (compare).

③ A car of comparable (compare) size would cost far more abroad.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之人物介绍)与班上其他学生相比,他更勤奋。

Compared with/to other students in the class, he is more hard-working.

2. apparently *adv.* 据说;看来,似乎

[教材原文]For the first criterion, Shennongjia is **apparently** one of the most “complete” natural areas in the world.

针对第一个标准,神农架显然是世界上最“完整”的自然区域之一。

[归纳拓展]

apparent *adj.* 显而易见的;明显的;表面上的

It is quite apparent that... 显而易见……

It is apparent from sth. that... 从……可看出……

It is apparent to sb. that... 某人明白……

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

① Apparently, she took no notice of the apparent mistakes in the accident. (apparent)

② It was apparent from her face that she was really upset.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之社会现象分析)显然,新技术正在改变我们的生活方式。

It is apparent that/Apparently new technologies are changing our way of life.

3. endangered *adj.* 濒临灭绝的

[教材原文]Although **endangered** elsewhere in China due to the invasion of foreign species, the bees of Shennongjia have coexisted with the local people for centuries.

虽然在中国的其他地区,由于外来物种的入侵,这种蜜蜂濒临灭绝,但是当地的人们和神农架的这种蜜蜂已经共存了几个世纪。

[归纳拓展]

(1)danger *n.* [U]危险;风险[C]危险因素;危害;威胁[C,U](坏事发生的)可能性,危险

in danger 在危险中

be in danger of (doing) sth. 有(做)某事的危险

be a danger to... 对……是个危险因素/威胁

be out of danger 脱离危险

(2)dangerous *adj.* 有危险的;引起危险的;不安全的

(3)dangerously *adv.* 危险地;不安全地

(4)endanger *v.* 使处于险境;危及

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

① School children must be taught how to deal

with dangerous (danger) situations.

② The list of endangered (danger) species includes nearly 600 fishes.

(2) 写作微练

① (应用文写作之倡议书) 许多野生动物由于栖息地遭到破坏而面临灭绝的危险。

Many wild animals are in danger of extinction because of habitat destruction.

② (应用文写作之报道) 这位徒步旅行者在山中迷路了两天, 但现在已经脱离危险。

The hiker was lost in the mountains for two days but is now out of danger.

4. **secure** *adj.* 稳固的; 安全的

[教材原文] By providing the bees with a **secure** home, the villagers collect their honey in return. 村民们为蜜蜂提供安全住所, 作为报答, 它们的蜂蜜由村民们采集。

[归纳拓展]

(1) feel secure about... 对……感到安心

be secure from/against 没有……的危险

(2) secure *v.* 把……弄牢; 保护

secure sb./sth. from/against... 保护某人/某物免

受……

(3) security *n.* 安全; 保护; 保障

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① We'll undertake for your security (secure) while you are visiting our country.

② Some measures are needed to secure the farmland from/against shifting sand.

(2) 写作微练

(读后续写之心理描写) 他总是对自己在考试中的表现很有把握, 因为他一直努力学习。

He always feels secure about his performance in the exams as he studies hard all the time.

多义词汇 专练

session: A. *n.* 一节; 一段时间 B. *n.* (法庭的) 开庭
C. *n.* 学年 D. *n.* (酒吧中) 演奏会

① This course will only be offered during the next **session**. C

② The court is now in **session**. B

③ The course is made up of 12 two-hour **sessions**. A

④ John decided to become one of **session** players. D

Unit 5 课后素养评价 (二十)

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

I. 单词拼写

- The report shows that prices have not shown much variation (变化) this year.
- He was determined to give his family a secure (稳固的) and solid base.
- Every day Amy got letters filled with holiday greetings (问候) and words of encouragement.
- The black-necked crane (鹤) is one of the rarest (最稀有的) species in the world.
- The comparison (比较) shows considerable disagreement between theory and practice.
- The majority of people think that her designs have a strong visual (视觉的) appeal.
- Elsewhere (在别处), the weather today has been fairly sunny.
- There is no doubt that we should do our best to save endangered (濒临灭绝的) species.

II. 单句语法填空

- What I have done is simply nothing compared

(compare) with what he has done.

- Apparently (apparent), many Chinese women are interested in such movies.
- It's required that all the visitors be searched for security (secure) reasons.
- Over half of those questioned said they rarely (rare) took any exercise.
- What's worse, some drivers, cyclists and pedestrians do not think it vital to obey traffic rules.
- It is known to all that Darwin eventually put forward a model of biological (biology) evolution.

III. 短语填空

supply... to; coexist with; a variety of; on behalf of; be regarded as; in return; result in; thanks to

- We made too many concessions (让步) but we got too little in return.
- The manager caught a bad cold, resulting in his being absent from the meeting.

3. Thanks to his help, my speech was so successful that everyone cheered for me.
4. Nowadays, cycling, along with jogging and swimming, is regarded as one of the best all-round forms of exercise.
5. A variety of heavy industries grew up alongside the port.
6. The lawyer made a statement in the court on behalf of the victim's family.
7. We supply power to the three nearby towns.
8. Please keep in mind that the opportunity coexists with the challenge.

IV. 完成句子

1. Most of the people invited to attend the party were my old friends.
大多数被邀请参加此次聚会的人是我的老朋友。
2. What is known to us all is that the earth is becoming warmer and warmer.
我们大家都知道的是,地球在变得越来越暖和。
3. He comes home late every day, making his wife very angry.
他每天回家很晚,这使他的妻子很生气。
4. It is a challenge for us to find a better way on our own.
对我们来说,靠自己找到更好的方法是一个挑战。
5. The West Lake, for which Hangzhou is famous, is a beautiful place.
西湖是个美丽的地方,杭州以西湖闻名。

V. 语法填空

Believed to have existed for more than 60 million years, crested ibises (朱鹮) are one of the oldest species of bird on Earth. Due to pollution and other human activities, the birds 1. began (begin) to disappear in the 1960s. In 1981, seven crested ibises were found in Yangxian, Shaanxi Province, 2. which were believed to be the last remaining ones worldwide. But now, they have come back from the brink of 3. extinction (extinct). Researchers said that 4. the number has risen to more than 7,000 worldwide. There are over 5,000 crested ibises in Shaanxi alone.

“The secret to the inspirational case of 5. successfully (successful) saving crested ibises from a small population is the immediate onsite

protection approach adopted at the very beginning,” Zhang Yueming, an expert who works at the crested ibis nature reserve in Yangxian.

6. On the fourth day after the discovery of the seven crested ibises, the local government published a series of emergency notices to protect crested ibises, for example, the bans on hunting. Later, it also established the Qinling No. 1 Protection Station and sent four people 7. to guard (guard) the seven birds. These guardians observed and recorded the birds' habits and kept them safe. Meanwhile, new methods were used to protect crested ibises, mainly 8. including (include) artificial breeding and reintroduction. In 1990, the Shaanxi Crested Ibis Rescue and Breeding Centre was established. At the centre, crested ibises are artificially bred and can receive timely treatment 9. when they are sick. Over the next 30 years, they 10. established (establish) a complete system of artificial breeding techniques, laying a foundation for the birds' later reintroduction into the wild.

VI. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假设你所在的学校将于下周一举行成人礼,你将成为代表在仪式上发言。请你按以下内容要点准备一篇英文发言稿。内容包括:

1. 成人礼简介;
2. 你对成人礼的认识和感受。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

【参考范文】

Good morning, everyone! We are to hold our memorable adult ceremony today.

In my opinion, the adult ceremony is a milestone between our childhood and adulthood. Adulthood means we should be gradually mature with the virtue, integrity, kindness, generosity and so on. Being a grown-up, we should obey the commitment and take more responsibilities. Having the right of legal election, we have a say on the politics matters. If someone tempts us to do some illegal things, we should ponder over them seriously and think twice before action.

As grown-ups, we should serve our society from now on to make our lives more meaningful.

Thank you for listening!

第二节 读后续写

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

The event that stands out in Tom's memory happened one morning when Tom was only ten years old. He was at home with his elder sister Jane. Tom was doing his homework when he heard raised voices. At first he thought nothing of it since customers in the motorcycle shop directly below their flat often became loud, but he soon realised this time it was different.

"Quick! Quick! Remove the motorcycles from the shop," someone yelled.

Then a thick burning smell filled the air. When Tom opened the front door of their flat to investigate, a thick cloud of smoke greeted him. The motorcycle shop had caught fire and people were running and crying.

Jane, who had been playing the violin in her room, hurried to the living room. They rushed out of the door and along the corridor through the smoke.

They were heading towards the stairway at the far end of the corridor when Jane stopped in her track. She turned around and headed back the way they came. Tom had no idea what she was doing, but he followed suit.

Jane had suddenly remembered the lady in her 70s who lived next door to them, who they called Makcik, Malay for auntie. Jane began banging on Makcik's door, but got no answer. As the smoke thickened around them, Tom could see many of their neighbours—some still in their pajamas—

running for safety. The thought of fear crossed his mind.

"She would have run for safety like everyone else!" Tom cried. However, Jane refused to give up, "I know Makcik's still inside." She said she was familiar with Makcik's daily routine and was certain she would still be sleeping. She pounded (重击) at the door. "Go downstairs. Go now! Go!"

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

【参考范文】

Tom noticed the flame was reaching up. Frozen with fear, he stood rooted to the spot. He comprehended the gravity of the situation and held Jane's hand tightly. By then, both of them were coughing and their eyes were stinging. Time seemed to stand still, though they were probably there for only two or three minutes. Tom begged Jane to run for safety as quickly as possible. Jane tried to shield her nose from the choking smoke and shook her head. She kept pounding against the door. Tom burst out crying.

Luckily, some neighbours passing by stopped and offered help. A sense of strength immediately replaced the mounting fear and anxiety in Jane's mind. She told them Ms Makcik must be still in the room. They forced the door open with all their might. Sure enough, Makcik was lying in bed, unconsciously. She was carried downstairs and then rushed to the hospital, where she finally came to herself. People in the neighbourhood felt relieved and Jane and Tom's joy was immense.

★ ★ ★
迁 · 移 · 应 · 用

Part 1 应用文写作

——发言稿

○写作指导

发言稿一般包括演讲稿、宣传稿、倡议书、欢迎辞、欢送辞等。其中演讲稿是人们在工作和社会生活中经常使用的文体，主要用来交流思想和感情，表达主张和见解。

1. 发言稿的语言应尽可能准确简洁、通俗易懂、层次清楚、条理分明。对事物及事物间关系的说明要清晰明确、逻辑性强。
2. 发言稿一般由开头语、正文和结束语三部分组成。开头语一般来说比较简单，目的是吸引听众或读者的注意力。正文是发言稿的主体，主要是提供论点和相关的论据等，论点要明确，论据要充分有力。结束语应简明扼要，也可以谈谈自己的希望或看法等。
3. 发言稿的时态以一般现在时为主。

○典题示例

请根据提示为“绿叶”有机蔬菜生产基地写一篇80词左右的英文宣传稿。要点如下：

1. 基地坐落在城西，历经20年已经发展成为占地七十多万平方米的大型农场；
2. 基地配备有现代化的设施，且生产过程中尽量不使用化肥；
3. 产品富含营养，已出口到20多个国家；
4. 如有兴趣，请联系我们以获取更多信息。

Step 1: 审题谋篇

| | |
|----|---|
| 文体 | 应用文 |
| 时态 | 一般现在时 |
| 人称 | 第三人称 |
| 要点 | 1. 引入宣传介绍的对象 2. 介绍其主要信息 3. 欢迎有兴趣者联系 |

Step 2: 要点补全

- ① It is located in (坐落于) the west of the city.
- ② It has expanded to a farm covering an area of (占地面积) more than 700,000 m² in the past two decades.
- ③ This makes it different from others (使之与众不同).
- ④ The vegetables here are grown with chemical fertiliser as little as possible (尽量不使用化肥).
- ⑤ You are interested in it (对它感兴趣).
- ⑥ Please contact us (联系我们) for more information.

Step 3: 句式升级

- ① 用非谓语动词作状语合并 Step 2 中的句①②
Located in the west of the city, it has expanded to a farm covering an area of more than 700,000 m² in the past two decades.
- ② 用名词性从句合并 Step 2 中的句③④
What makes it different from others is that the vegetables here are grown with chemical fertiliser as little as possible.
- ③ 用条件状语从句合并 Step 2 中的句⑤⑥
If you are interested in it, please contact us for more information.

Step 4: 连句成篇

Have you ever dreamed of tasting organic vegetables with little chemical fertiliser every day? Please go to Green Leaf—an organic vegetable base.

Located in the west of the city, it has expanded to a farm covering an area of more than 700,000 m² in the past two decades. And it has been equipped with advanced facilities. What makes it different from others is that the vegetables here are grown with chemical fertiliser as little as possible. The rich soil makes these vegetables full of nutrition.

If you are interested in it, please contact us for more information.

○学以致用

假设你是李华,你将参加主题为“Global Water Shortage”的英语演讲比赛。请写一份英文发言稿,主要内容如下:

1. 全球水资源短缺问题日益严重;
2. 应对措施(科学储存未来用水,使用新方式开发现有水资源,节约用水等)。

注意:1. 词数不少于 80;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

参考词汇:资源 resource

【参考范文】

Good morning, everyone, I am Li Hua. It's my great honour to speak here.

As we all know, water shortage is becoming increasingly severe around the world. Thus, we should do something to deal with it.

First, we should store water in a scientific way for future use. Second, we should develop some new ways to use the existing water resources, such as turning sea water into fresh water. Third, it's everyone's responsibility to make good use of water, like recycling and saving water in our daily life.

In conclusion, people around the world should protect water resources and explore potential ones scientifically.

That's all. Thank you!

Part 2 读后续写

阅读下面的文章,完成任务。

Every year, the whales stopped in our cove during their six-thousand-mile trip south from the Bering Sea. They swam right into the cove next to our town and stayed there for days. You could see them splashing their tails and looking at everyone on the beach.

People came from far away to see those huge and amazing creatures. The whales seemed to like the attention. They would dive and spout water almost as if they were performing for us. I couldn't imagine feeling so comfortable with all those people watching me. Just the idea of performing made me freeze up like a block of ice.

I loved spending time at the cove when no one else was around. I felt too shy to sing in front of people, but the whales were a great audience! They swam and jumped in the cove while I sang. They seemed to like my songs, and I knew they would never let out my secret. I hadn't told my family or friends about my songs. I wasn't ready to share my music yet.

While I was walking along the rocks one day, I spotted an unusual shape in the water next to the beach. It was a whale! The whale wasn't moving at all, and much of it was out of the water. I realised that it must have swum too close to the shore and gotten stuck. I knew I wasn't big enough to push the whale out to deeper water. Still, I had to do something, so I turned and ran back down the beach for help.

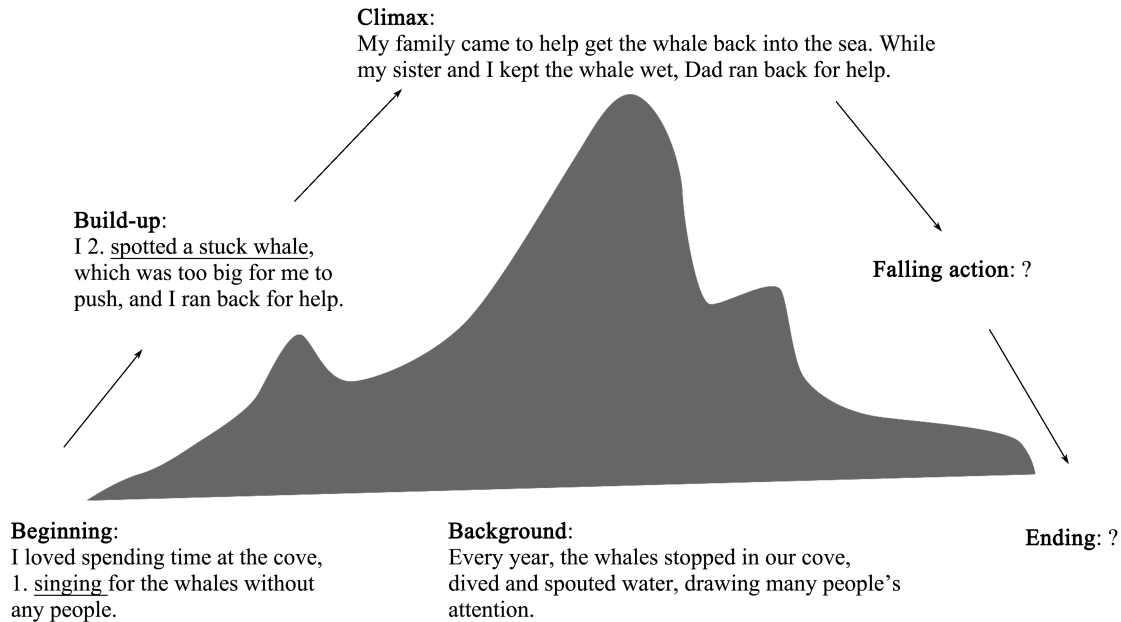
I spotted my sister Rosa coming towards me. “Rosa!” I shouted loudly. “Quick, go home and get help—a whale is stuck!” Rosa hesitated for a second, then turned and ran towards home. I went back to keep watch. Soon, my mum and dad came rushing and I showed them where the whale was. “We need to get this whale back in the sea!” Dad said. “Tomas, you and Rosa keep the whale wet while we run and get help.” Rosa and I waded(涉水) into the water next to the whale and began to water it.

任务一:阅读文章,回答问题。

What does the article mainly talk about?

This article tells the story of the author who found a stranded whale and called his family to help the whale return to the sea. The author saw that the whale was afraid, so he sang songs to appease the whale, and finally the whale struggled to swim out to sea under the push of everyone.

任务二：梳理故事情节，完成故事山(Story Mountain)。



任务三：回答下面的问题，并根据段落开头的提示语，构思和完善故事发展情节。

| | |
|---|--|
| <p>Paragraph 1:</p> <p>Even though Rosa and I were keeping it wet, the whale was trembling with fear. _____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> | <p>1. What was my feeling seeing the whale trembling? <u>I was heartbroken and on the verge of tears.</u></p> <p>2. What should I do then? <u>I should sing to it to comfort the huge creature.</u></p> <p>3. What did the whale react? <u>The whale did seem more relaxed. It wasn't trembling as much anymore.</u></p> |
| <p>Paragraph 2:</p> <p>I continued singing to keep the whale calm and a while later, the entire town came. _____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> | <p>1. What did other people do when they arrived? <u>They joined us in watering the whale.</u></p> <p>2. What did other people feel seeing I was singing? <u>They felt astonished.</u></p> <p>3. How was the whale at last? <u>It was pushed back to the sea with the help of the tide.</u></p> <p>4. What did people present react? <u>Breathing a sigh of relief, everyone began to clap and cheer, not only for the whale's safety but also for my music.</u></p> |

任务四：根据材料内容和任务三中构思的故事发展情节续写两段，使之构成一篇完整的短文。

注意：续写词数应为 150 左右。

【参考范文】

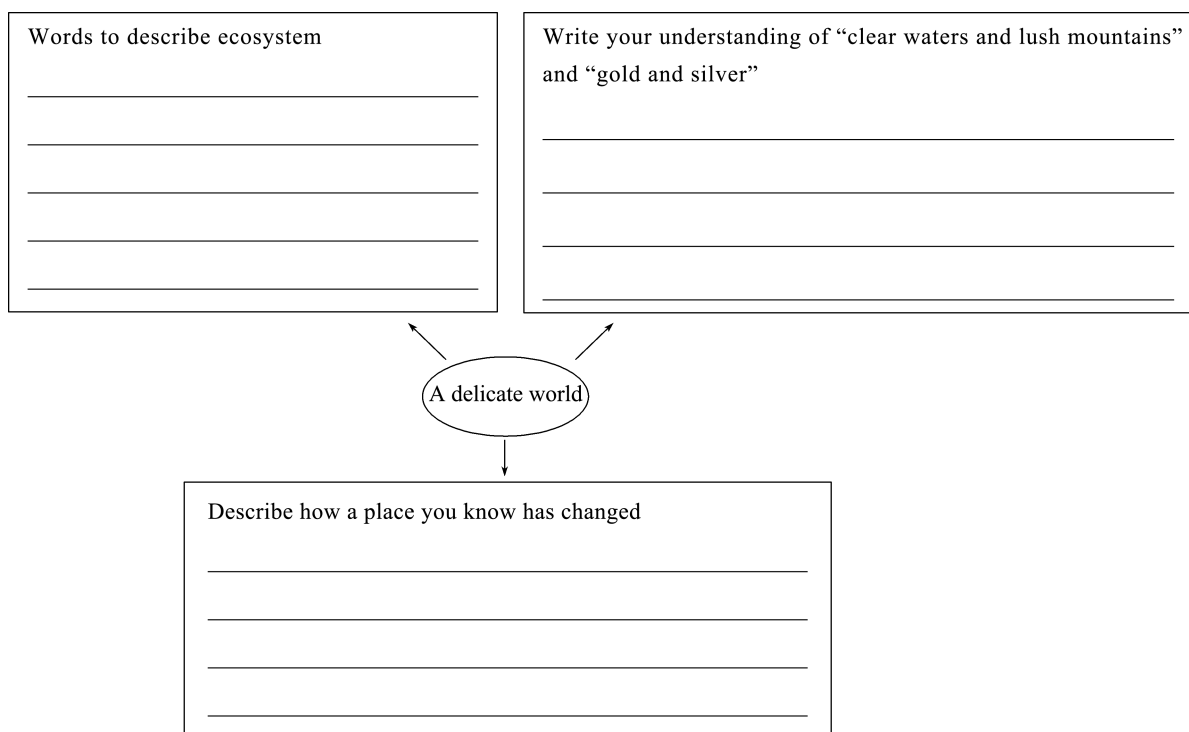
Even though Rosa and I were keeping it wet, the whale was trembling with fear. Watching its shaking body, I was on the verge of tears. Then, an idea took shape in my head. "I'll sing to it!" I said to Rosa. "You sing?" Rosa asked, puzzled. Nodding my head, I tried to use my music to comfort the huge creature. "Sing louder, the whale is relaxing!" Rosa exclaimed. So I sang louder. The whale did seem more relaxed. It wasn't trembling as much anymore.

I continued singing to keep the whale calm and a while later, the entire town came. They immediately joined us in watering the whale, though they seemed to be astonished at my singing aloud. At last, the tide reached its highest point and our whale struggled into the sea with everyone's push. Breathing a sigh of relief, everyone began to clap and cheer, not only for the whale's safety but also for my music. I had thought it would be rather embarrassing to share my song, but now it made me feel good and great.

重 · 构 · 拓 · 展

一、单元重构

请根据本单元所学内容，完成思维导图。



答案：略

二、拓展阅读

阅读下面的文章，完成后面的题目。

The Amazon Rainforest: a Natural Treasure

Welcome to the jungle, a huge sea of green alive with the sounds of animals. This is the Amazon rainforest. As the largest rainforest in the world, it plays a significant role in maintaining the fine balance of the Earth's ecosystem.

The Amazon rainforest crosses into eight countries, including Brazil and Peru, and one overseas region of France, all on the South American continent. With an area of around 6 million square kilometres, the Amazon rainforest is more than half the size of China. The Amazon River, from which the rainforest gets its name, is close to 6,400 kilometres in length—roughly 100 kilometres longer than the Yangtze River. On its journey from the mountains to the ocean, the river supports many different ecosystems. They give this area the richest biodiversity on the Earth: one in ten known species in the world can be found here.

Of the 390,000 plant species known to us, more than 40,000 can be found in the Amazon. This tall and ancient brazil nut tree produces nuts that we can eat; these water lilies are big enough to lie down on. The forest's different levels support an unbelievable variety of wildlife. At the bottom, there is a system of roots beneath the ground. Above that is the mass of leaf litter on the dark forest floor. The next level is made up of shorter plants with large leaves. Then there are the towering ancient hardwoods, and finally the tops of the tallest trees many metres above the ground. Each level of the forest forms its own little world, home to different kinds of living things.

More than 1,300 species of birds and over 400 species of mammals hide among the jungle's plant life. This jaguar is one example. It has a yellowish-brown coat with black spots. While a significant number of jaguars survive here, they are only one element of this forest's food chain. They feed on at least 87 species, including frogs. These frogs, in turn, feed on insects which eat leaves and fruit. When a jaguar dies, a tiny army of microorganisms helps break down its body and return the nutrients to the earth.

The Amazon rainforest breathes life into the planet by fixing carbon and producing over 20 per cent of all the Earth's oxygen. Thus, it is often known as the "lungs of the planet". Moreover, the Amazon rainforest is a treasure house of species that can be used for food or medicine. Yet there is one major danger to these irreplaceable plants and animals: us. Over the past 50 years, about 17 per cent of the rainforest has disappeared due to human activities such as agriculture and cattle farming. As the impact of human activities continues to grow and the list of species in danger of extinction becomes longer, we are left with a question: can we afford to damage the "lungs of the planet"?

1. How does the Amazon River contribute to the area?
 - A. It gives the rainforest its name only.
 - B. It supports many different ecosystems.
 - C. It has no influence on the ecosystems.
 - D. It reduces the biodiversity.
2. What can we know about the biodiversity in the Amazon rainforest?
 - A. One in ten known species in the world can be found here.
 - B. Only 10 species are known here.
 - C. One-fifth of known species in the world can be found here.
 - D. There are no unique species here.
3. Why is the Amazon rainforest called the "lungs of the planet"?
 - A. Because it has a lot of animals.
 - B. Because it is very large.
 - C. Because it has a complex food chain.
 - D. Because it breathes life into the planet by fixing carbon and producing a large amount of oxygen.
4. What is the major threat to the Amazon rainforest?

| | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| A. Natural disasters. | B. Animal activities. |
| C. Human activities. | D. Climate change. |

答案:1~4 BADC

单元测试卷(五)

(考查范围:Unit 5 时间:100 分钟 分值:120 分)

I. 阅读理解(共 15 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 37.5 分)

A

Here are some books which can inspire kids to think about nature and the environment.

***How to Raise Monarch Butterflies: A Step-by-Step Guide for Kids*—By Carol Pasternak**

Have you ever watched a monarch transform from a caterpillar to a butterfly from up close? In this book, learn everything about the monarch life cycle and how to raise monarchs from eggs to adult butterflies. You will also get to know the efforts involved to protect the species.

***National Parks: A Kid's Guide to America's Parks, Monuments, and Landmarks*—By Erin McHugh**

This year, the National Park Service's National Park Week is on April 21 to 29. During the week, all the national parks offer free admission. Enrich your knowledge with this book, as it introduces the national parks and some interesting places in the US, including their geography, specific animals as well as environmental challenges. The book's featured places include Yosemite National Park, Ellis Island and the National Park of American Samoa, the only US national park to the south of the equator.

***Where Do Recyclable Materials Go?*—By Sabbithry Persad**

Tiana has been learning about recycling at school. But when her dog, Bubbles, gets lost running after a recycling truck, she ends up learning a lot more about recyclable materials than ever! Follow Tiana and her family as they search for Bubbles around town and at the Materials Recovery Facility. Along the way, readers will learn a lot about recycling and how they can do their part in protecting the environment.

***Scrap Kins Build-it Book Volume 1*—By Brian Yanish**

Meet the Scrap Kins. They are creative, friendly monsters who live in a recycling centre, known as Scrap City. They'll show you how to turn junk into pretty cool things. Readers will learn how to create cute bags from old jeans, beautiful ships from milk boxes, and more. Remember that one person's trash may be another person's treasure!

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章介绍了四本书,旨在帮助孩子们了解自然和环境,增强孩子们的环保意识。

1. Which author teaches you how to make an artwork from waste?

- A. Carol Pasternak. B. Brian Yanish. C. Sabbithry Persad. D. Erin McHugh.

B 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的“Readers will learn how to create cute bags from old jeans, beautiful ships from milk boxes, and more.”可知,Brian Yanish 教你如何用废物制作艺术品。故选 B。

2. Why is the National Park of American Samoa special?

- A. There is a famous statue in it. B. It is free for admission.
C. It lies to the south of the equator. D. It has its specific animals.

C 细节理解题。根据第二本书的介绍中最后一句中的“the National Park of American Samoa, the only US national park to the south of the equator”可知,美属萨摩亚国家公园的特别之处在于它是美国唯一一个位于赤道以南的公园。故选 C。

3. What is the common goal of the four books?

- A. To raise kids' environmental awareness. B. To teach kids practical skills.
C. To comment on kids' behaviour. D. To make kids interested in geography.

A 细节理解题。根据第一段的内容可知,这四本书的共同目标是增强孩子们的环保意识。故选 A。

B

A year ago, I decided to create a more environmentally friendly kitchen, focusing on reducing the single-use products such as plastic bags and paper towels. I'm not going to sugar-coat my experience. It takes commitment and a willingness to change long-held habits. In creating my kitchen, I tried a lot of different alternative products and some plain old common sense; the result, however, has been worth the effort. I'm recycling more and relying less on single-use products and I'm saving money too.

I'm not kidding when I say that I used to really love plastic storage bags, so this was, perhaps, the biggest challenge for me. Switching to reusable storage bags is a financial investment, but the cost is reasonable considering that I previously spent at least \$100 annually on single-use plastic bags and wrap. I will check online periodically for recycling updates, where a zero-waste box for kitchen items is offered, from party supplies to mixed material food containers.

I'm a clean freak (狂热爱好者) and used to go through a lot of paper towels on a daily basis, but it's easy enough to take old T-shirts or towels and cut them up to use to wipe down surfaces. I'm also a fan of bamboo paper towels, which have the look and feel of traditional paper towels, yet are made from a highly renewable source and also break down in just 45 days. Better yet, they can be reused up to 100 times. As for kitchen sponges (海绵块), I keep an eye out for those made with natural and recyclable materials.

When purchasing household items online from companies like Amazon or Jet, I will ask to have them shipped in as few boxes as possible or as small a box as possible if a single item is to be sent. I'll let the company know that they should pay more attention to how it is packaging items for delivery.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了作者为了减少一次性产品的使用而建了一个环保厨房,并且改变了自己的生活习惯。

4. What is the author's main purpose in creating her kitchen?

- A. To save money. B. To reduce waste and recycle more.
C. To change her long-held habits. D. To make it cleaner and more practical.

B 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“A year ago, I decided to create a more environmentally friendly kitchen, focusing on reducing the single-use products such as plastic bags and paper towels.”可知,作者创建厨房的主要目的是减少浪费和循环利用更多的东西。故选 B。

5. What does the underlined word “sugar-coat” in Paragraph 1 mean?

- A. Make attractive. B. Get interested. C. Show off. D. Give up.

A 词义猜测题。根据第一段中的“It takes commitment and a willingness to change long-held habits.”可知,作者建环保厨房,改变长期的习惯是自己决定的和心甘情愿的,并没有刻意美化自己的经历。sugar-coat 意为“美化;使有吸引力”,与 A 项意思相近。故选 A。

6. In creating her kitchen, what does the author do?

- A. She begins to recycle more single-use plastic bags.
B. She goes through a lot of paper towels on a daily basis.
C. She seldom checks online to buy zero-waste boxes.
D. She chooses to use the recyclable or reusable kitchen items.

D 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“... I tried a lot of different alternative products and some plain old common sense; the result, however, has been worth the effort. I'm recycling more and relying less on single-use products and I'm saving money too.”可知,在这个厨房里,作者尝试了许多替换产品并运用了一些老生常谈的道理,最终循环使用更多东西,对一次性产品的依赖也越来越少,因此节省了不少钱。所以作者选择了可循环利用或可多次使用的厨房用品。故选 D。

7. What can we learn about the author from the text?

- A. She has strong environmental awareness.
- B. She is used to traditional paper towels.
- C. She has a good knowledge of financial investment.
- D. She prefers to have her purchases packed in middle boxes.

A 推理判断题。根据第一段中的“A year ago, I decided to create a more environmentally friendly kitchen, focusing on reducing the single-use products such as plastic bags and paper towels.”可知,作者为了减少一次性产品的使用而建了一个环保厨房,再结合后文内容可推断出作者是一个环保意识很强的人。故选 A。

C

Darwin noted that some human emotional expressions might have started as part of a physiological function: for example, exposing the teeth to bite food. The function, however, took on meaning and became a form of communication which signals anger.

The same may be true for the animals. Baby monkeys cry for attention. They also cry to signal to an adult that they want to be carried.

“Chimpanzees do make upset voice when they are being weaned (断奶) by their mothers or have lost their mothers or another individual,” says Anne Pusey, a professor at the University of Minnesota. “They whimper (呜咽) and cry and scream. When we hear these calls, the emotion involved seems obvious. However, they do not weep in the sense of producing tears.”

The Iowan researchers can cause the same crying sounds by producing large decreases and then increases in blood flow. The blood flow also goes down when baby rats get cold. Thus, they conclude baby rats cry in the same way that we sneeze. Of course the rat baby could be crying because he's cold and wants his mother to know.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了动物的一些习性,它们通常喜欢用一些行为来表达自己的情绪。

8. According to the first paragraph, what kind of emotion does “exposing the teeth” express?

- A. Disappointment.
- B. Excitement.
- C. Anger.
- D. Happiness.

C 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“however, took on meaning and became a form of communication which signals anger”可知,此处表达的是一种愤怒的情绪。故选 C。

9. Which is one probable reason why young chimpanzees might be crying?

- A. They meet their brothers.
- B. They have nothing to eat.
- C. They are being breast-fed.
- D. They are parted from their mothers.

D 细节理解题。根据第三段的内容可知,黑猩猩与母亲分离时会哭泣。故选 D。

10. Under what circumstances will baby rats cry just like humans' sneeze?

- A. Their blood flow is decreased.
- B. They feel cold and long for affection.
- C. Their blood flow is increased.
- D. Their mother brings them back home.

B 细节理解题。根据第四段中的“Of course the rat baby could be crying because he's cold and wants his

mother to know.”可知,当他们感到寒冷、渴望获得关爱的时候会哭泣。故选 B。

11. Where is the passage most likely taken from?

- A. An animal journal. B. A physiology book.
C. A health magazine. D. A cultural newspaper.

A 文章出处题。通读全文可知,本文介绍的是动物的一些习性,所以很可能出自一本动物杂志。故选 A。

D

A study showed that farms with surrounding natural habitat experienced the most benefits from birds. The study, published in *Journal of Applied Ecology*, was conducted at 21 strawberry fields along California's Central Coast. It found that birds were more likely to carry foodborne pathogens (病原体) and eat more berries without surrounding natural habitat.

The study looked at how different farming practices influenced the costs and benefits that wild birds provided on the strawberry farms. The scientists combined nearly 300 bird surveys and the tests of more than 1,000 droppings' samples from 55 bird species to determine which birds ate pests, beneficial insects and crops, and carried foodborne pathogens.

They also ranked birds to see which were more likely to bring benefits or costs to farmlands. Barn swallows, for instance, got a “gold star” in the study. Their mud nests are commonly seen attached to the underside of eaves (屋檐), from which they fly out to fields, searching for insects.

Rather than result in a list of “good” and “bad” birds, the study found that most bird species brought both costs and benefits to farms, depending on how the landscape was managed. The presence of natural habitat was the single most important driver differentiating a farm where wild birds brought more benefits than harm.

Growers will tell you it's impossible to keep birds off your farm—you can't do that and don't want to from a conservation perspective. “Nature is messy, and birds are complex,” the researcher said. “The best we can do is understand how to take advantage of the benefits while reducing the harm.”

A related study in 2020 found that farms with natural habitat attracted more insect-eating birds and fewer strawberry-eating birds. Such habitats also bring greater numbers of bird species to the landscape. All together, these studies suggest that farming landscapes with natural habitat tend to be good for conservation, farmers, and public health.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了附近有鸟类自然栖息地的农场从鸟类那受益最多,突出了保护农田四周良好栖息地与生态环境的重要性。

12. What does the study focus on?

- A. Pathogens found on the strawberry farms. B. The species of birds near farmers' fields.
C. The effect of birds' natural habitat on farming. D. Damage to crops and strawberries on the farm.

C 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“It found that birds... without surrounding natural habitat.”和第二段中的“The study looked at how different... provided on the strawberry farms.”可知,这项研究的重点是鸟类的自然栖息地对农业的影响。

13. What can we learn about barn swallows?

- A. They can bring benefits for farmland. B. They are good at nesting on the rocks.
C. They will add to the cost of farming. D. They are more likely to carry some viruses.

A 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“They also ranked birds to... for instance, got a ‘gold star’ in the study.”可知,家燕可以为农田带来好处。

14. What mainly concerns the researchers?

- A. How to keep wild birds off farms.
- B. How to maximise the benefits of birds.
- C. How to run more farms with natural habitats.
- D. How to balance birds' protection and farm profits.

B 推理判断题。根据第五段中的“The best we can do is understand how to take advantage of the benefits while reducing the harm.”可推知,鸟类对农田的作用是双面的,鸟类无法也不能被驱离,所以如何趋利避害成为农业从业者主要关心的问题。专家的建议是最大限度地利用鸟类对农业积极的那一面。

15. Which of the following is a suitable title for the text?

- A. More Birds, More Strawberries
- B. Farms—the Natural Habitats of Wild Birds
- C. Bringing out the Best in Wild Birds on Farms
- D. The Natural Habitats of Birds Are Being Destroyed

C 标题归纳题。根据第一段中的“A study showed that farms with surrounding natural habitat experienced the most benefits from birds.”可知,“让农场的野生鸟类发挥最大的潜能”适合作文章标题。故选 C。

II. 七选五(共 5 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 12.5 分)

Farmers are often criticised for cutting down forests in some countries. But a new study suggests that many farmers recognise the value of keeping trees.

Researchers using satellite images found at least ten percent trees cover on more than one billion hectares of farmland. 16

The study found the most tree cover in South America. 17 North Africa and West Asia have the least. And it also found that climate conditions alone could not explain the tree cover in different areas. 18 There are areas with few trees but also few people, and areas with many trees and many people. The findings suggest that things like land rights, markets or government policies can influence tree planting and protection.

Dennis Garrity heads the World Agroforestry Centre. 19 The problem, he says, is that policymakers and planners have been slow to recognise this and to support such efforts.

The satellite images may not show what the farmers are using the trees for, but trees provide nuts, fruit, wood and other products. They provide windbreaks and shade. 20 Even under drought conditions, trees can often provide food and a way to earn money until the next growing season.

- A. Almost all of it is covered by trees.
- B. That is almost half the farmland in the world.
- C. They also help prevent soil loss and protect water supplies.
- D. He says farmers are acting on their own to protect and plant trees.
- E. Next comes Africa south of the Sahara, followed by Southeast Asia.
- F. He devotes most of his time to making people realise its importance.
- G. Nor could the size of nearby populations, meaning people and trees can live together.

答案:16~20 BEGDC

III. 完形填空(共 15 小题;每小题 1 分,满分 15 分)

Harry Saleen, an obese man with too much money and power, faced a choice. Outside his office waited his personal doctor, bringing him the important news about the 21 medicine that could save his life. On

the other side of the world, one of his engineers waited for his decision on an important matter of business.

His secretary asked him 22 she could bring the doctor in. The billionaire businessman made his decision. “No. Let the fool wait,” answered Saleen. “Business comes first.” 23 the health problem caused by his huge weight, he was still crazy about making money. He raised a 24 finger, and one of his staffs 25 to switch on a large television set.

On the screen appeared his engineer. They talked by satellite directly to each other although they were thousands of miles 26. “It’s all ready to explode, Mr Saleen,” he said. “Just one 27.” His engineer was standing above Pakan Valley in South America. A few months ago, it had been a rainforest. Then Saleen’s men came, cutting down all the valuable trees and 28 the villagers to move out. 29 the valley, a dam had been built. This would provide power for the factories that Saleen planned to build in that area. The factories would bring him great 30. He saw no reason to delay. He ordered the engineer to press the button. There, in the valley, a cloud of dust rose, followed by a dull explosion. A large river changed its 31 and water flooded into the valley.

“Good, that’s it. Now, get that doctor in here,” he 32.

The doctor came in with a worried look and started to examine his 33 patient. “You are doing very well, Mr Saleen. The medicine can save your life, but the difficulty is getting more of it.”

“Can you get more? Money is no problem,” Saleen said. “Tell me what you need and we’ll get it.” “The medicine was made of a plant, which is 34. There is only one place in the world where the plant grows.”

“Where?” asked the businessman, 35.

The doctor smiled. “Well, luckily, the plant comes from one of the lands you own, sir. It comes from a place in South America, known as Pakan Valley.”

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了一个有钱人为了商业利益开发了一片热带雨林,但却因此失去了能够治疗自己疾病的植物。

21. A. amazing B. interesting C. heart-breaking D. important

D 根据下文的“that could save his life”可知,这种药材非常重要。

22. A. that B. whether C. until D. unless

B 他的秘书问他是否能把这名医生带进来。“22 she could bring the doctor in”是一个宾语从句,引导词在从句中不作任何成分,表示“是否”的含义,所以用 whether。

23. A. Besides B. Despite C. Instead D. Except

B 尽管庞大的体重已经造成了他的健康问题,但是他依然疯狂地赚钱。

24. A. rough B. strong C. fat D. numb

C 根据上文的“the health problem caused by his huge weight”可知,Harry Saleen 是一个过度肥胖的人,所以他的手指必然很胖。

25. A. began B. stopped C. hesitated D. hurried

D 他举起一个手指,他的一个职员就匆忙地打开电视。

26. A. apart B. away C. far D. aside

A 尽管他们相隔几千英里,他们可以通过卫星直接对话。此处 apart 表示两者“相距”。

27. A. look B. word C. moment D. while

B 一切准备就绪,就等老板一句话。one word 表示“一句话”,是固定短语。

28. A. forcing B. asking C. forbidding D. stopping

A 根据下文的“This would provide power for the factories that Saleen planned to build in that area.”可

知,此处应表示迫使村民们搬走。

29. A. Above B. Along C. Through D. Across
D 横穿山谷,一座水坝被建造。
30. A. profits B. advantages C. preference D. achievements
A 这个工厂将给他带来巨大的利润。
31. A. branch B. location C. routine D. course
D 山谷被炸后,那条大河立刻改变了流向,淹没了山谷。
32. A. recognised B. recommended C. commanded D. suggested
C 生意上的事情结束后,他命令人把医生带来。
33. A. healthy B. wealthy C. worried D. frightened
B 根据上文的“The billionaire businessman made his decision.”可知,医生进来后,给这个有钱的病人做检查。
34. A. common B. usual C. rare D. normal
C 根据下文的“There is only one place in the world where the plant grows.”可知,这种能制成救命药的植物只有一个地方能找到,是非常罕见的。
35. A. delightedly B. thoughtfully C. impatiently D. cautiously
C 听到能找到救命药草的消息,这个商人不耐烦地问那种植物在哪里。

IV. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分 15 分)

Mount Wuyi is lying at the junction (交叉点) of Fujian and Jiangxi Provinces. It is among **36. the** first group of China's top tourist cities. In December 1999, Mount Wuyi **37. was listed** (list) as a UNESCO World Heritage site.

With rich tourism **38. resources** (resource), Mount Wuyi is a famous tea centre in China. As early as the Western Zhou Dynasty (1046 BC to 771 BC), it was well-known **39. as** a place of interest. It has a species-rich ecosystem, with 2,527 kinds of plant species **40. and** about 5,000 species of wild animals. Mount Wuyi belongs to typical Danxia landform. Except for the **41. amazing** (amaze) Danxia landform here, the Daoism culture and tea culture also attract tourists at home and abroad, **42. especially** (especial) those coming from Singapore and Malaysia.

Mount Wuyi Scenic Area **43. is** (be) quite large. Attractions in the mountain are dotted (点缀) and the distance between each other is quite long. It is not recommended **44. to visit** (visit) all the sites in the mountain, but to some main attractions. With the ticket, you can reach all the attractions **45. including** (include) Heavenly Tour Peak, Wuyi Palace, Dahongpao Tea Trees, Water Curtain Cave, etc.

V. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

第一节 应用文写作(满分 15 分)

假如你是晨光中学高二学生李华,最近你利用节假日和其他同学一起参加了一个为期三天的野外生存训练项目(Wilderness Survival Programme),请你写一篇英文发言稿简要介绍一下此次活动,要点包括:

1. 简要介绍活动情况(翻过两座山,穿越森林,自己生火做饭等);
2. 谈谈你的感想;
3. 希望今后再参加此类活动。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯;

3. 开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数。

【参考范文】

Hello, everyone!

I feel honoured to make a speech here on behalf of all the students. We've just finished our Wilderness Survival Programme, which lasted three days. We climbed two hills and travelled through a forest. As soon as we arrived at the campsite, we put up our tents, made a fire and then started cooking. It was quite an unforgettable experience for me.

Through the programme, we learned to apply knowledge gained in class to solve problems. It not only impresses on us the importance of discipline but also teaches us how to cooperate with others. Armed with these qualities, we'll be able to deal with difficulties better in the future.

Hopefully, we can participate in such meaningful activities again in the future.

Thanks!

第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Surviving Mount Rainier

Bad luck and poor timing left Kart and three climbers stuck on Mount Rainier for several long days. They faced mountain climbing's toughest tests. One man suffered altitude sickness; ice and rockfall rained down at night; cold nights in a tent that got torn left them hypothermic (体温过低的). Calm, confidence, skill and the courage to continue up the challenging route, despite illness and injury, likely saved their lives.

The climbers set out on a Friday, camping low on the route the first night because they were concerned about rockfall after a climber had recently died in an accident at the route's typical high camp. On Saturday, at about 10,500 feet, one of the climbers became sick from the altitude, which began to slow them down. They needed to keep moving, so they put him in the lead so he could move at a pace he was comfortable with.

By Sunday evening, the ill climber was exhausted, and they had to make an unplanned camp on steep snow. They were in a bad place—on a platform about the size of a table under an ice cliff. The wind got stronger during the night, ripping the tent and snapping the poles. They tried to secure it by placing their packs and rocks around the edges. Finally, they just stuck their feet between the rocks and held the tent with their bodies. It was a cold night.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

【参考范文】

On Monday, they managed to call 911 but forgot to ask how to communicate with the rangers (护林员) before losing signals. They set up what was left of the tent as best they could and stayed where they were, praying for the early arrival of their salvation. But for several days, they watched beyond all hope as high winds prevented the rangers' attempts at a helicopter rescue. Their food was running out and they shared a single bottle of snow melt each day. Then an icefall buried their tent platform and squeezed them together. It was impossible to climb down.

On Wednesday, they gathered everything and decided to carry on with their climb. They climbed up slowly and carefully, resting when they were weak. It didn't take long until the wind froze them in place. That was the scariest moment. Their spirits began to sink and they started to doubt if they could continue. Kart thought of all the people who loved him, and it really hit him that they must be worried. As he tried to climb again and again, he just kept yelling out to his friends, "We have to get there." However, as they got onto the final slope to the summit, the weather cleared up. Suddenly, a helicopter appeared out of nowhere. They were rescued.

单元概览

学习导航

The theme of this unit is humans and nature, whose topic is survival. The contents from the Antarctic work, the survival of wild animals in the city, Robinson Crusoe’s desert island survival story, a variety of survival crises humans may face in the future, to human exploration of Mars as a survival option. These contents cause students to think about survival and the environment. On the one hand, the unit aims at strengthening students’ awareness of protecting the environment and Earth, establishing the concept of harmonious coexistence with nature. On the other hand, it encourages students to learn to adapt to changes in the environment, calmly face various difficulties, and establish a correct outlook on life and the world.

学习目标

| 核心 素养 | 具体要求 | | |
|----------|---|----|--|
| 语言 能力 | 语言 知识 | 词汇 | 能恰当运用与环境、人类生存相关的单词和词组对目标内容进行描述。 |
| | | 语法 | 合理运用“-ever”和“no matter+疑问词”所引导的让步状语从句表达观点。 |
| | | 语篇 | 基于本单元提供的说明文、告示牌、新闻报道、广告、知识小测试、生存探索计划等多模态语篇,综合运用各种语言技能,读懂与环境、人类生存相关的语篇内容。 |
| | | 语用 | 能积极使用与环境、人类生存相关的背景知识、英语词汇谈论与环境、人类生存相关的话题,并能讲述与环境、人类生存相关的范例,从不同渠道对环境及人类的生存问题加以了解。 |
| | 语言 技能 | 听 | 听懂谈论《鲁滨逊漂流记》的对话并理解询问观点的语用功能。 |
| | | 说 | 恰当使用所学语言阐述与“克服危机、赢得生存机会”相关的话题,描述困境之下的生存故事。 |
| | | 读 | 综合运用各种语言技能,读懂与环境、人类生存相关的语篇内容。 |
| | | 写 | 能恰当使用所学语言阐述与“克服危机、赢得生存机会”相关的话题,描述困境之下的生存故事,深化对单元主题意义的理解,加强关爱自然、保护地球的意识。 |
| 学习 能力 | 能恰当运用各种学习策略,在自主、合作与探究式学习的过程中,结合单元所提供的反思性和评价性问题,不断监控、评价、反思和调整自己的学习内容和进程,激发英语学习的兴趣,提高自己的理解能力和表达能力,最终促进自身语言能力、文化意识、思维品质和学习能力的综合提升。 | | |
| 文化 意识 | 能强化保护环境、保护地球的意识,树立人与自然是和谐相处的观念,学会适应环境的变化,冷静面对各种困难,锤炼不屈不挠的探索精神,树立正确的人生观和世界观。 | | |

| | |
|----------|--|
| 核心 素养 | 具体要求 |
| 思维 品质 | 能运用单元所学内容,表达自己对适者生存的看法并寻求依据予以论证,通过小组合作制作荒岛生存指南,感悟在逆境中不断努力、积极应对各种困难的精神,树立积极向上的人生态度。 |

◦ 必备知识

| | |
|----------|--|
| 必背 单词 | fox, crime, suburb, greedy, thief, commit, urban, garbage, lamb, garlic, estimate, appreciate, crucial, restrict, hiker, kit, optimistic, clay, cave, fuel, consumption, react, monthly, Mars, nuclear, orbit, agency, consist, infer, expose, astronaut, dust, capsule, exposure, trunk |
| 重点 表达 | in one's way, have no choice but to do, fit in with, under construction, out of reach, crash into, amount to |
| 重点 知识 | 1. “only+状语”置于句首引起的部分倒装 2. can 表示对客观事实的推测 |
| 单元 语法 | “疑问词+ever”或“no matter+疑问词”引导的让步状语从句 |
| 单元 写作 | 生存故事 |

探 · 究 · 构 · 建

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas— Comprehending

学习任务目标

1. Give a brief explanation in English about the contents of the six pictures.
2. Have a preliminary understanding of the life situation in Antarctica, and express your own views on the difficulties and challenges you face.
3. Learn not to bow your heads in the face of difficulties, and actively respond.
4. Be familiar with the topic, and obtain the meaning of the article through skimming.

○ 自主式预习 ○

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一) 核心词汇

1. crime *n.* 罪, 罪行
2. greedy *adj.* 贪婪的, 贪心的
3. thief *n.* 小偷, 贼
4. commit *v.* 犯(错误或罪行)
5. suburb *n.* 郊区, 城郊
6. estimate *v.* 估计, 估算
7. appreciate *v.* 欣赏; 赏识
8. crucial *adj.* 至关重要的, 关键性的
9. container *n.* 容器
10. urban *adj.* 城镇的, 城市的
11. restrict *v.* 限制, 控制
12. under construction 在建设中
13. figure out 想出; 理解; 弄清
14. run away 逃跑, 走掉, 逃脱
15. throw away 扔掉, 抛弃
16. crash into 闯入; 撞到……上

17. out of reach 够不着

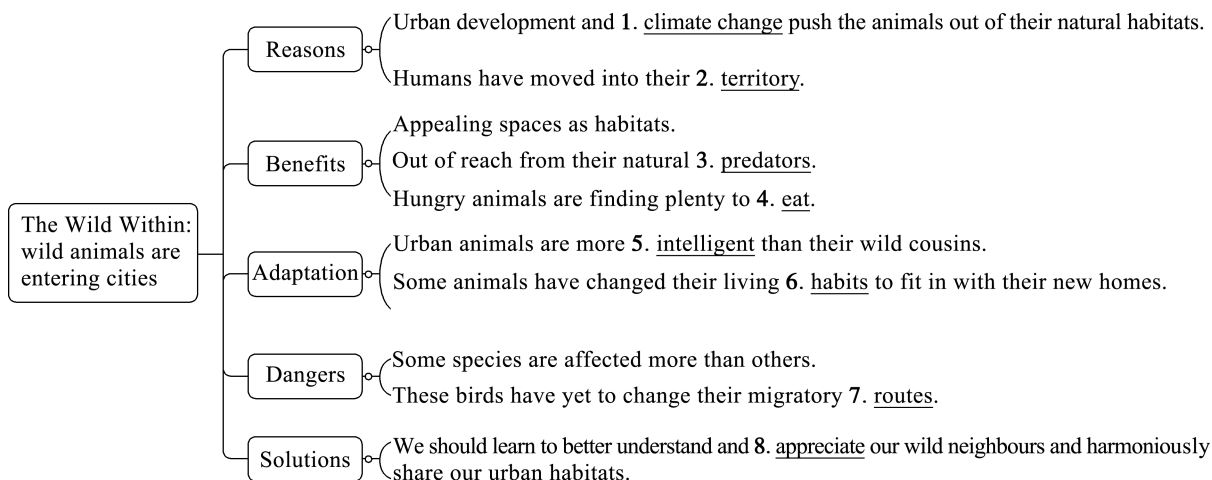
(二) 阅读词汇

1. garbage *n.* 垃圾
2. newcomer *n.* 新来者
3. lamb *n.* 羔羊肉
4. flourish *v.* 生长茂盛, 兴盛
5. seaside *adj.* 海滨的
6. fox *n.* 狐狸
7. predator *n.* 掠食动物, 捕食性动物
8. racoon *n.* 浣熊
9. kebab *n.* 烤(肉)串
10. garlic *n.* (大)蒜
11. migratory *adj.* 迁徙的
12. fit in with 与……相适应
13. in one's way 挡道的; 妨碍人的
14. have no choice but to do 别无选择, 只能做……
15. get a taste for 尝试, 体验
16. amount to 相当于, 总计为

任务型课堂

文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text.



文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text.

- Why wasn't the thief arrested?
 - Because the thief ran away quickly.
 - Because the police didn't notice it.
 - Because the thief was an animal.
 - Because there was no policeman around.
- What isn't the reason for pushing the animals out of their natural habitats?
 - Urban development.
 - Humans have moved into their territory.
 - Climate change.
 - There was no food left for them.
- What can we know according to Paragraph 3?
 - Our cities become greener and attract animals to live in.
 - The animals living in the cities can also meet their natural predators.
 - The newcomers are easy to be attracted by humans.
 - Hungry animals cannot find plenty to eat in our houses.
- What's one of the crucial things to the increasing number of "urban animals"?
 - Their ability to adapt.
 - Humans don't disturb them.
 - There are few predators.
 - They live together with other animals.

答案: 1~4 CDAA

语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them.

- However true this is, we also need to consider that some of these so-called "urban animals" have never moved at all—it's we humans who have moved into their territory.
 [句子分析] 本句是一个主从复合句。其中 However 引导让步状语从句; that 引导宾语从句; it's we humans who have moved into their territory 是一个强调句。
 [尝试翻译] 无论事实如何, 我们也需要考虑到, 在这些所谓的“城市动物”中, 有一些根本就没有迁徙过——是我们人类搬到了它们的领地里。
- There is evidence that urban raccoons are more intelligent than their wild cousins, as they frequently have to figure out difficult problems such as how to open rubbish bins and other containers which they would not find in the wild.
 [句子分析] 本句是一个主从复合句。其中 that 引导同位语从句, 作名词 evidence 的同位语; as 引导原因状语从句; which 引导定语从句, 修饰名词 rubbish bins and other containers。
 [尝试翻译] 有证据显示, 城市里的浣熊比野生的同类更聪明, 因为它们时常要想办法解决难题, 比如怎么打开垃圾桶以及其他在野外不会见到的容器。
- One theory behind this is that these birds have yet to change their migratory routes that take them through cities with high-rise buildings.
 [句子分析] 本句是一个主从复合句。其中第一个

that 引导表语从句;第二个 that 引导定语从句,修饰名词 routes。

[尝试翻译]一种理论认为,这些鸟类的迁徙路线让它们穿过这些有高楼大厦的城市,而它们还没有调整路线。

○思维品质培养

Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions.

1. Why did the author mention the crime in a seaside

suburb of Cape Town?

To introduce the topic that wild animals are entering cities.

2. In your opinion, is it necessary to change the situation? Can we change the situation and what should we humans do?

略

Unit 6 课后素养评价 (二十一)

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

I. 阅读理解

Snow leopards (雪豹) are so rare and hard to photograph that scientists aren't even sure how many of these endangered animals still live in the wild.

The Snow Leopard Conservancy (SLC) set up 20 cameras in Russia in 2010 to learn more about the big cats. After a full six months, they had exactly zero picture! That's when the organisation understood they needed help. And the only people who could help them in finding the leopards were the very people from whom they wanted to protect the animals—local hunters (猎人).

Hunting snow leopards is against the law in Russia, but in the terrible climate of Siberia, the few people living there had to turn to poaching (盗猎) to feed their families.

In 2013, Russian naturalist Sergei Spitsyn approached Mergen Markov, a local hunter, and told him his project. Markov agreed to set up the camera where he knew he would find leopards, and it worked.

Markov, once a poacher, works full time for the conservationists now and has 10 cameras monitoring leopards. "I visit each camera once a month. I have known this whole region since I was a child," he said proudly.

The World Wildlife Fund (WWF) began working with other local villagers. The village would be paid 40,000 rubles at the end of the year if the image of a snow leopard is caught. The WWF also rents horses from the villagers so that they do not need to make money by poaching anymore. "Today there are far fewer leopard poachers but leopards

still get caught in traps set for other animals, so I have to stay watchful," said Markov.

Changing guns for cameras has made a big difference in the lives of these former poachers, the village, and the Russian snow leopards. The number of snow leopards has been rising and their population is expected to recover to normal levels within 10 years.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。为了弄清楚有多少雪豹生存在野外,雪豹保护协会安装摄像头去拍摄雪豹的照片。因为没有拍到照片,协会找猎人帮忙。在拍照过程中,猎人借此获得报酬,因此不再捕杀雪豹,雪豹的数量得以持续增加。

1. Why was no picture of snow leopards taken in six months?

- A. SLC's 20 cameras failed to work properly.
- B. The number of snow leopards in the wild was too small.
- C. The local poachers destroyed these cameras on purpose.
- D. The researchers knew little about the animal's living habits.

B 推理判断题。根据第一段的内容可知,雪豹是濒危动物,由于其数量少,所以很难被拍摄到。由此可推断出,六个月内没有拍到雪豹的照片是因为雪豹的数量太少了。故选 B。

2. What did Sergei Spitsyn persuade Markov to do?

- A. Find the poachers.
- B. Repair cameras in the forest.
- C. Catch more leopards.
- D. Work for SLC.

D 推理判断题。根据第四段中的“Markov agreed to set up the camera where he knew he would find leopards, and it worked.”及第五段中

的“Markov, once a poacher, works full time for the conservationists now...”可知, Sergei Spitsyn 找到猎人 Mergen Markov 是为了让他帮忙拍摄雪豹的照片, Mergen Markov 现在全职为自然资源保护主义者工作。由此推断出, Sergei Spitsyn 劝说 Markov 为雪豹保护协会工作。故选 D。

3. Why did the WWF begin working with local villagers?

- A. To get some pictures of snow leopards.
- B. To help villagers make a living.
- C. To prevent villagers from hunting animals.
- D. To rent their horses at a low price.

A 细节理解题。根据第六段中的“The World Wildlife Fund (WWF) began working with other local villagers. The village would be paid 40,000 rubles at the end of the year if the image of a snow leopard is caught.”可知, 世界自然基金会与当地村民合作是为了获取雪豹的图像。故选 A。

4. How can we describe the WWF's cooperation with the villagers?

- A. Practice makes perfect.
- B. Curiosity kills the cat.
- C. Kill two birds with one stone.
- D. Old habits die hard.

C 推理判断题。根据第六段中的“The village would be paid 40,000 rubles... to make money by poaching anymore.”可知, 如果获取到雪豹的图像, 该村将在年底得到 4 万卢布的报酬。世界自然基金会还向村民租借马匹, 这样他们就不需要再通过偷猎赚钱了。世界自然基金会和当地村民的合作既可以帮助基金会获取雪豹的图像, 又可以帮助当地村民赚钱, 一箭双雕。故选 C。

II. 七选五

Are you sometimes stressed? Singing is a simple and effective way to reduce stress. It is beneficial mainly in the following three aspects.

Physical Benefits

1 This is especially recommended for the elders and those who have some form of disability in their voice. However, it is important to find a

capable instructor to employ good singing techniques so as not to further damage vocal cords (声带) or lungs.

Singing also helps to improve your posture (姿势). Most people think that singing begins and ends with their mouth. 2 Singing practice will get you used to the proper body position of standing and help you form the good habit of standing straight.

Emotional Benefits

Singing helps in reducing your depression and lowering your stress level. When you sing, your body releases chemicals that make you feel happy, easing the tension and helping you to relax. 3

Social Benefits

The social benefits of singing are huge. 4 So people who suffer from stage fright are advised to sing in front of family and friends before a live performance.

Singing is also very good for improving your communication skills. It is said that singing to babies helps to prepare their brains for language and may lessen the risk of language problems later in life. 5 The time spent in group singing, whether in a choir or at karaoke, creates a deep and lasting bond of friendship.

- A. Try to regain your memory by singing.
- B. First, it can help build up your confidence greatly.
- C. When you sing, you can give your lungs a workout.
- D. Singing helps you to strengthen your immune system.
- E. For adults, singing also enlarges your circle of friends.
- F. In fact, the position of each body part affects your voice.
- G. So, start to sing your favourite song next time you are feeling upset.

答案: 1~5 CFGBE

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas— Language points

学习任务目标

1. Understand the general idea of each paragraph and the main message of the text.
2. Master the new words and expressions in the text.
3. Think carefully about how to coordinate the relationship between social development and wildlife protection, so as to achieve ecological balance.

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. If you live in the **suburbs**, you live in an area of houses outside the centre of a city or large town.
郊区, 城郊
2. A **predator** is an animal that kills and eats other animals.
捕食性动物
3. **Garlic** has a very strong smell and taste and is used in cooking.
大蒜
4. Please put the **garbage** in the dustbin.
垃圾
5. **Thieves** got away with computer equipment worth \$ 30,000.
小偷, 贼
6. There is no doubt that parents play a **crucial** role in preparing their child for school.
至关重要的

II. 拓展词汇知变形

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|------------------------------------|--|
| <u>crime</u> <i>n.</i> 罪, 罪行 | <u>criminal</u> <i>adj.</i> 犯罪的, 犯法的 |
| <u>commit</u> <i>v.</i> 犯(错误或罪行) | <u>commitment</u> <i>n.</i> 承诺; 许诺; (对工作或某活动) 献身; 奉献; 投入 |
| <u>urban</u> <i>adj.</i> 城镇的, 城市的 | <u>urbanisation</u> <i>n.</i> 城市化, 都市化 |
| <u>container</u> <i>n.</i> 容器 | <u>contain</u> <i>v.</i> 包含, 含有; 容纳; 控制 |
| <u>estimate</u> <i>v.</i> 估计, 估算 | <u>estimation</u> <i>n.</i> 判断, 评价, 看法 |
| <u>restrict</u> <i>v.</i> 限制, 控制 | <u>restriction</u> <i>n.</i> 限制, 控制 |
| <u>appreciate</u> <i>v.</i> 欣赏; 赏识 | <u>appreciation</u> <i>n.</i> 欣赏; 理解, 体谅; 同情; 感激, 感谢 <u>appreciative</u> <i>adj.</i> 感激的, 感谢的; 欣赏的; 赏识的 |

III. 补全短语

1. under construction 在建设中
2. figure out 想出; 理解; 弄清
3. out of reach 够不着
4. fit in with 与……相适应
5. in one's way 挡道的; 妨碍人的
6. have no choice but to do 别无选择, 只能做……
7. get a taste for 尝试, 体验
8. amount to 相当于, 总计为

IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: as if 引导表语从句

With foxes in London, mountain lions in San Francisco and wild pigs in Hong Kong, it is almost as if our cities are being taken over by wild animals.

伦敦出现了狐狸, 旧金山出现了美洲狮, 香港出现了野猪, 好像我们的城市正被野生动物占领。

2. 句型公式: however 引导让步状语从句

However true this is, we also need to consider that some of these so-called “urban animals” have never moved at all...

无论事实如何, 我们也需要考虑到, 在这些所谓的“城市动物”中, 有一些根本就没有迁徙过……

3. 句型公式: that 引导同位语从句

There is evidence that urban raccoons are more intelligent than their wild cousins, as they frequently have to figure out difficult problems... 有证据显示, 城市里的浣熊比野生的同类更聪明, 因为它们时常要想办法解决难题……

4. 句型公式: “only+状语”置于句首引起的部分倒装

Only then can we look towards harmoniously sharing our urban habitats.

只有那时, 我们才能展望与它们和谐分享城市栖息地的未来。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. commit v. 犯(错误或罪行)

[教材原文] No matter how many crimes he **committed**, the police were powerless to arrest him.

不管他犯罪多少次,警察都无法逮捕他。

[归纳拓展]

(1) commit oneself to (doing) sth. 承诺/致力于(做)某事,其中 to 为介词,后面接名词或动名词。

(2) commitment *n.* 承诺;许诺;(对工作或某活动)献身;奉献;投入

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① They were reluctant to commit themselves to giving (give) an opinion.

② The company's commitment (commit) to providing quality at a reasonable price has been vital to its success.

(2) 写作微练

(读后续写之行为描写)她**致力于帮助**社区里的人们。

She committed herself to helping the people in the community.

2. assume v. 假定,假设;认为

[教材原文] Most of us would **assume** that urban development and climate change are responsible for pushing the animals out of their natural habitats.

我们大多数人会认为,城市发展和气候变化是造成这些动物离开其自然栖息地的原因。

[归纳拓展]

(1) assume sb. to be... 假定某人是……

It is (generally) assumed that... 人们(普遍)认为……

(2) assumption *n.* 假定,假设

(3) assumed *adj.* 假定的,假设的

(4) assuming *conj.* 假设……为真,假如

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① It is generally assumed (assume) that stress is

caused by too much work.

② We are working on the assumption (assume) that everyone invited will turn up.

③ Assuming (assume) that you're chosen to be the leader, what will you do?

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之演讲稿)人们**假定**人工智能将在未来几十年不断推动各个行业变革。

It is assumed that artificial intelligence will continue to revolutionise various industries in the coming decades.

3. appreciate v. 欣赏;赏识

[教材原文] However they adapt to our ways of urban living, it's important that we get a better understanding of and even learn to **appreciate** our wild neighbours.

无论它们如何适应我们的城市生活方式,重要的是我们要更好地理解甚至学会欣赏我们的野生邻居。

[归纳拓展]

(1) appreciate + *n.* / *pron.* / *v.-ing* 感激……

I would appreciate it if... 如果……我将不胜感激。

(2) appreciation *n.* 欣赏;理解,体谅;同情;感激,感谢

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① We would appreciate you letting (let) us know of any problem.

② It helps to develop an appreciation (appreciate) of poetry and literature.

③ We really appreciated it when she offered to help.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之求助信)如果你能尽快回复我的邮件,我将**非常感激**。

I would appreciate it if you could reply to my email as soon as possible.

4. “only + 状语”置于句首引起的部分倒装

[教材原文] **Only then can** we look towards harmoniously sharing our urban habitats.

只有那时,我们才能展望与它们和谐分享城市栖息地的未来。

[归纳拓展]

(1)“only+状语从句”置于句首时,从句不用倒装,要用部分倒装的是主句。

(2)“only+主语”置于句首时,句子不用倒装结构。

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

① Only when he reached the teahouse did he realise it was the same place he had been in the last year.

② Only by increasing the number of doctors by 30% can the patients be treated properly in this hospital.

③ Only by following this method are we able to study English well.

④ Only when he apologises for his rudeness will/shall I speak to him again.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之建议信)只有用这种方法你才能解决这个问题。

Only in this way can you solve the problem.

多义词汇 专练

1. **commit**: A. *v.* 犯(错误或罪行) B. *v.* 承诺,保证
C. *v.* 全心全意投入(工作、活动等) D. *v.* 花(钱或时间)

① She **committed** herself fully to the role, giving an outstanding performance. C

② She **committed** several hours each day to studying for the exam. D

③ He **committed** a serious crime and is now facing years in prison. A

④ She **committed** to attending the meeting every week. B

2. **fox**: A. *n.* 狐狸 B. *n.* 狡猾的人

C. *v.* 使猜不透,使迷惑

① The puzzle was designed to **fox** even the most intelligent players. C

② Farmers often have to protect their chicken coops from cunning **foxes** looking for an easy meal. A

③ She's known as a **fox** in the business world for her cunning negotiation skills. B

Unit 6 课后素养评价(二十二)

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points

I. 单句语法填空

- Spotting the car with its window left (leave) open, the kind man helped to call the police.
- It is a pity that I feel powerless to help (help) those in trouble.
- However difficult life is, never lose your heart and you'll overcome all the difficulties one day.
- Most of us have little education so that we have no choice but to do (do) this kind of job.
- Shocking (shocking), this happens a lot more than people think.
- For the first two weeks, patients must be restricted (restrict) to their separate wards of the building.

- There is evidence that tobacco advertising is increasingly targeting young girls and women.
- Unable to attend (attend) the lecture tomorrow, the principal of the school decided to ask for a leave on the phone.
- She knew that, whatever she decided, her family was right behind her.
- Obviously, some people are simply greedy for power.

II. 短语填空

under construction; out of reach; amount to; fit in with; at a speed of

1. It's true that he could do the job, but would he fit in with the rest of the team?
2. This flight is now heading for Paris at a speed of about 900 kilometres an hour.
3. It was reported in the newspaper that the dead and wounded in the earthquake amounted to 6,000.
4. Every road is under construction. It's hard to get anywhere.
5. We all have dreams that can seem out of reach.

III. 完成句子

1. To be honest, it is human beings that should be responsible for global warming.
坦白说,人类应该为全球变暖负责。
2. Ida had no choice but to leave, sighing.
艾达别无选择,只能叹息着离开。
3. Only by understanding and learning from each other can we live together happily.
只有通过相互理解、彼此学习,我们才能快乐地生活在一起。
4. However fast he runs, he can't catch up with us.
无论他跑得多快,他也赶不上我们。
5. His voice sounds as if he had a cold.
他的声音听起来好像是感冒了似的。

IV. 完形填空

Many years ago, my dad was diagnosed with a terminal illness. He was unable to work at a(n) 1 job. He would be fine for quite a while, but would then fall suddenly 2 and have to be admitted to the hospital.

He wanted to do something to keep himself 3, so he decided to volunteer at the local children hospital. My dad loved kids. He would talk to them and play with them. Sometimes, he would 4 one of his kids. In certain instances, he would give comfort to the sad parents of these children.

One of his kids was a girl who had been admitted with a 5 disease that paralysed (使……瘫痪) her from the neck down. I don't know

the 6 of the disease, but I do know that it was very sad for a little girl. My dad decided to try to help her. He started 7 her in her room, bringing paints, brushes and paper. He stood the paper up 8 a backing, put the paintbrush in his mouth and began to paint. He didn't use his hands at all. Only his head would move. He would visit her 9 he could and paint for her. All the while he would tell her "see, you can do 10 you set your mind to".

Eventually, she began to paint using her mouth, and she and my dad became friends. Soon after, the little girl was discharged (允许出院). My dad also 11 the children hospital for a little while because he became ill. Sometime later after my dad had recovered and 12 to work, he was at the volunteer counter one day and 13 the front door open. In came the little girl who had been paralysed, but this time she was walking. She ran straight to my dad and hugged him really tight. She gave my dad a picture she had done using her 14. At the bottom it read, "thank you for helping me walk".

Sometimes love is more 15 than doctors, and my dad—who died just a few months after the little girl gave him the picture—loved every single child in that hospital.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了患病的父亲到儿童医院做志愿者,他用心关爱一位全身瘫痪的小女孩,在无私的爱的鼓励之下,小女孩最终恢复了健康。这个故事告诉我们有时候爱的力量甚至比医疗更强大。

1. A. important B. steady
C. easy D. good
B 根据下文内容可知,父亲的身体状态不稳定,自然无法做一份稳定的工作。
2. A. ill B. behind
C. asleep D. down
A 根据下文的“have to be admitted to the hospital”可知,父亲可能会突然发病。

3. A. well B. wealthy
C. busy D. healthy

C 根据第一段中的“a terminal illness”可知,他的病是绝症。他做志愿者是想让自己忙碌起来。

4. A. teach B. miss
C. lose D. treat

C 根据下文的“the sad parents of these children”可知,他们的孩子已经去世了。所以此处使用 lose “失去”。

5. A. special B. curious
C. strange D. rare

D 因为下句说“我”不知道疾病的名字,说明这种病比较少见,是罕见的疾病。

6. A. result B. reason
C. name D. course

C “我”不知道这种病的名字,但是“我”知道这对小女孩来说真的很难受。

7. A. observing B. drawing
C. painting D. visiting

D 他开始到女孩的病房看望女孩并给女孩带来了颜料、画笔和纸。

8. A. with B. across
C. against D. over

C 他把纸张竖起来靠着背垫,把画笔放在嘴里开始画画。父亲希望以这种方式教女孩用嘴绘画。

9. A. with whoever B. whenever
C. as if D. as soon as

B 每当他有空,他就会来看望女孩并为她绘画。

10. A. everything B. something
C. anything D. nothing

C 你可以做任何你下定决心做的事情。

11. A. left B. entered
C. rushed to D. stayed at

A 根据本句后半句父亲发病了可知,他不得不离开工作的医院。句中的“also”说明父亲和女孩一样,都要离开医院。

12. A. stopped B. returned
C. hesitated D. refused

B 父亲康复以后再次回到医院做志愿者工作。

13. A. pushed B. noticed
C. observed D. kicked

B 父亲回到医院工作后,有一天他注意到前门开了。

14. A. hands B. pens
C. paper D. mind

A 根据上文可知,小女孩已经康复了,她可以用双手绘画。

15. A. thankful B. useful
C. thoughtful D. powerful

D 本文中父亲用爱鼓励女孩战胜病魔。此处说明有时候爱的力量甚至比医疗更强大。

Section III Using language

学习任务目标

- 1. Understand the usage and characteristics of English adverbial clauses, and be able to use them in the real context.
- 2. Learn stories about survival, and think about how to deal with these crises and protect the living environment of mankind.
- 3. Pay attention to pragmatic functions, learn to ask for opinions, give opinions, express consent, and be able to use the words and sentences learned in real life.

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- 1. Burning fossil **fuels** uses oxygen and produces carbon dioxide. 燃料
- 2. **Firefighters** are people whose job is to put out fires. 消防队员
- 3. The weather here is so **fierce** that few plants can grow on the land. 恶劣的, 极端的
- 4. If you **supplement** something, you add something to it in order to improve it. 补充, 增补, 增加
- 5. There is a repair **kit** provided in the boot (汽车后部的行李箱) of each car. 成套工具
- 6. **Clay** is a type of heavy sticky earth that can be used for making pots, bricks, etc. 黏土
- 7. A **cave** is a large hole in the side of a cliff or hill, or one that is under the ground. 洞穴

II. 拓展词汇知变形

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|---|---|
| <u>hiker</u> <i>n.</i> 徒步旅行者, 远足者 | <u>hike</u> <i>n.</i> 远足, 徒步旅行 |
| <u>optimistic</u> <i>adj.</i> 乐观的; 乐观主义的 | <u>optimism</u> <i>n.</i> 乐观; 乐观主义 |
| | <u>optimist</u> <i>n.</i> 乐观的人; 乐天派 |
| <u>indoors</u> <i>adv.</i> 在室内 | <u>outdoors</u> <i>adv.</i> 在户外; 在野外 |
| <u>consumption</u> <i>n.</i> (精力、油、电等的) 消耗量 | <u>consume</u> <i>v.</i> 消耗, 耗费 (燃料、能量、时间等) |
| | <u>consumer</u> <i>n.</i> 消费者, 顾客, 用户 |

续表

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <u>react</u> <i>v.</i> (作出) 反应 | <u>reaction</u> <i>n.</i> 反应; 回应 |
| | <u>reactive</u> <i>adj.</i> 反应的; 有反应的 |
| <u>monthly</u> <i>adj.</i> 每月一次的 | <u>month</u> <i>n.</i> 月; 月份 |
| <u>eliminate</u> <i>v.</i> 消除, 根除 | <u>elimination</u> <i>n.</i> 除去, 消除 |

III. 补全短语

- 1. cope with 应付
- 2. be diagnosed with 被诊断出患……病
- 3. wrestle with 努力解决
- 4. get rid of 摆脱, 除去
- 5. bring... under control 使……处于控制之下
- 6. break out 爆发; 突然发生
- 7. split up 分离, 分裂
- 8. react to 对……作出反应

IV. 补全句子

- 1. 句型公式: regardless of + what 从句
She is determined to live a fulfilling life regardless of what the future holds ...
她下定决心过一种充实的生活, 不管未来会怎样……
- 2. 句型公式: 动词-ing 形式作主语
Spending time in the wild is highly rewarding, but it can be dangerous.
在野外花时间是值得的, 但是这可能会有危险。

3. 句型公式: wherever 引导让步状语从句

Wherever they go, animals find towns and cities

in their way.

不论走到哪里, 动物发现都有城镇拦路。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. optimistic adj. 乐观的; 乐观主义的

[教材原文] Robinson Crusoe is a clever and **optimistic** man.

鲁滨逊·克鲁索是一个聪明乐观的人。

[归纳拓展]

(1) be optimistic about... 对……乐观

(2) optimism *n.* 乐观; 乐观主义

(3) optimist *n.* 乐观的人; 乐天派

(4) pessimistic *adj.* 悲观的

be pessimistic about... 对……悲观

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① My good performance in the job interview left me optimistic about the future.

② I think you're being far too optimistic (optimist).

③ We may now look forward with optimism (optimistic).

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之劝慰信) 当面临挑战时我们应该保持乐观, 因为挑战往往带来成长的机会。

We should be optimistic when facing challenges, as they often bring opportunities for growth.

2. react v. (作出) 反应

[教材原文] How do people and organisations **react** to these crises?

人民和组织对这些危机作何反应?

[归纳拓展]

(1) react to 对……作出反应

react with 与……起化学反应

(2) reaction *n.* 反应; 回应

(3) reactive *adj.* 反应的; 有反应的

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① Iron reacts with water and oxygen to produce rust.

② His immediate reaction (react) was amused when he saw her.

③ A reactive (react) person is more likely to be influenced by external factors.

(2) 写作微练

(读后续写之情绪描写) 孩子们对老师的表扬作出反应, 露出灿烂的笑容并且表现出高涨的学习热情。

The children reacted to the teacher's praise with big smiles and increased enthusiasm for learning.

3. can 表示对客观事实的推测

[教材原文] Spending time in the wild is highly rewarding, but it **can** be dangerous.

在野外花时间是值得的, 但是这可能会有危险。

[归纳拓展]

(1) can 可以表示推测。can 用于肯定句时, 表示理论上的可能性, 至于实际情况如何, 则不作考虑, 而且没有具体的时间意义。其否定式 can't 是语气最强的否定推测, 译为“不可能, 一定不”。can 也可用于疑问句中表示推测。

(2) must 表示推测时只用于肯定句, 经常译成“一定”或“肯定”, 所作出的推测几乎接近事实, 语气最肯定。

(3) should/ought to 表示推测时常用于肯定句, 经常译成“应该”, 所作出的推测表示一种可能性或一种猜测或估计。

(4) may 和 might 表示推测时既可以用于肯定句也可以用于否定句, 一般不用于疑问句。

[即学即练]

(1) 根据汉语提示补全句子

① The man you saw just now can't be (不可能是) Michael, for he is in Beijing now.

② It is usually warm in my hometown in March, but it can be rather cold (可能会相当冷) sometimes.

③ Liza may/might not want (很可能不想) to go

on the trip, for she hates travelling.

④Although this may/might sound like (听起来可能像) a simple task, great care is needed.

⑤My cellphone is not in my bag. Where can I have put it (我有可能把它放在)?

⑥What do you mean that there are only ten tickets? There ought to/should be (应该有) twelve.

⑦The light is still on, so he must be at home (一定在家).

⑧Do what you can now or you may/might never be able to (可能永远也不能) do them all.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之建议信)网上购物可能很方便,但

也存在一些风险。

Shopping online can be convenient, but it also has some risks.

多义词汇 专练

fuel: A. *n.* 燃料 B. *v.* 给(交通工具)加油 C. *v.* 加强,刺激

①Coal and oil are both common **fuels** used for generating electricity. A

②The new research findings **fuelled** excitement among scientists about the possibility of a breakthrough. C

③Please remember to **fuel** the car before we leave for the airport. B

语法研习课

“疑问词+ever”或“no matter+疑问词”引导的让步状语从句

语法感知

①**No matter how** many crimes he committed, the police were powerless to arrest him.

②**However** true this is, we also need to consider that some of these so-called “urban animals” have never moved at all—it’s we humans who have moved into their territory.

③**Wherever** they go, animals find towns and cities in their way.

④**However** they adapt to our ways of urban living, it’s important that we get a better understanding of and even learn to appreciate our wild neighbours.

⑤**Whatever** the reasons behind these species entering our cities, one thing is for sure—as it’s often a means of their survival, they could be with us to stay.

以上句子皆为含有“疑问词+ever”或“no matter+疑问词”引导的让步状语从句。

语法精讲

1. **whatever/no matter what** 引导让步状语从句,意思是“不管什么,无论怎样”。

So don’t lose heart, **whatever** you do.
因此无论 you 做什么,都不要丧失信心。

Whatever I am, it’s useful to know foreign languages.

无论我做什么工作,懂外语总是有用的。

Whatever the old man was like, most of his scientific work was sound.

无论那位老人怎么样,他大部分的科研工作都是可靠的。

2. **whoever/no matter who** 引导让步状语从句,意思是“不管是谁,无论是谁”。

I like myself **no matter who** I am and I totally accept myself.

无论我是谁,我都喜欢我自己,并且我完全接受我自己。

No matter who did this, he would be punished.
不论是谁干的,他都将受到惩罚。

3. **wherever/no matter where** 引导让步状语从句,在从句中作地点状语。

Wherever/No matter where you go, never forget that you’re a Chinese.

无论你走到哪里,都不要忘了你是个中国人。

No matter where he is, you have to find him.
无论他在哪里,你必须找到他。

4. **whenever/no matter when** 引导让步状语从句,在从句中作时间状语。

I ensure I'll help you **no matter when** you have difficulties.

我保证无论你何时遇到困难,我都会帮助你。

No matter when you go, you can see her.

无论你何时去,你都能见到她。

5. however/no matter how 引导让步状语从句,在从句中作程度状语。

You must continue to see them **no matter how** much you may disagree with them.

无论你和他们之间有多大的分歧,你都得继续去看他们。

No matter how well you know Paris, it is easy to get lost.

不管你对巴黎多么熟悉,都容易迷路。

名师点拨

“疑问词+ever”和“no matter+疑问词”在很多情况下都可以译为“无论,不管……”,但在有些情况下不能相互替换。“疑问词+ever”可以分为两种类型:

① “疑问副词+ever”,比如 wherever, whenever 和 however,一般情况下只能引导让步状语从句,和“no matter+疑问副词”可以相互替换。例如“Whenever I visited her, she was busy with her work. (无论何时我去看她,她总是忙于工作。)”也可以说成“No matter when I visited her, she was busy with her work.”。

② “疑问代词+ever”,比如 whatever, whichever, whoever 和 whomever,既可以引导让步状语从句,又可以引导名词性从句。引导让步状语从句时,“疑问代词+ever”可以和“no matter+疑问代词”相互替换。例如“Whoever comes to the party, he/she will receive a gift. (无论谁来参加聚会,他/她都会收到一份礼物。)”也可以说成“No matter who comes to the party, he/she will receive a gift.”。但是引导名词性从句时,只能用“疑问代词+ever”,不能用“no matter+疑问代词”替换。例如“Whoever comes here will receive a gift. (无论谁来这里都会收到一份礼物。)”

语法冲关

I. 单句语法填空

- It is generally considered unwise to give a child whatever he or she wants.
- You can't come in, whoever you are.
- No matter where you go, we'll always be together.
- No matter when he arrives, we will wait for him.
- No matter how complicated the situation was, he could cope with it successfully.

II. 完成句子

- We are determined to fulfill the task, whatever/no matter what happens.
不管发生什么,我们下定决心完成这项任务。
- Whichever/No matter which of the two men had stolen her purse, Barbara was determined to find them.
不管是这两个男子中的谁偷了她的钱包,芭芭拉都决心找到他们。
- No matter when and how the invaders come, they will be wiped out clean.
无论侵略者什么时候来,怎样来,他们必将被消灭得一干二净。
- However amusing the story is, I have to put it away and focus my attention on study this week.
不管这个故事多么有趣,本周我都得把它收起来,集中精力学习。
- You should try to get a good night's sleep however much work you have to do.
无论你有什么工作要做,你都应该尽力晚上睡好。
- No matter who you are, you can do whatever you want in your life.
无论你是谁,在你的生命中,你都能做你想要做的事。

Unit 6 课后素养评价 (二十三)

Section III Using language

I. 词语填空

consumption; optimistic; react; get rid of; bring...
under control; struggle with; split up; wrestle
with

- The president says she is optimistic that an agreement can be worked out soon.
- He hoped to get rid of the pain in what was left of his knee.
- With more effective measures put in place, the disease has been brought under control.
- The laws have led to a reduction in fuel consumption in the US.
- The police said that they had reacted as fast as they could.
- We were split up into groups to discuss the question.
- We must wrestle with the problem at present.
- Many people struggle with depression as summer comes to an end.

II. 单句语法填空

- With a lot of problems to cope with, he had no time to have a good rest.
- What was Jeff's reaction (react) when you told him about the job?
- After the big hurricane, he lost contact with his family, causing great panic.
- Whatever weather it is, we will go to Beijing tomorrow.
- If the weather is fine, we'll go hiking (hike) this weekend.
- You can be paid in cash weekly or by cheque monthly (month); those are the two alternatives.
- However difficult it is, you must give up smoking to live a healthy life.
- Whenever my motherland needs me, I will go

back without hesitation.

- Regardless of what his parents said, he was determined to drop out of school.
- Wherever I go, I will miss my hometown where I had a happy childhood.

III. 阅读理解

The survival of about one fifth of the world's vertebrates—animals with a backbone—is considered threatened, according to new research published in the journal *Science*. That's a large fraction of Earth's animals, but this new study held some good news too. Conservation efforts by humans have slowed the loss of many species of amphibians (两栖动物), birds, and mammals. Losses in these groups would have been about 20 percent greater had it not been for recent action of protection.

Among the animal-conservation success stories is one about birds called Mauritius kestrels (红隼). In the 1970s, just four of these birds were left in the world. Through a special breeding programme, scientists were able to increase their number to about 1,000 and release them into the wild.

Humpback whales (座头鲸) have benefited greatly from recent conservation efforts as well. They were once on the International Union for Conservation of Nature's (IUCN) list of species threatened with extinction. But the species is now in less danger, thanks to laws that ban whale hunting. The IUCN even moved the humpback into "species of the least concern".

Over the past 100 years, the white rhino (犀牛) of South Africa has also made an amazing recovery because of habitat protection. The breed multiplied from just 50 animals to about 17,000. Their home has been turned into a protected area, safe from

poachers (people who hunt animals illegally) and other threats.

Stuart Butchart, one of the authors of the new study in *Science*, is encouraged by the positive effects of conservation. But he says, “Biodiversity (生物多样性) of species is in a frightening state. Its situation is getting worse. But our results show we can turn the situation around.”

New conservation policies hopefully are on the way. One hundred ninety-three countries recently met in Japan at the Convention on Biological Diversity to set goals for preserving threatened wildlife and their habitats. Only 1 percent of ocean and 12 percent of land areas were protected under earlier agreements. Two new goals set by the group are to designate (指定) 10 percent of the world’s ocean and 17 percent of land environments as protected areas to help increase endangered-animal population.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇环保类说明文。文章介绍了由于人类采取了一系列的保护措施,某些濒危动物的数量逐渐增加,但对于人类来说,保护物种多样性任重而道远。

1. What can we learn from the passage?

- A. Though there was a special breeding programme, the number of Mauritius kestrels didn’t increase.
- B. Conservation efforts should not only be made by human beings.

C. Humpback whales are not on the International Union for Conservation of Nature’s list now.

D. Because many groups are working to protect wildlife, natural habitats are in good condition.

C 推理判断题。根据第三段第二句和最后一句可知,座头鲸曾经在该联盟的名单上,但现在已被去掉。

2. What does the author want to show by using some successful animal-conservation examples?

- A. Conservation works.
- B. Man conquers nature.
- C. Animals are more important.
- D. Law is fair.

A 推理判断题。作者在文中引用毛里求斯红隼、座头鲸和南非白犀牛三个成功的例子,目的是表明人类的保护措施起了作用。

3. What’s the purpose of the new goals set by the Convention on Biological Diversity?

- A. To protect ocean habitats.
- B. To build land environments.
- C. To increase the population of endangered animals.
- D. To control animal population.

C 细节理解题。根据最后一段最后一句中的“to help increase endangered-animal population”可知,设立两项新目标的目的是增加濒危动物的种群。

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

学习任务目标

- 1. Understand the text, and learn the problems humans are facing and our plans for the future.
- 2. Complete the corresponding activities, and learn to infer more messages from the given text to strengthen the understanding of the text.
- 3. Understand the importance of protecting the earth and promote human spirit of exploration and adaptability.

○ 自主式预习 ○

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- 1. It is well-known that the Earth takes a year to **orbit** the Sun. 环绕……运行
- 2. The college students are active to crusade (长期坚定不移地奋斗) against the **nuclear** weapons. 核武器的
- 3. A Russian space **capsule** is currently orbiting the Earth. 太空舱
- 4. This pine tree looks tall and strong but actually its **trunk** is hollow (空心的). 树干
- 5. Neil Armstrong is said to be the first **astronaut** to walk on the moon. 宇航员

II. 拓展词汇知变形

| 教材词汇 | 拓展词汇 |
|--|---|
| <u>advanced</u> <i>adj.</i> 高级的; 先进的 | <u>advance</u> <i>n.</i> 前进; 进展 <i>v.</i> 前进 |
| | <u>advancement</u> <i>n.</i> 前进; 进步; 晋升, 提升 |
| <u>terrifying</u> <i>adj.</i> 极其可怕的, 骇人听闻的 | <u>terrify</u> <i>v.</i> 使恐惧, 使十分害怕, 使惊吓 |
| <u>agency</u> <i>n.</i> 机构; (尤指政府内的) 局, 部, 处 | <u>agent</u> <i>n.</i> (企业、政治等的) 代理人, 经纪人 |
| <u>expose</u> <i>v.</i> 使暴露 (于险境) | <u>exposure</u> <i>n.</i> 暴露 |
| <u>dust</u> <i>n.</i> 沙土, 尘土 | <u>dusty</u> <i>adj.</i> 布满灰尘的, 灰尘覆盖的 |
| <u>infer</u> <i>v.</i> 推断, 推定 | <u>inference</u> <i>n.</i> 推理; 推论; 推断; 结论 |

III. 补全短语

- 1. consist of 由……构成, 由……组成
- 2. be caught in 遭遇
- 3. lose contact with 与……失去联系
- 4. be exposed to 暴露于……
- 5. in detail 详细地
- 6. in the meantime 在此期间, 与此同时
- 7. wipe out 彻底摧毁, 消灭

IV. 补全句子

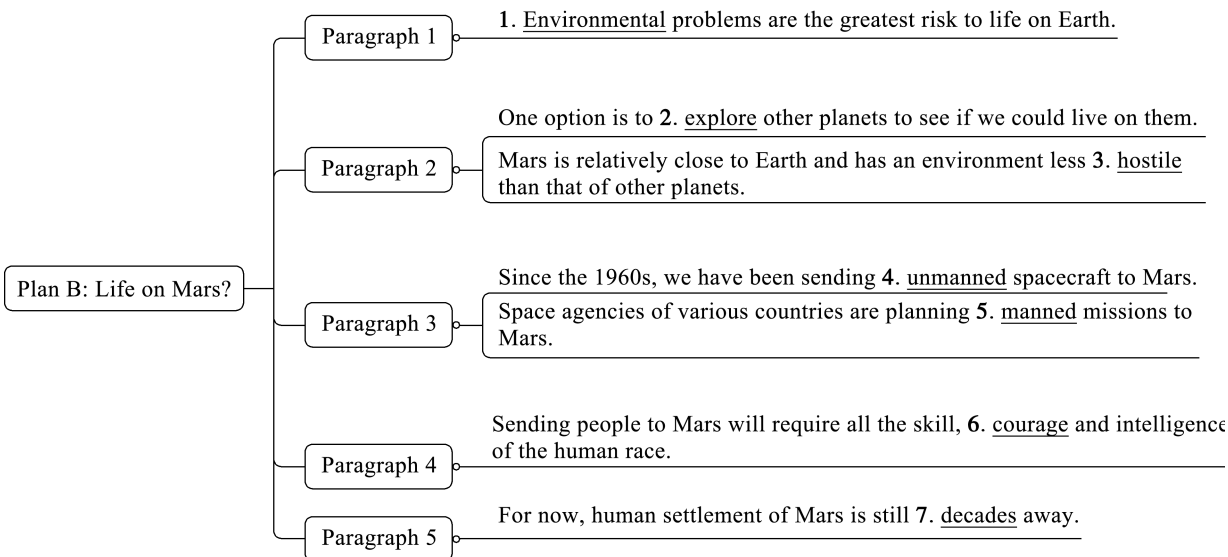
- 1. 句型公式: which 引导非限制性定语从句
The most likely choice is Mars, which is relatively close to Earth and has an environment less hostile than that of other planets.
最有可能的选择是火星, 它离地球相对较近, 环境也不像其他行星那么恶劣。
- 2. 句型公式: There is no doubt that...
There is no doubt that humankind is drawn towards Mars, with dreams of making it our second home.
毫无疑问, 人类被火星所吸引, 梦想着把它作为我们的第二个家园。
- 3. 句型公式: be to do
One option is to explore other planets to see if we could live on them.
一种选择是探索其他星球, 看看我们能否在上面生活。
- 4. 句型公式: “介词+关系代词”引导定语从句
It consisted of a closed space in which people, animals and plants could live together.
它由一个封闭的空间组成, 在那里人、动物和植物可以生活在一起。

任务型课堂

Part 1 课文理解

文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text.



文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text.

- In the author's opinion, what have taken over as the greatest risk to life on Earth today?
 - The wild animals.
 - The environmental problems.
 - War.
 - Information technology.
- What was the most likely place that could be made our second home?
 - The North Pole.
 - Mars.
 - The Arctic Ocean.
 - The sea.
- What did it require to send people to Mars?
 - A lot of money.
 - The most advanced technology.
 - All the skill, courage and intelligence of the human race.
 - Good environment.
- What can we learn from the text?
 - It won't be long before we can set foot on Mars.

- Global warming has no effect on the biosphere.
- Some countries have sent people to Mars.
- Before being able to live on another planet, we should take much better care of our planet.

答案: 1~4 BBCD

语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them.

- Encouraged by discoveries over the years, space agencies of various countries are planning manned missions to Mars that could take place within the next 25 years.

[句子分析] 本句是一个主从复合句。其中过去分词短语 Encouraged by discoveries over the years 作原因状语; that 引导定语从句, 修饰名词 missions。

[尝试翻译] 受到多年来这些发现的鼓舞, 各国航天机构正计划在未来 25 年内进行载人飞船登陆火星的任务。

- While the Moon can be reached within days, it would take months to reach Mars, travelling through dangerous solar radiation.

[句子分析] 本句是一个主从复合句。其中 While 引导让步状语从句, While 意为“尽管, 虽然”; 主句中, it 作形式主语, 不定式短语 to reach Mars 作真

正的主语;现在分词短语 travelling through dangerous solar radiation 作伴随状语。

[尝试翻译] 尽管到达月球只需要几天的时间,到达火星却需要数月的时间,并且其间要经历危险的太阳辐射。

○思维品质培养

Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions.

1. Why is Mars the most likely choice to live on for

humans?

Because it is relatively close to Earth and has an environment less hostile than that of other planets.

2. Would you like to be one of the first people to live on Mars? Why or why not?

略

Part 2 语言梳理

1. wipe v. 擦,拭,揩;擦掉(液体、污垢或印迹);抹掉(计算机、磁带或录像带上的信息等)

[教材原文] In the 1960s and 1970s, the greatest fear was that the human race, and possibly all advanced life forms on the planet, could be **wiped** out by nuclear missiles, just at the push of a button.

在20世纪六七十年代,最大的恐惧就是只需按下一个按钮,人类甚至地球上所有的高级生命形式,就可能被核导弹彻底毁灭。

[归纳拓展]

wipe out 彻底摧毁;消灭

wipe... from... 从……中抹掉……

[即学即练]

写作微练

①(读后续写之情绪描写)他生气地从名单上擦掉了自己的名字。

He angrily wiped out his name from the list.

②(应用文写作之报道)强烈的飓风摧毁了几个沿海城镇。

The powerful hurricane wiped out several coastal towns.

2. consist v. 组成

[教材原文] It **consisted** of a closed space in which people, animals and plants could live together. 它由一个封闭的空间组成,在那里人、动物和植物可以生活在一起。

[归纳拓展]

consist of 由……构成,由……组成

consist in 主要在于

consist with 和……一致;并存

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① The main body of the treaty consists of eight articles.

② The beauty of this picture consists in its balance of colours.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之演讲稿)幸福不在于你拥有多少财产。

Happiness does not consist in how many possessions you own.

3. expose v. 使暴露(于险境)

[教材原文] ... we can infer that the Moon is less **exposed** to dangerous radiation than Mars.

……我们可以推断,月球受到的危险辐射比火星要少。

[归纳拓展]

(1) expose... to... 使……暴露于;使……接触/体验……

be exposed to... 暴露于……

(2) exposure n. 暴露

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① He smiled suddenly, exposing (expose) a set of amazingly white teeth.

② We want to expose the kids to as much art and culture as possible.

③ The report said that workers had been exposed (expose) to high levels of radiation.

④ He was suffering from exposure (expose) and shock but his condition was said to be stable.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之建议信) 如果你接触不同的文化, 你可以拓宽自己的视野。

If you are exposed to different cultures, you can broaden your horizons.

多义词汇 专练

advanced: A. *adj.* 高级的, 高等的 B. *adj.* 先进的

C. *adj.* 晚期的, 后期的

① This is the most **advanced** type of engine available.

B

② The course is suitable for beginners and **advanced** students.

A

③ Medicare is available to victims of **advanced** kidney disease.

C

Unit 6 课后素养评价 (二十四)**Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection****I. 单词拼写**

- Is it a good idea to build nuclear (原子核的) power plants in developed cities?
- State agencies (机构) continue to cut budgets and support to a number of organisations.
- The teenagers are easy to get violent if they are exposed (暴露于) to violence.
- Yang Liwei is not only the first Chinese to go to space but also one of the greatest astronauts (航天员) in the world.
- It's terrifying (极其可怕的) to find myself surrounded by large numbers of horses.
- The branch has separated from the trunk (树干) of the tree.

II. 单句语法填空

- I always sit in the non-smoking section of restaurants to reduce my exposure (expose) to smoke.
- We have to acquire new and advanced (advance) knowledge to keep pace with the rapid development of science and technology.
- Our country is like a big family, consisting (consist) of fifty-six nations.
- It can be inferred (infer) from what the coach said that he was not satisfied with our performance in the final match.

III. 短语填空

go wrong; in the meantime; react to; wipe out;
have an effect on; at a time

- Someone allergic to milk is likely to react to cheese.
- If something goes wrong, you can get help from that person as soon as possible.
- Their house was wiped out in the big fire, leaving them have no place to live in.
- My first novel was rejected by six publishers. In the meantime I was running out of money.
- I'm told that the boats remain at sea for an average of ten days at a time.
- There is no doubt that the attitude of the leader can have an effect on the members of a team.

IV. 完成句子

- While I have made efforts to practise speaking English, I still can't speak it fluently.
虽然我努力练习说英语,但还是说不流利。
- There is no doubt that air pollution is an extremely serious problem, so strong measures should be taken to deal with it.
毫无疑问,空气污染是一个极其严重的问题,因此应该采取有力措施来处理它。
- The local guide introduced the history of tea-making, which had a great effect on the

foreigners to help them understand our tea-drinking culture.

当地的导游介绍了制茶的历史,这对帮助外国人理解我们的饮茶文化有很大的影响。

4. To be honest, she does benefit a lot from reading books.

说实话,她确实从读书中受益匪浅。

5. The only thing for you to do now is to apologise.
你现在唯一要做的事就是道歉。

V. 语法填空

The solar system was 1. dying (die) out. People all around the world built giant planet thrusters, to move Earth to a new star system. Yet the 2500 years' journey came with unexpected dangers. In order to save human beings, a group of young people in this age of a wandering earth came out 2. bravely (brave) and fought hard for everyone's 3. survival (survive). It is 4. an adaptation of Liu Cixin's *The Wandering Earth*.

Liu Cixin is a writer 5. who/that led a revolution in science fiction, becoming the first Chinese 6. awarded/to be awarded (award) the Hugo Award in 2015. Like Hollywood space movies where Americans are pictured as the only ones capable 7. of saving human beings, here Chinese astronauts are the adventurers among the global space community 8. determined (determine) to complete the task.

Regardless of the outcome for the history of mankind, Chinese astronauts have decided to choose hope. Hope is as precious 9. as diamond, which is the only way home. As the saying goes in the movie, among tens of thousands of matters, safety is the first one. 10. Irregular (regular) operations will make your loved ones shed tears.

VI. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

昨晚,本市的一座办公楼发生火灾。假设你是一名校报记者,请根据以下提示用英语写一篇报道,介绍火灾情况。

| | |
|------|---|
| 时间 | 昨晚 9 点 |
| 火情 | 1. 火焰夹杂着黑色浓烟从六楼冒出 2. 有煤气罐的爆炸声 3. 据说大火从一楼开始逐渐蔓延到楼顶 4. 一些窗户和砖墙因为火焰的高温而倒塌 |
| 人员伤亡 | 无 |
| 救援 | 1. 许多消防队员和消防车迅速赶到 2. 花了将近 2 个小时才把火扑灭 |

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;
2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

【参考范文】

A Terrible Fire

A big fire happened in one of the buildings in our city at about nine o'clock last night.

In the beginning, we saw flames with thick black smoke coming out from the sixth floor and we also heard the explosion of the gas tank. It was said that the fire started at the first floor spreading one by one to the floors above, and finally reached the top floor.

Some windows and brick walls were burnt down because of the heat of the fire. Many people stood outside on the streets watching the fire in horror. Many firemen and fire engines came quickly.

Luckily, there was no person in the office building when the fire broke out. It took about two hours for the firemen to put out the big fire.

第二节 读后续写

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Since I was a young boy, I have had a dream to get closer to understanding a bear's life in the wild. I also know getting close to a bear in the wild is amazing but also full of danger.

Bears should be contacted closely in a safe distance. So when I was in senior high school, my father decided to go camping at a research camp outside “the bear of the world”—the town of Nigeria.

That day, once we arrived at the destination, we put up the tent and took out our food, and most importantly, we set up our camera and got ready for getting close to the bear through taking photographs. At that time, a male bear which was surrounded by a high, wire fence followed his nose to our camp, met us and stared at our food. It seemed that it was hungry and attracted by our food.

Frightened, we knew some bear defense actions. One is that we can climb up quickly into a tree and hide ourselves in the branches. Another is that once you must be attacked, fall flat on the ground, and when the bear comes up and smells you all over, you hold your breath, and pretend to be dead as much as you could. The bear will soon leave you, for it is said a bear will not touch a dead body. So we kept taking some photographs.

Suddenly, the bear yelled at us and kept trying to tear down the fence with his massive paws (爪子). Even worse, another bear appeared and tried to tear down the fence. Of course, making the best of

this close encounter, I took some pictures of the bear with scare.

My father feared the fence wouldn't last through 25 more minutes of the bears' punishment. So he called the camp managers for help. Unluckily, they would not arrive until half an hour. They suggested we use pepper spray (胡椒喷雾剂) which can burn the bears' eyes, but doesn't hurt them. What was worse, we didn't bring it.

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

【参考范文】

A few minutes later, my father looked at the big tree beside us. “Let's climb up quickly into the big tree,” my father said. So I first climbed up into the tree with my camera and then my father, we hid ourselves in the branches. And the bears yelled at us and kept trying to tear down the fence with their paws. 25 minutes later, the fence was torn down and the bears were going around under the tree. Luckily, we were safe and awaited the camp managers' coming. During the time, we took some wonderful photos.

Half an hour later, the camp managers with protection equipment arrived. They asked us not to move. We felt good at the moment. They wore professional clothes and protection equipment and approached them carefully, spraying their face with pepper spray. The bears ran to the broken fence and disappeared in the forest. Finally, we climbed down from the big tree and blessed ourselves from danger with the camp managers' help. What a challenging and unforgettable experience and what meaningful photos about the bear's life!

★ ★ ★
迁 · 移 · 应 · 用

Part 1 应用文写作

——生存故事

○写作指导

写好一篇记叙文,需掌握一定的写作技巧,并从以下几个方面着手:

1. 背景

记叙文往往一开头就向读者提供背景资料,交代文中所叙述事件发生的地点、时间等。这样读者就容易理解文章中叙述的事件。

2. 细节的选择与详略

叙事要根据中心思想的需要来确定详略,对最能表达中心思想的内容要详写,其他的则略写,这样就能做到疏密有致,文章和谐匀称,主题突出。

3. 组织结构

在记叙文中,事件如果是按其发生的先后次序来叙述的,这叫顺叙。但是故事有时也可以从中间甚至结局写起,从最重要、最能引人入胜的事件开始,然后回过头来追述故事的开端和经过,这叫倒叙。

4. 叙事内容

叙述一件事情,应在文中交代清楚五方面的内容,即何时、何地、何人、何事以及发展如何,也就是英语中的 when, where, who, what 以及 how,使叙述做到有因有果,有起有落,给人以完整的印象。

5. 叙述角度

故事可以用第一人称叙述,也可以用第三人称叙述,两者各有利弊。第一人称的叙述使读者感到所描绘的一切都是作者亲眼所见或亲身经历过的,因此读起来更真实生动。但是,这种叙述难以反映在同一时间内不同地点发生的事情。以第三人称叙述就没有这一局限性,而且更加客观。

○典题示例

假如你是李华,你校校报正在进行以“An Unforgettable Day in My Summer Vacation”为主题

的英语征文活动,请根据以下信息给校报写一篇 80 词左右的短文。要点如下:

1. 今年的假期你是在乡下的姑姑家度过的;
2. 有一天,你在村外的河边钓鱼,听到有人呼救,你毫不犹豫地下水救人,最终落水的小男孩得救了;
3. 你对此事的认识。

Step 1: 审题谋篇

| | |
|----|---|
| 文体 | 记叙文 |
| 时态 | 以一般过去时为主 |
| 人称 | 以第一人称为主 |
| 要点 | 1. 介绍故事发生的背景 2. 介绍故事的经过 3. 对事件的认识 |

Step 2: 要点补全

- ① This summer I spent a three-week vacation (度过了一个为期三周的假期) at my aunt's house.
- ② My aunt lives alone in a mountain village, and a small river winds its way (蜿蜒流过) through the village.
- ③ One morning I went fishing (去钓鱼) in the river, and two women were washing clothes there.
- ④ I looked in the direction of (……的方向) the call and saw a boy falling into the river (掉进河里).
- ⑤ I threw the fishing rod, then I dashed over like an

arrow (像箭一样冲过去), jumped into the river and swam very quickly towards the boy.

⑥ Then together with his mother, I carried the boy on my back (背起这个男孩) to a nearby hospital.

Step 3: 句式升级

① 用 with 复合结构改写 Step 2 中的句②

My aunt lives alone in a mountain village, with a small river winding its way through the village.

② 用定语从句改写 Step 2 中的句③

One morning I went fishing in the river, where two women were washing clothes.

③ 用现在分词短语作状语改写 Step 2 中的句⑤

Throwing the fishing rod, I dashed over like an arrow, jumped into the river and swam very quickly towards the boy.

Step 4: 连句成篇

This summer I spent a three-week vacation at my aunt's house. My aunt lives alone in a mountain village, with a small river winding its way through the village.

One morning I went fishing in the river, where two women were washing clothes. Suddenly there came a cry anxiously, "Help! Help!" I looked in the direction of the call and saw a boy falling into the river. Throwing the fishing rod, I dashed over like an arrow, jumped into the river and swam very quickly towards the boy. Then together with his mother, I carried the boy on my back to a nearby hospital. Finally, that boy was saved.

What a meaningful and unforgettable day it was!

○ 学以致用

请根据以下提示,用英语写一篇故事,描述这次可怕的经历。

爷爷年轻时在煤矿工作。一天,当他和两个同事在隧道里干活时,隧道的一部分坍塌了,他们被困住了。在黑暗中,他们没有吃的,只能喝一些冷水,为了保暖他们互相拥抱着。4天后,隧道被挖穿,他们被救了出来!

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

【参考范文】

My grandpa has told me lots of his experiences, some of which I've forgotten, but there is one I'll remember forever.

When my grandpa was young, he worked in a coal mine. One day, when he and his two workmates were working in the tunnel, an unfortunate thing suddenly happened. A part of the tunnel fell down, and they were trapped in it. They had no food to eat, and they only drank some cold water there. In order to keep warm, they hugged one another. They were too hungry to speak or move, and thought they would die. At last, the tunnel was dug through. They were rescued. They had been there for four days!

What a terrible experience it was!

Part 2 读后续写

阅读下面的文章,完成任务。

Tom was a fishing amateur. He once came to a wet place in the roadless forest to fish with his friends William and Tony. They put up their tent upon the top of a pine-clothed mountain and then began fishing. However, none of them was successful fisherman. They were either made lazy by the sun or wet by the rain. After two days of fishing, they got nothing. Finally they ate the last bit of bacon and the last wonderful corncake. If they didn't get anything to eat, they would have to starve.

Immediately Tom volunteered to stay and hold the camp while the remaining two should go miles away to a farmhouse for supplies. Hearing Tom's suggestion, the two friends gazed at him jokingly. "There is only

one of you—be careful, for bears may appear and keep you company!” Tom didn’t take what they said seriously. Then the two men disappeared down the hill in the known direction of a distant wooden house.

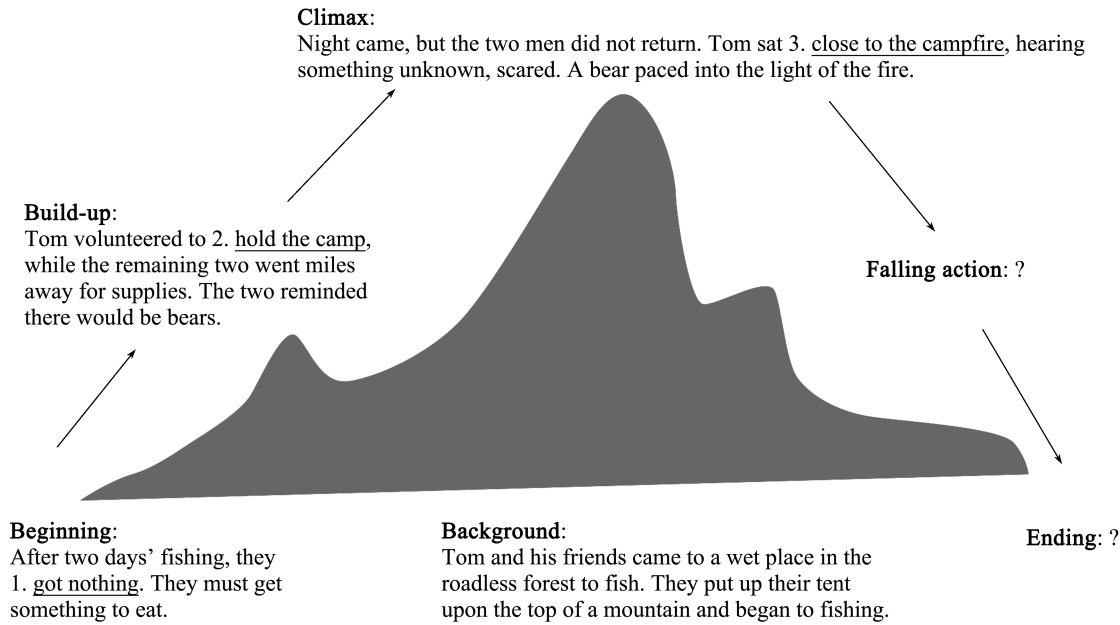
Night came, but the two men did not return. Tom sat close to his companion, the campfire. He lit a cigarette and felt a thousand shadows were about to come towards him. Suddenly he heard the approach of something unknown, crackling the small branches and rustling (使沙沙作响) the dead leaves. Feeling a bit scared, Tom rose slowly to his feet. His cigarette dropped from his mouth and his knees shook with fear. “Hah!” he shouted in a loud voice in the hope of scaring his opponent away. A roar (咆哮) replied and a bear paced into the light of the fire.

任务一：阅读文章，回答问题。

What does the article mainly talk about?

This article is about an adventure. Tom and two friends went fishing in the wild, but after fishing for a few days, the food was all eaten, they still had no harvest. Tom sent his two friends to a distant farmhouse for help, while he continued fishing at the tent and waited for their return. While his friends were away, Tom met the bear and was scared.

任务二：梳理故事情节，完成故事山(Story Mountain)。



任务三：回答下面的问题，并根据段落开头的提示语，构思和完善故事发展情节。

| | |
|--|---|
| <p>Paragraph 1:</p> <p>Tom supported himself upon a tree and observed his unexpected visitor. _____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> | <p>1. What did the bear look like in Tom’s eyes?</p> <p><u>The bear had brown fur and there was confidence in his small, twinkling eyes.</u></p> <p>2. What did Tom feel then?</p> <p><u>He was scared.</u></p> <p>3. What did he do?</p> <p><u>He started running around the campfire.</u></p> <p>4. What happened then?</p> <p><u>The tent fell down onto the burning fire, with the bear trapped inside.</u></p> |
|--|---|

续表

| | |
|---|---|
| <p>Paragraph 2:</p> <p>Tom breathed a sigh of relief. _____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> | <p>1. What did he do to save himself?</p> <p><u>He rested for a while, rebuilt the fire and waited patiently for his friends.</u></p> <p>2. What did his friends feel and what did they ask him when they came back?</p> <p><u>They felt strange and asked what had happened.</u></p> <p>3. What did Tom answer?</p> <p><u>“There is only one of me—and the bear keeps me company!”</u></p> |
|---|---|

任务四:根据材料内容和任务三中构思的故事发展情节续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

【参考范文】

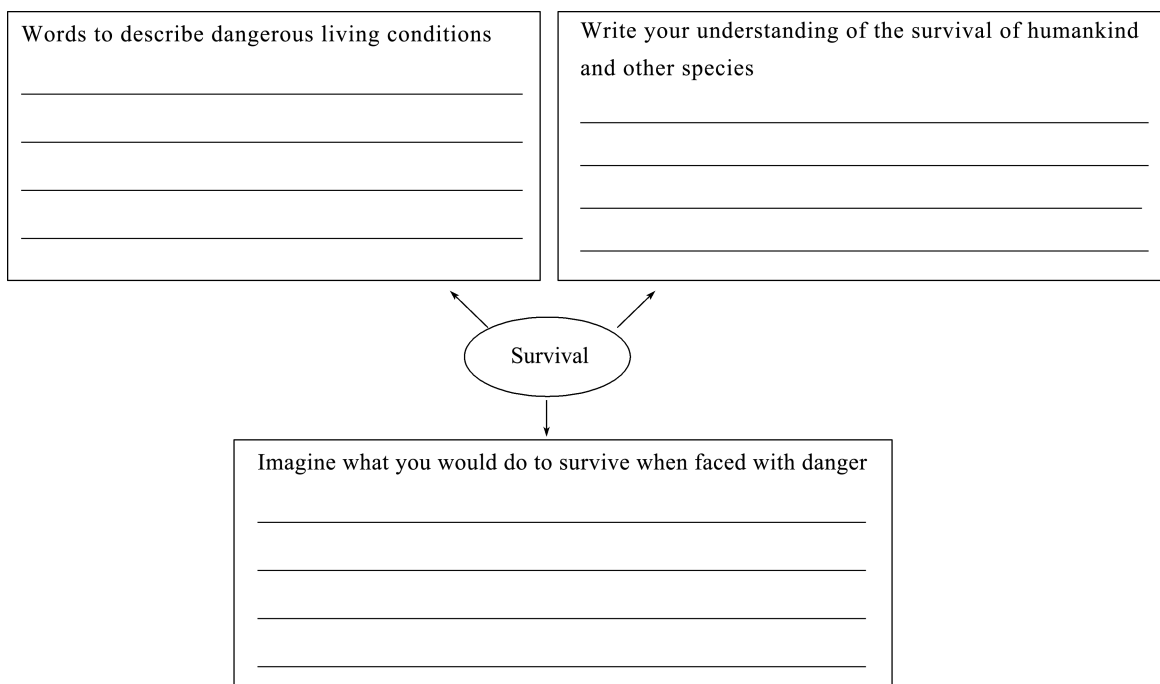
Tom supported himself upon a tree and observed his unexpected visitor. The bear was obviously a fighter, for the black of his coat had become brown with age. There was confidence in his small, twinkling eyes. Terrified as Tom was, he must save himself. He started running around the campfire, the bear chasing after him. He was close to desperation when the tent fell down onto the burning fire, with the bear trapped inside. He then witnessed the burning tent racing in the direction of the lake, disappearing.

Tom breathed a sigh of relief. Maybe it was luck that saved him. Anyway, he was safe now. He rested for a while, rebuilt the fire and waited patiently for his friends. When they came back and saw the tent gone, they asked eagerly what had happened. Tom calmly explained everything as if it had not happened to him. “There is only one of me—and the bear keeps me company!” he said, lighting a cigarette again.

重 · 构 · 拓 · 展

一、单元重构

请根据本单元所学内容，完成思维导图。



答案：略

二、拓展阅读

阅读下面的文章，完成后面的题目。

The Last Days of Pompeii(Excerpt)

Pompeii was a typical Roman city. In its little shops, its tiny palaces, its forum, its wine bars, its theatre—in the energy and skill of its people, you saw a model of the whole Roman Empire. Trading ships bringing imports to the city or carrying exports overseas, along with golden pleasure boats for the rich, were crowded together in the glassy water of the port. The boats of the fishermen moved rapidly in all directions. Above all, the cloud-capped top of Mount Vesuvius appeared. Its ashy rocks, now dark, now light, told a story of past eruptions that might have warned the city what was to come!

The awful night rolled slowly away, and the dawn greyly broke on THE LAST DAY OF POMPEII! The crowd looked upwards, and saw, with unspeakable fear, a huge cloud shooting from the top of the volcano. It took the form of a huge tree: the trunk, blackness, the branches, fire! This fire moved and changed in colour with every moment; now it was wildly bright, now of a pale and dying red, and now again it burnt with an unbearable light!

The cries of women broke out; the men looked at each other, but were silent. At that moment, they felt the earth shaking beneath their feet; beyond in the distance, they heard the crash of falling roofs. A moment

later, the mountain-cloud seemed to roll towards them, dark and rapid, like a river; at the same time, it threw out a shower of ashes and huge pieces of burning stone! Over the empty streets—over the forum—far and wide—with many a noisy crash in the stormy sea—fell that awful shower!

Each turned to fly—each running, pressing, pushing against the other. If, in the darkness, wife was separated from husband, or parent from child, there was no hope of their meeting again. Each hurried blindly and fearfully on. So came the earthquake... and so ended life in Pompeii.

Nearly seventeen centuries had rolled away before the city of Pompeii was dug from its silent resting place. Its walls were fresh as if painted yesterday; not a single colour changed on the rich pattern of its floors. In its forum, the half-finished columns seemed as if just left by the workman's hand. Long after fire and ash came for the people of Pompeii, the remains of their beautiful city survive to remind us that human lives burn bright and short.

1. What did the huge cloud shooting from the volcano take the form of?

- A. A huge animal. B. A huge tree.
- C. A huge wave. D. A huge building.

2. What happened during the disaster?

- A. There was only ash falling.
- B. The earth shook and roofs fell.
- C. There was a flood.
- D. The sea became calm.

3. How did people react when trying to escape?

- A. They helped each other orderly.
- B. They were calm and walked slowly.
- C. They ran blindly, pushing against each other.
- D. They stopped to look for their families.

4. What was the state of Pompeii when it was dug out?

- A. Its walls were completely destroyed.
- B. The colours on its floors had all changed.
- C. It was in a very well-preserved state.
- D. There were no remaining columns in the forum.

答案:1~4 BBCC

单元测试卷(六)

(考查范围:Unit 6 时间:100 分钟 分值:120 分)

I. 阅读理解(共 15 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 37.5 分)

A

Whether you're a first-time visitor to Chicago or you've lived here your whole life, there's always something new to discover at the best Chicago museums.

Shedd Aquarium

The aquarium is famous for seven exhibitions (展览), making it easy to spend an entire day wandering through the Shedd. We recommend making a list and choosing a handful of must-see exhibitions before your visit. You can visit the others next time!

Address: 1200 S Lake Shore Dr, Chicago

Tel: 312-××××-2438

Opening hours: Mon. to Fri. 9 am to 5 pm; Sat., Sun. 9 am to 6 pm

The Field Museum

This natural history museum has more than 30 exhibitions covering 480,000 square feet. Guests come from all around the world to see artifacts (手工艺品) from an ancient Egyptian tomb or relax in a Chinese rock garden hidden inside the Cyrus Tang Hall of China. There's something for everyone, and you can easily spend an entire day here.

Address: 1400 S Lake Shore Dr, Chicago

Tel: 312-××××-9410

Opening hours: Daily 9 am to 5 pm

Art Institute of Chicago

Art Institute of Chicago is just as impressive once you make your way inside. With almost 300,000 artworks in its collection, you'll find thousands of paintings, photos and drawings displayed throughout the galleries (陈列室) and halls.

Address: 111 S Michigan Ave, Chicago

Tel: 312-××××-3600

Opening hours: Mon. to Wed. 10:30 am to 5 pm; Thur. 10:30 am to 8 pm; Fri. to Sun. 10:30 am to 5 pm

Chicago History Museum

If you're working on a project about the history of Chicago, you can visit the museum's Research Library, which houses thousands of photographs, publications and artifacts about the city's history. It's situated just inside Lincoln Park near Old Town.

Address: 1601 N Clark St, Chicago

Tel: 312-××××-4600

Opening hours: Mon., Wed. to Sat. 9:30 am to 4:30 pm; Tues. 9:30 am to 9 pm; Sun. noon to 5 pm

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章介绍了芝加哥几个有趣的博物馆。

1. What is special about Shedd Aquarium?

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| A. It has the longest history. | B. It shows the most photos. |
| C. It has the most exhibitions. | D. It has the longest opening time on Sundays. |

D 细节理解题。根据 **Shedd Aquarium** 部分中的“Opening hours: Mon. to Fri. 9 am to 5 pm; Sat., Sun. 9 am to 6 pm”可知,Shedd Aquarium 周日的开放时间是上午 9 点至下午 6 点。根据 **The Field Museum** 部分中的“Opening hours: Daily 9 am to 5 pm”;**Art Institute of Chicago** 部分中的“Opening hours: Mon. to Wed. 10:30 am to 5 pm; Thur. 10:30 am to 8 pm; Fri. to Sun. 10:30 am to 5 pm”以及 **Chicago History Museum** 部分中的“Opening hours: Mon., Wed. to Sat. 9:30 am to 4:30 pm; Tues. 9:30 am to 9 pm; Sun. noon to 5 pm”可知,谢德水族馆在周日开放的时间最长。故选 D。

2. Where can you see a Chinese rock garden?

- A. Shedd Aquarium. B. Art Institute of Chicago.
C. The Field Museum. D. Chicago History Museum.

C 细节理解题。根据 **The Field Museum** 部分中的“Guests come from all around the world to see artifacts (手工艺品) from an ancient Egyptian tomb or relax in a Chinese rock garden hidden inside the Cyrus Tang Hall of China.”可知,在菲尔德博物馆可以欣赏到中国岩石花园。故选 C。

3. Where is Chicago History Museum located?

- A. 1601 N Clark St, Chicago. B. 111 S Michigan Ave, Chicago.
C. 1200 S Lake Shore Dr, Chicago. D. 1400 S Lake Shore Dr, Chicago.

A 细节理解题。根据 **Chicago History Museum** 部分中的“It’s situated just inside Lincoln Park near Old Town.”以及“1601 N Clark St, Chicago”可知,芝加哥历史博物馆位于旧城附近的林肯公园内,芝加哥拉克街 1601 号。故选 A。

B

We humans love food to death.

From mammoths to passenger pigeons, we have driven our favourite meals to extinction through overhunting and habitat destruction. And globally, our tendency to overharvest just a narrow range of crops has limited the variety of foods we eat.

Passenger pigeons were the most common birds in all of North America in the 1800s. It was common to see large groups of passenger pigeons—groups that made a sound like a storm. In Colonial times it was turned into pie. It was baked. It was roasted. It was made into stew (炖). Basically, anything you do to a chicken is what we did to them. Today, they are extinct because of human behaviour.

“When it comes to fruit and vegetables, we have access to only a small part of the diversity (多样性) that existed a century ago,” says Lenore Newman in her forthcoming book, *Lost Feast: Culinary (烹饪的) Extinction and the Future of Food*. She is the Canada research chair in food security and environment at the University of the Fraser Valley, in British Columbia.

In her book, Newman mainly explores how human activity has limited our food options and still threatens what we are able to put on our plates.

“I think the important lesson that I took away from writing this book was realising that things can—and do—go extinct even if we really love them,” Newman told NPR. Silphium, a plant that was important to Roman and Egyptian culinary society, is one of many examples of foods we loved that are now considered extinct. The branch of the silphium plant was used to flavour (加味于) food, and its leaves were fed to sheep and cattle to improve the flavour of their meat. Newman says the extinction of silphium taught us that loving a food is not enough to keep it in existence. “We actually have to fight to be conscientious, especially as we have a bigger impact on the planet,” she says. “We need to be a little more thoughtful about how we eat.”

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了人类贪婪的口腹之欲使得大自然中的很多生物走向灭绝。

4. What can we learn about passenger pigeons?

- A. None of them are left today. B. They are still common sightings.
C. They suffer a lot from storms. D. They now live in North America.

A 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“From mammoths to passenger pigeons, we have driven our favourite meals to extinction through overhunting and habitat destruction.”以及第三段中的“Today, they are extinct because of human behaviour.”可知,旅鸽已经灭绝了,一只都没有了。故选 A。

5. What is Newman's book mainly about?

- A. Food diversity of the future. B. Cooking methods for different plants.
C. The effect of human behaviour on food. D. Thoughts on the extinction of rare creatures.

C 推理判断题。根据第五段的内容可知,Newman 的书主要是关于人类行为对食物的影响。故选 C。

6. What does the underlined word “conscientious” in the last paragraph mean?

- A. Hopeful. B. Careful. C. Skillful. D. Grateful.

B 词义猜测题。根据画线词后的“We need to be a little more thoughtful about how we eat.”可知,画线词词义与 thoughtful 相近,即因为我们的行为会对地球有很大影响,所以我们必须小心谨慎、认真对待这个问题。由此可知,画线词意为“小心的”。故选 B。

7. What could be a suitable title for the text?

- A. A Food Expert Published a New Book
B. Food Safety Is Closely Related to Us
C. Passenger Pigeons Are on the Road to Extinction
D. We Love Our Food So Much That It Goes Extinct

D 标题归纳题。根据文章第一句话“We humans love food to death.”及下文介绍可知,本文主要介绍了人类贪婪的口腹之欲使得大自然中的很多生物走向灭绝。由此可知,D 项适合作本文最佳标题。故选 D。

C

Ken Campbell had last attempted running at high school. When his wife, Susan, injured her foot, she needed support to rejoin her running group, so Campbell went along to keep her company and share in the recovery. “We were just walking at the beginning,” he says. “And I was heavy. I weighed over 90 kg.” But as the weeks and months passed, the weight fell away, Susan recovered—and Campbell's abilities grew. At the age of 63, he ran 50 km, and at 70, he ran through the night to complete a 100 km ultramarathon.

So how does someone with no sporting precedent (先例) become an ultradistance runner in his 60s and 70s? Susan had run marathons before her injury. But for Campbell, the turning point came when Susan's Fleet Feet running group took to the trails in the Sierra Nevada foothills near their home in Citrus Heights, California.

Campbell went out to visit Susan's group, and “the trails were a terrible mess. It had been raining. And I was running in my road shoes. Slipping and sliding and falling. And I was struggling. I thought, well, I like this a lot but I could do better.”

What he liked above all was the feeling of “being enveloped by the trail, being embraced by the closeness of the vegetation and the nearness of the river. I was walking where native people had walked for thousands of years and where miners had walked on their way to gold.”

Running the 100 km ultramarathon took Campbell 16 hours. When Campbell crossed the finish line at 3 am, Susan handed him a 100 km sticker to display on the back of his truck. He already had a 50 km one on there. “It is a public proclamation (声明) that you are part of this community,” he says. “Wherever we park, I see a line of vehicles with their various stickers and I feel that we are a tribe (部落).”

Campbell suffered arthritis before he started running, and is “a candidate for knee replacement”. But for now, he is holding off on surgery. “It could put an end to the running—but the sense of well-being and accomplishment will carry me on forever,” he says. “If I can’t run, I will walk.”

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了 Ken Campbell 在妻子受伤恢复期间帮助她重新加入跑步小组,并和妻子一起锻炼,提升了自己跑步的能力,最终开始跑马拉松的故事。

8. What enabled Campbell to take up long-distance running?

- A. That he lost weight. B. That he trained overnight.
C. That his wife accompanied him. D. That his wife shared her experience.

A 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“‘And I was heavy. I weighed over 90 kg.’ But as the weeks and months passed, the weight fell away, Susan recovered—and Campbell’s abilities grew.”可知,在妻子受伤恢复期间,Campbell 减了肥,提高了跑步的能力,所以能进行长距离跑步比赛。

9. What did Campbell discover while keeping his wife company on a trail run?

- A. The joy of being out in the wild. B. The hardships of native people.
C. The pleasure of gold mining. D. The mysteries of nature.

A 推理判断题。根据第三段的内容以及第四段中的“‘What he liked above all... of the vegetation and the nearness of the river.’”可知,Campbell 陪伴妻子在小路上跑步时,很喜欢在小路上奔跑的那种感觉。由此推知,Campbell 找到了在野外训练的快乐。

10. What did the stickers on the back of Campbell’s truck bring him?

- A. A discount on parking. B. A sense of belonging.
C. An enormous income. D. An honour to his wife.

B 细节理解题。根据倒数第二段中的“‘It is a public proclamation (声明) that... their various stickers and I feel that we are a tribe (部落).’”可知,无论 Campbell 走到哪里,看到这些带有贴纸的车辆,就会感觉到他们是一个部落。由此可知,这些贴纸给 Campbell 一种归属感。

11. What can we learn about Campbell from the text?

- A. He is a determined man. B. He is a people-pleaser.
C. He is easy to content. D. He is hard to cope with.

A 推理判断题。根据最后一段的内容可知,Campbell 在开始跑步前患有关节炎,但是他为了跑步推迟手术,他觉得是“幸福感和成就感”在支撑着他,他会坚持下去,哪怕不能跑步,也可以走路。由此推知,Campbell 是个意志坚定的人。

D

As we know, Benjamin Franklin made groundbreaking discoveries in the field of electronics. He invented both battery (the word) and batteries (the thing) and came up with the concept of “positive” and “negative” charges. But this comes second to Franklin’s true electrical vocation: practical jokes.

Picture the scene: It’s summer 1749 and you’ve been invited to a party at your good pal Ben’s house. You sit down, pick up your wine glass to take a sip... and are hit with an electric shock straight to the mouth. This was a typical risk of being friends with Benjamin Franklin. Not only did his guests put up with electrified wine glasses, but they were also frightened by dancing spiders made from wood and string, and invited to send sparks of electricity between one another through air kisses.

The father of electricity first encountered its wonders after witnessing an experiment-slash-vaudeville show in 1743, and was electrified by the experience, to say the least. “I never was before engaged in any study that so totally engrossed my attention and my time as this,” he wrote to fellow electrician Peter Collinson.

Collinson had just sent Franklin an exciting gift: a Leyden jar. Physicists had been able to generate electricity. But the Leyden jar allowed them to store and use it on demand. It would take nearly 7 trillion jars

to store the amount of electricity in a single AA battery today. But for physicists of the time, a whole new world of experiments had opened up. Exactly what those experiments were, Franklin left to the imagination.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了 Franklin 在电子学领域的贡献以及他本人的一些恶作剧。

12. What can we know about Franklin?

- A. He discovered the field of electronics.
- B. He designed some new terms in electronics.
- C. He separated positive charge from negative one.
- D. He invented the concept of practical jokes.

B 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“He invented both battery (the word) and batteries (the thing) and came up with the concept of ‘positive’ and ‘negative’ charges.”可知, Franklin 设计了一些电子学的新术语。

13. What happened to the people at the party?

- A. They couldn't put up with the electric shock.
- B. They witnessed three tricks at the party.
- C. They tasted the wine made from real spiders.
- D. They didn't appreciate Franklin's sense of humour.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“Not only did his guests put up with electrified wine glasses, but they were also frightened by dancing spiders made from wood and string, and invited to send sparks of electricity between one another through air kisses.”可知, 参加聚会的人在聚会上目睹了三种恶作剧。

14. Why is a single AA battery mentioned in Paragraph 4?

- A. To introduce Franklin's great achievement.
- B. To illustrate the functions of Leyden jars.
- C. To explain the store amount of Leyden jars.
- D. To show Franklin's creative imagination.

C 推理判断题。根据第四段中的“‘But the Leyden jar allowed them to store and use it on demand. It would take nearly 7 trillion jars to store the amount of electricity in a single AA battery today.’”可推知, 第四段提到了一节 AA 电池是为了解释莱顿瓶的储存量。

15. What kind of person is Franklin according to the text?

- A. Playful and curious.
- B. Friendly and humorous.
- C. Intelligent and reliable.
- D. Committed and helpful.

A 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“‘This was a typical risk of being... one another through air kisses.’”以及第三段的内容可推知, Franklin 是个爱开玩笑且充满好奇心的人。

II. 七选五 (共 5 小题; 每小题 2.5 分, 满分 12.5 分)

When you think about a deadly animal, you may think of a shark, a lion, or even an elephant. However, the truth is that the deadliest animal in the world is much smaller and more annoying. 16 And it feeds on human blood, transporting numerous diseases from one person to the next. Figure it out, yet? Yes, it's the mosquito.

The numbers don't lie: According to the World Health Organization, more than 725,000 people worldwide are killed by mosquito-borne diseases each year. These diseases include malaria (疟疾), dengue fever, yellow fever, and encephalitis. 17 “Being able to adapt easily to new environments is one of the reasons why mosquitoes are the most deadly,” Bums Blackwell, an expert in pest control said.

18 Mosquitoes have learned to lay eggs in as little as a few small drops of water and each female mosquito can lay between 50 and 500 eggs once. Their populations also reach the highest point at different times in different areas all over the world, making it nearly impossible to avoid being bitten. 19 In areas where there're too many mosquitoes, local authorities try to control the population through routine pesticide applications. “We should protect ourselves by avoiding places where there is too much water,” said Bernard Cohen, MD, a professor at the Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine. 20 Wear bug repellent (驱虫剂) that contains DEET (up to 30 percent) when heading outdoors, and reapply it about every four hours.

- A. Most of the diseases can be cured in a short time.
 B. There are more than 100 varieties of this thing on earth.
 C. He also stresses that a little protection will go a long way.
 D. And every bite increases the risk of getting a serious disease.
 E. Mosquitoes take much interest in getting in touch with children.
 F. Malaria is the most horrible, killing at least 600,000 people a year.
 G. Another reason why the insects are so deadly is that they produce quickly.

答案: 16~20 BFGDC

III. 完形填空 (共 15 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 15 分)

My husband and I bought a house when we were in our 50s. It was 21 but beautiful because there was an old Japanese red pine tree which looked like a large bonsai (盆栽) in its front 22. For 20 years it had been a 23 to all who passed by. It shaded (遮住光线) my small garden of different flowers that I'd planted for 24.

Early last year, it 25 the whole day in Seattle. When we were enjoying snow the next morning, the house shook and we 26 a terrible sound. The 27 fell down over the full length of the yard, taking out most of the plants. So tree services were called. Branches (树枝) were 28 and wood was carried away.

In March I 29 a few flowering plants for bees to take the place of those that I thought would not 30. And guess what happened in May: when the sun fully shone down on the little yard, new flowers blew in. The old garden plants all grew back and 31 even more than ever before. The poor yard 32 came back to life. In June, one year later, every plant grew even 33 in the sunshine.

The brightness and warmth of the sun created a more beautiful 34, which was much more than I had 35.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了一场大雪把院子里美丽的大树压倒后,阳光倾泻而下,重生的花丛长得比原先更美了。

21. A. small B. empty C. dirty D. dark

A 根据下文的“my small garden”和“little yard”等信息可知,作者买的房子不大。故选 A。

22. A. square B. street C. room D. yard

D 根据第二段的“fell down over the full length of the yard”可知,此处指前面的院子。故选 D。

23. A. sign B. beauty C. secret D. problem

B 根据上文的“beautiful because there was an old Japanese red pine tree”可知,这棵日本赤松对于路过的人来说是一道美景。故选 B。

24. A. bees B. birds C. rabbits D. chickens

A 根据第三段第一句中的“for bees”可知,作者为蜜蜂种了各种各样的花。故选 A。

25. A. blew B. rained C. snowed D. shone

C 根据下文的“When we were enjoying snow”可知,西雅图下了一整天的雪。故选 C。

26. A. recorded B. learnt C. made D. heard

D 根据下文的“a terrible sound”可知,作者听到了可怕的声音。故选 D。

27. A. tree B. house C. brick D. shelf

A 根据下文的“So tree services were called.”可知,树倒下了。故选 A。

28. A. sold B. cut C. covered D. found

B 根据上文的“So tree services were called.”及下文的“wood was carried away”可知,树枝被砍下。故选 B。

29. A. discovered B. moved C. bought D. watered

C 根据上文的“taking out most of the plants”和下文的“take the place of those”可知,作者又买了一些开花的植物。故选 C。

30. A. appear B. continue C. stop D. survive

D 根据上文的“taking out most of the plants”和“In March I 29 a few flowering plants for bees to take the place of those”可知,作者买花苗是来代替那些她认为不会活下来的植物。故选 D。

31. A. lost B. flowered C. changed D. suffered

B 根据上文的“The old garden plants all grew back”可知,花开得比以前更多了。故选 B。

32. A. slowly B. directly C. usually D. simply

A 随着更多的鲜花相继开放,可怜的小院子慢慢恢复了生机。故选 A。

33. A. earlier B. harder C. better D. faster

C 根据上文的“The old garden plants all grew back and 31 even more than ever before.”可知,一年以后,所有的植物长得更好了。故选 C。

34. A. sky B. garden C. city D. beach

B 根据上文的“The old garden”可知,阳光的明亮和温暖使作者的花园更加美丽。故选 B。

35. A. needed B. experienced C. expected D. understood

C 根据语境可知,作者买了一些新的花苗,没想到旧的花苗活过来了并开出了更多花朵,所以现在的花园如此美丽是超出了作者的预期的。故选 C。

IV. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分 15 分)

China has developed a technology that is able to transform desert lands into available soil. The technology 36. was developed (develop) several years ago by researchers at Chongqing Jiaotong University. They invented a paste (黏合剂) 37. made (make) of a material found in plant cell walls that, when mixed 38. with sand, is able to keep water, nutrients and air.

According to CGTN (中国国际电视台), Chinese scientists have achieved success in growing crops in areas with bad conditions caused by lack of rain and 39. extremely (extreme) hot temperatures. One particular area is in a desert in North China's Inner Mongolia. Over 70 kinds of crops are growing there. Many are not planted by humans but they just grow 40. themselves (they). And the costs of artificial materials and machines for transforming sand into soil is much 41. lower (low) compared with regular methods. Now, nearly 500 acres of sand is being turned into farms producing corn, 42. tomatoes (tomato) and sunflowers. A reforestation (重造森林) project is also currently in progress, 43. which is set to reforest 50% of desert land in three years.

Researchers are looking into expanding their project this fall, with 44. a plan to transform another 500 acres of desert. In the next few years, the scientists are 45. confident (confidence) that they can turn over 30,000 acres more into rich ground.

V. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

第一节 应用文写作(满分 15 分)

假定你是李华,你的英国朋友 Chris 来信询问你校开展“建设最美校园”活动的情况。请用英语给他回信,内容包括:

1. 活动目的;
2. 活动内容(打扫卫生、办墙报、礼貌待人……);
3. 活动意义。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

【参考范文】

Dear Chris,

I'm happy to hear from you. As you know, in order to improve the teaching and learning environment, our school has started an activity called "Building the Most Beautiful Campus". I'm very glad to tell you something about it.

All the teachers and students in our school are taking an active part in the activity. Not only are we busy cleaning our school, but we have designed colourful wall newspapers. What's more, we are required to have good manners, including acting politely, being helpful and getting on well with each other.

I'm sure a better learning and living campus will certainly contribute a lot to our studies.

Yours,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

I worked from the time when I was four and raised seven children, all of them college graduates. It seemed I'd done everything I'd ever wanted to do in my life, but I had one regret. I was born in 1898, the oldest of five kids. Papa couldn't spare me to go to school, so I worked in the fields with him till I was 21 years old.

Everywhere I went, I learned some hard lessons about what happens to a man who even can't read the alphabet. People cheat you out of wages. They sell you a ticket to one city, take your money and hand you a ticket to somewhere else.

By 1928, I'd been wandering for nine years. I met a woman named Elzenia. We fell in love, married and moved to Dallas, where I got work fixing roads for the city. When Amelia, the oldest of our seven children, first went to school, I took my wife aside. "Elzenia," I said, "I don't want the kids to know I can't read or write."

In 1938, one day my boss called me in. "George," he said, "no one knows those machines like you do. I'd like to promote you." But my thrill and surprise were cut short when he said, "Fill out this application and we'll get you a raise." I couldn't admit the truth. I thanked him and walked out of his office. I did stay right where I was, until I turned 65 and my boss made me retire. But I didn't stop working. For the next 25 years, I lived a happy life, but it still seemed to me like something was missing.

A young fellow handed me a piece of paper. It's information about adult education classes. People can learn to read and write. Now I'm 98. I thought of my friends and neighbours and what they might think if they found out I couldn't read. After all these years, my secret would be out. But all my life I've wanted to read. It was high time for action.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

【参考范文】

The young man drove me to a huge building and led me into a spacious classroom, which was crowded with elderly people like me. Through chatting, I learned that they had all been longing to read and write but never had the chance to go to school. As the bell rang, in came the teacher, a woman well past forty. After a warm and brief greeting, we started our lesson. First we learned to read the alphabet and though I made mistakes at times, no one laughed at me. Everyone helped each other with open-hearted enjoyment.

I'm still going to school. Though faced with the most challenging event of my life, I'm full of courage and confidence. With the generous help of my teacher, friends and my children, I have made huge progress in study. Now I'm never shy about admitting the truth that once I was not able to read and write at all. Besides, I'm eager to encourage more elderly people to attend the adult education classes, because it's never too late to learn.

模块测试卷

(考查范围: Unit 1—Unit 6 时间:100 分钟 分值:120 分)

I. 阅读理解(共 15 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 37.5 分)

A

RISE is an exciting project designed and led by young people, for young people. Created by St John Ambulance, the nation's leading first aid charity, the project is now available in communities across the country. If you're aged between 16 and 25 years old, and are not in employment, education or training, RISE could help you learn new skills, and improve your prospects.

What you'll learn

St John Ambulance believes that everyone should have access to first aid, and we are devoted to equipping as many people as possible with the skills to be the difference between life and death. As a participant, you'll learn first aid through our Stick-it sessions, and also get the opportunity to develop new skills, giving you the confidence to train others in your community, or the qualifications in youth leadership you need to get your career up and running.

Choosing the right path for you

At the heart of the RISE project is a commitment to peer-to-peer learning. As well as being taught first aid, you'll be given the skills and guidance to pass your knowledge on to other people in your community. RISE offers you the chance to gain a lot of qualifications and to choose a path that helps you make the most of your talents.

Stick-it: Our one-day introduction to first aid focuses on gun- and knife-related injuries. You'll find out how to manage an incident and learn some of the most commonly needed first aid skills.

First aid: You'll focus on CPR (心肺复苏术), bleeding and dealing with an emergency situation in this six-hour course.

Keeping children safe: It is a course designed for those who come into contact with children through their work or leisure activities. This short programme works by helping individuals to understand the unusual role they play in keeping children safe from harm.

Basic skills in youth work: This course provides an introduction to St John Ambulance and is the minimum qualification for a youth leadership role within the organisation.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章介绍了 RISE 组织所设置的一些关于急救的课程,以及课时、初衷和参与者的条件要求等,并号召 16 到 25 岁的年轻人学习。

1. Which of the following courses deals with a serious finger cut?

- | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------|
| A. CPR performance. | B. Stick-it. |
| C. Keeping children safe. | D. Basic skills in youth work. |

B 细节理解题。根据 Stick-it 所在段中的“ Our one-day introduction to first aid focuses on gun- and knife-related injuries.”可知,针对严重的手指割伤的课程是 Stick-it。故选 B。

2. What is the text mainly about?

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| A. Advantages of taking the courses. | B. Tips on how to give first aid. |
| C. Steps on how to give first aid. | D. An introduction to RISE project. |

D 主旨大意题。根据文章内容可知,本文介绍了 RISE 组织所设置的一些关于急救的课程,以及课时、初衷和参与者的条件要求等,并号召 16 到 25 岁的年轻人学习。由此可知,本文是 RISE 项目的简介。故选 D。

3. Where does the text most probably come from?

- A. A science magazine. B. A book review.
C. A community website. D. A business report.

C 文章出处题。根据文章内容可知,这是一篇 RISE 项目的简介,尤其是根据第一段中的“RISE is an exciting project designed and... in communities across the country.”可知,RISE 是一个针对年轻人、由年轻人设计和领导的、激动人心的项目。该项目由英国领先的急救慈善机构圣约翰救护机构发起,目前已在全国各地的社区开展。由此推断,该文章很可能来自一个社区网页。故选 C。

B

When we long live together, we quickly learn to foresee the near-term behaviours of our co-workers or family members. Our ability to predict the actions of others makes it easier to successfully live and work together. In contrast, even the most intelligent and advanced robots have remained inept at this sort of communication. This may be about to change.

The study, conducted by Mechanical Engineering Professor Hod Lipson, is part of a broader effort to provide robots with the ability to understand and predict what others want. The researchers first built a subject robot and placed it in a playpen. They programmed the robot to seek and move towards any green circle it could see. But there was a hidden difficulty: Sometimes the robot could see a green circle in its camera and move directly towards it. But at other times, the green circle would be blocked by a tall red cardboard box, in which case the robot would move towards a different green circle, or not at all.

After “researching” its partner on screen long, the new robot was eventually able to get its partner’s goal and path 98 out of 100 times, across varying situations. When starting the experiment, the researchers expected the robot might learn to make predictions about the subject robot’s near-term actions. What the researchers didn’t expect, however, was how accurately it could foresee the moves with only a few seconds of video.

“Our initial results are very exciting, showing how robots can see the world from another robot’s view,” says Lipson. “The understanding ability of the new robot is perhaps a primitive form of sensing others’ feelings, which we all can do.”

Meanwhile, he acknowledges there’re many moral questions. The technology will make robots more adaptable and useful and no longer passive instruction-following machines, but when robots can predict how humans think, they may also learn to control or influence those thoughts.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了当人们长时间生活在一起时,他们很快就能预测身边人的行动。相比之下,即使是最智能的机器人在这方面也依然一头雾水。但一种新型的机器人学会了这一技能,通过观察,它可以预测其他机器人下一步的动作和意图。

4. What does the underlined word “inept” in the first paragraph mean?

- A. Careful. B. Smart. C. Active. D. Poor.

D 词义猜测题。根据第一段中的“When we long live together, we quickly learn to foresee the near-term behaviours of our co-workers or family members.”可知,人们在一起生活的时间久了,很快就能预测对方下一步的动作和意图。根据画线词前的“In contrast”及画线词后的“This may be about to change.”和有关机器人的新能力的研究可知,画线词所在句与前面的内容存在对比关系,表示相比之下即使是最智能、最先进的机器人在这种交流上仍然还很笨拙、很不擅长。inept 意为“缺乏技巧的,无能的,笨拙的”。故选 D。

5. What is the experiment designed to find?

- A. How a robot moves towards the targeted object.
- B. Whether a robot can predict other robots' goals.
- C. Whether robots can work together like humans.
- D. How accurately a robot foresees its partner's moves.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“The study, conducted by Mechanical Engineering Professor Hod Lipson, is part of a broader effort to provide robots with the ability to understand and predict what others want.”和第三段中的“When starting the experiment, the researchers expected the robot might learn to make predictions about the subject robot's near-term actions.”可知,实验的目的是要看看机器人是否能够预测其他机器人的行动。故选 B。

6. How does the robot gain the understanding ability?

- A. By communication.
- B. By following its camera.
- C. By visual observation.
- D. By experiencing various tests.

C 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“After ‘researching’ its partner on screen long, the new robot was eventually able to get its partner's goal and path 98 out of 100 times, across varying situations.”可知,机器人通过视觉观察获得了理解和预测其他机器人的行动的能力。故选 C。

7. What does Lipson think of the new robot?

- A. It bears human characteristics.
- B. It has some kind of moral values.
- C. It might replace human beings.
- D. It is an instruction-following machine.

A 细节理解题。根据倒数第二段中的“The understanding ability of the new robot is perhaps a primitive form of sensing others' feelings, which we all can do.”可知,在 Lipson 看来,这种新型的机器人具有人的特性。故选 A。

C

People who possess high self-esteem are able to commit better and produce a greater bond in relationships with others. Dr Douglas feels that most people do not value themselves, but with love and self-respect anyone can be above normality and grasp success with the family, the office or others.

We have become too reliant on intelligence, beauty and money for our own self-esteem. The loss of esteem reduces the will and ability to set and reach goals. In a series of readings, Douglas teaches how to avoid negative statements, how to change them into self-facing behaviour and how to take charge of your mental attitude. Where other motivational and self-help works stop with the theoretical plan for success, Douglas takes everyday examples and puts them into his books. From raising children who believe in themselves to using self-esteem to help bridge the gap in the workplace, he gives readers concrete solutions to the problems that might ruin their interpersonal relations.

Self-esteem building comes from filling your thoughts with positive affirmations (肯定) and learning to react to failures with motivation instead of self-destruction. These lessons are valuable for anyone who feels that life is even slightly out of control. People who feel they have adequate esteem can learn to use it to make their success grander, faster and more beneficial for others. Douglas approaches this process of self-development as a means of more than creating good things for the individual but also for setting up keys for influencing good things for others.

For more than thirty years, Dr Douglas has addressed more than two million people on topics from time management to speaking effectively to raising drug-free children. He is the author of fifteen books, including *How to Make a Habit of Succeeding*.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了自尊心强的好处及如何培养自尊从而实现更好的自我发展。

8. What can we infer from Paragraph 1?

- A. Most people behave well enough. B. Self-respect means being above normality.
C. Self-esteem matters much. D. Committing better equals greater success.

C 推理判断题。根据第一段的内容可知,第一段主要讲述自尊很重要,可以帮助人们获得成功。故选 C。

9. Why does Douglas put everyday examples into his books?

- A. To be reliant on self-esteem. B. To set and reach goals.
C. To avoid negative thoughts. D. To offer concrete solutions.

D 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“From raising children who believe in themselves to using self-esteem to help bridge the gap in the workplace, he gives readers concrete solutions to the problems that might ruin their interpersonal relations.”可知,Douglas 将日常案例写进书里,是为了给人们提供具体的解决方法。故选 D。

10. What does the author advise those whose life is slightly out of control to do?

- A. Learn to be positive. B. Face it unmotivatedly.
C. Admit self-destruction. D. Ask for help.

A 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“Self-esteem building comes from filling your thoughts with positive affirmations (肯定) and learning to react to failures with motivation instead of self-destruction. These lessons are valuable for anyone who feels that life is even slightly out of control.”可知,作者建议生活有些失控的人学会肯定自己,积极面对生活。故选 A。

11. What's the most important thing for self-development?

- A. Influencing the individual. B. Influencing more people.
C. Gaining more benefits. D. Speaking more effectively.

B 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“Douglas approaches this process of self-development as a means of more than creating good things for the individual but also for setting up keys for influencing good things for others.”可知,自我发展不仅是为了影响自己,更是为了影响更多的人。故选 B。

D

Migration (迁徙) ecologist Sissel Sjöberg has long wondered how tiny birds like the great reed warbler (大苇莺) can make it across long expanses of water or desert on their migrations. Though just half the weight of a golf ball, they fly 7,000 kilometres between Northern Europe and sub-Saharan Africa twice a year. Now, a new study may have the answer: These nighttime birds fly well into the day—and at heights of up to 6,000 metres, three times as high as they normally fly.

More than 4,000 species of birds migrate across long distances each year. It's challenging to equip small songbirds with the tracking devices that make such research possible. To see whether she could change that, Sjöberg joined the lab of Lund University Dennis Hasselquist. The pair turned to great reed warblers, relatively large songbirds that summer at a lake near Lund University. Scientists there have monitored the species' breeding (繁殖) and behaviour for 40 years.

To track the warblers, Sjöberg, Hasselquist, and colleagues equipped them with small backpacks that can monitor their journeys. As expected, the migrants usually spent their nights flying and rested during the day. But most birds that hit a water or desert crossing near dawn kept going as the sun rose, climbing high into the sky. Some birds flew higher than 6,000 metres. That's not quite as high as the 8,000 metres geese

hit, but it's still a tall order, Sjöberg says, "We have never even imagined that songbirds regularly would fly this high."

Such altitudes can be stressful. At 6,000 metres, oxygen isn't enough and the temperature is below freezing. Somehow the birds are able to cope. "The ease at which they fly that high is unbelievable," Sjöberg says.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了部分小型鸣禽在迁徙时飞得比平常更高,从而穿越沙漠和海洋。

12. How high does the great reed warbler fly usually?

- A. Around 6,000 metres. B. About 2,000 metres.
C. 7,000 metres. D. 3,500 metres.

B 细节理解题。根据第一段中的 "These nighttime birds fly well into the day—and at heights of up to 6,000 metres, three times as high as they normally fly." 可知,大苇莺通常飞的高度大约是 2 000 米。故选 B。

13. What was Sjöberg and Hasselquist's purpose in carrying out the study?

- A. To distinguish large and small birds.
B. To track the migration paths of geese.
C. To learn about the migration of small songbirds.
D. To monitor the songbirds' breeding and behaviour.

C 细节理解题。根据第二段中的 "It's challenging to equip small songbirds with the tracking devices that make such research possible. To see whether she could change that, Sjöberg joined the lab of Lund University Dennis Hasselquist." 可知,Sjöberg 和 Hasselquist 进行这项研究的目的是了解小型鸣禽的迁徙。故选 C。

14. How does Sjöberg feel about warblers' high flight?

- A. Amazed. B. Doubtful. C. Stressed. D. Worried.

A 推理判断题。根据第三段中的 "Sjöberg says, 'We have never even imagined that songbirds regularly would fly this high.'" 可知,Sjöberg 对鸣禽飞那么高感到惊奇。故选 A。

15. Which is the best title for the text?

- A. Migration Biologists Sing High Praise for Tiny Birds
B. Different Species Cross Long Distances in Different Ways
C. Researchers Have Found a New Way to Study Bird Species
D. Tiny Songbirds Cross Deserts and Seas by Flying Higher Than Usual

D 标题归纳题。通读全文,尤其是第一段中的 "Migration (迁徙) ecologist Sissel Sjöberg has long wondered how tiny birds like the great reed warbler (大苇莺) can make it across long expanses of water or desert on their migrations." 和 "Now, a new study may have the answer: These nighttime birds fly well into the day—and at heights of up to 6,000 metres, three times as high as they normally fly." 可知,本文主要介绍了一项关于小型鸣禽是如何在迁徙过程中穿越广阔的水域或沙漠的研究。研究发现它们通过比平常飞得更高来穿越沙漠和海洋。由此可知,D 项适合作为本文的最佳标题。故选 D。

II. 七选五(共 5 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 12.5 分)

An impromptu (即兴的) speech is an unplanned speech delivered on the spot without preparation. 16. Of course, it will come unannounced, and you will not be prepared, but you still have to present the best version

of yourself. Here are some tips that will help you with your impromptu speech.

Learn to describe what is around you.

Every day we come across a lot of different situations and meet a lot of other people. It is easy to describe a person and your encounter with them. 17. Therefore, you need to learn the art of describing everyday issues and form opinions, and improve your vocabulary for descriptive situations.

Organise your thoughts.

18. Put the ones that are going first in your speech in order of importance. Keep your sessions engaging and short, and the audience should be able to identify with you.

19.

Now that you have learned the art of describing things around you, try to recall the most relevant experience. Think about a story and express how you feel at that very moment. Don't try to be more formal than usual and speak from your heart.

Turn it into Q&A.

When you lack impromptu speech ideas and do not know much about the topic, it is best to avoid long sessions. Instead, keep your speech brief and ask specific questions to make the sessions interactive. 20.

- A. Tell a story
- B. Try to be open and honest
- C. Your aim is to hold the attention of your audience
- D. But it may be hard to describe a city or a book you like
- E. Try to focus on the topic given to you and generate relevant ideas
- F. Specific occasions like dinner parties and job interviews call for an important speech
- G. Then, when you connect with your audience, it does not matter much what you are saying

答案:16~20 FDEBG

III. 完形填空(共 15 小题;每小题 1 分,满分 15 分)

For kids, washing dishes isn't a boring job. Standing at the sink with water dripping down onto their bare feet was a fun way to wash dishes for my children when they were 21. I would pull a chair up to the sink for them to stand in and then fill it with warm water and 22 little things they could wash to 23 themselves. While I did the rest of the 24, bubbles and giggles were everywhere.

However, as they got older, the 25 became a chore, and their 26 disappeared. My husband helped around the house a lot, but he hated to do the dishes, so this was one chore he 27 altogether. One day, I asked my son, who was about ten years old, to wash the dishes. 28, he resisted at the request. When I 29, he said it was a woman's job.

Later, I approached my husband about this 30 incident, and he said, "Well, I guess it's time for me to start helping with the dishes." That night after supper, he put on one of my aprons and started doing the dishes. My husband invited our son to 31 him. After that, our son had no problem taking his 32 with the other kids.

This was one of those moments that made a 33 to our son. Yes, men wash dishes; dad demonstrates his love and 34 with their mum. Helping and loving each other does not go 35 in the eyes of children who are learning to develop their relationships.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了儿子长大一些后不愿意洗碗,父亲以身作则,展示了父母之间的爱和伙伴关系。

21. A. free B. little C. naughty D. silly

B 根据下文的“as they got older”可知,此处表示孩子小的时候。故选 B。

22. A. provide B. buy C. invent D. store

A 根据下文的“little things they could wash”可知,此处表示给孩子提供小的东西去洗。故选 A。

23. A. relieve B. challenge C. evaluate D. entertain

D 根据下文的“giggles were everywhere”可知,此处表示孩子们自娱自乐。故选 D。

24. A. housework B. business C. experiment D. commitment

A 根据上文可知,孩子们在洗碗,所以此处表示作者做剩下的家务。故选 A。

25. A. trick B. situation C. game D. scene

C 根据上文的“bubbles and giggles were everywhere”和下文的“became a chore”可知,随着他们长大,洗碗这件事变成了家务,不再是一个游戏了。故选 C。

26. A. innocence B. enthusiasm C. genius D. potential

B 根据上文可知,洗碗这件事变成了家务,不再是一个游戏了,所以他们对洗碗的热情消失了。故选 B。

27. A. encouraged B. criticised C. avoided D. delayed

C 根据上文的“but he hated to do the dishes”可知,此处表示避免洗碗。故选 C。

28. A. Strangely B. Hopefully C. Amusingly D. Naturally

D 根据上文可知,孩子们对洗碗的热情消失了,所以他自然而然地拒绝了这个要求。故选 D。

29. A. insisted B. denied C. quit D. hesitated

A 根据下文的“he said it was a woman's job”可知,儿子拒绝洗碗,并说这是女人的工作,由此推测作者坚持让他洗碗。故选 A。

30. A. curious B. familiar C. unpleasant D. unusual

C 根据上文可知,儿子和作者发生了分歧,所以是不愉快的事情。故选 C。

31. A. push B. join C. observe D. guide

B 根据上文的“My husband invited our son to”可知,此处表示丈夫邀请儿子加入洗碗。故选 B。

32. A. turn B. time C. place D. chance

A 根据上文的“our son had no problem taking his”可知,此处表示儿子与其他孩子轮流洗碗,take one's turn 表示“轮流”。故选 A。

33. A. comeback B. statement C. promise D. mistake

B 根据下文的“Yes, men wash dishes; dad demonstrates his love”可知,此处表示这是对儿子做出“声明”的时刻之一。故选 B。

34. A. appointment B. competition C. journey D. partnership

D 根据上文的“men wash dishes; dad demonstrates his love and”可知,此处表示爸爸向妈妈展示了他的爱和伙伴关系。故选 D。

35. A. unchanged B. unfinished C. undecided D. unnoticed

D 根据下文的“children who are learning to develop their relationships”可知,此处表示在孩子眼中,互相帮助和关爱是不会被忽视的。故选 D。

IV. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分 15 分)

Minggucheng is well-known for its three Confucius sites, namely the Confucius Temple, the Confucius Forest, and the Kong Family Mansion, which **36.** were added (add) to UNESCO's World Cultural Heritage list in December 1994. **37.** Therefore/Thus, the area in Qufu is also called Three Confucius Sites Tourist Area.

The Confucius Temple in Qufu is the largest and most **38.** famous (fame) one in China for the renowned (著名的) thinker, educator and founder of Confucianism, **39.** who lived at the end of the Spring and Autumn Period. The temple was first built in the year of 478 BC, the second year after Confucius's death, and over the following **40.** centuries (century) it was rebuilt and expanded dozens of times. **41.** With an area of some 21.8 hectares, it is one of the top three ancient architectural complexes in China.

The Confucius Forest is **42.** where the tombs of Confucius and many of his descendants are found. Covering an area of more than 200 hectares and with some 100,000 graves **43.** discovered (discover) there, it is the largest, oldest and best-preserved family tomb and artificial garden. The Kong Family Mansion, **44.** located (locate) east of the Confucius Temple, is the place where descendants of Confucius live.

Minggucheng **45.** has become (become) one of the best places for visitors to experience Confucianism so far.

V. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

第一节 应用文写作(满分 15 分)

假定你是学生会主席李华,你校计划组织一次“美丽乡村行”活动,请写一则英文通知,内容如下:

1. 活动时间和目的;
2. 活动内容:欣赏自然美景、体验干农活、品尝当地美食等;
3. 报名截止日期:周五下午六点。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

参考词汇:美丽乡村行 A Tour of the Beautiful Countryside

【参考范文】

Notice

Our school proposes to organise an activity called “A Tour of the Beautiful Countryside” to help students know the great changes taking place in China's countryside.

We plan to set off at 7 am this Sunday. We can take photos while enjoying the natural scenery of the villages. Besides, we can do some simple farm work with the help of the locals and taste the delicious local food there. Only when we're that close to nature can we experience its real beauty!

Applicants who are interested can sign up here and the deadline is 6 pm this Friday.

The Students' Union

第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

One June evening, Sylvia, 8, was driving her cow home through the woods. Suddenly a clear whistle broke the peace. Before she could hide into the bushes, she was stopped by a young man, who carried a gun

over his shoulder. “Hello, little girl. I am hunting for some birds but I have lost my way,” he said kindly. “Can I spend the night in your house?” Sylvia hesitated for a while and agreed to take him home at last.

Sylvia’s grandma was really kind. She cooked for the young man and chatted with him. “Sylvia is very shy but she is popular with birds,” Grandma said proudly. “Birds come and feed right out of her hands, and all sorts of birds.”

“So Sylvia knows all about birds?” he asked excitedly. “I am making a collection of birds myself.”

“Do you cage them up?” asked Grandma.

“Oh no, they’re stuffed (制作标本) and preserved,” said the young man. “I came here for a white heron (鹭), a tall white bird with long thin legs. It would have a nest perhaps in the top of a high tree.” He looked at Sylvia, hoping for some answers. Sylvia’s heart gave a wild beat. She knew the bird, but she said nothing.

“I would offer ten dollars to any helper,” the man added desperately. Ten dollars was really a big sum. Sylvia agreed with a nod.

The next day they started early, the young man going first and Sylvia following. He proved to be really kind and told her many things about birds. She could not understand why he killed the very birds he seemed to like so much. In the evening, they returned, empty-handed.

Lying in bed, Sylvia suddenly thought of a great pine-tree, which stood at the farther edge of the woods and towered far above the others. “If I climb it at daybreak, maybe I could easily discover from where the white heron flew, and mark the place, and find the hidden nest,” she thought. What a big secret!

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

【参考范文】

Sylvia stole out of the house before daybreak. She managed to reach the tall tree. Then she began mounting to the top of it with her bare feet and hands. Her coat got torn and dusty. When she ended up on the top of the pine tree, she felt dizzy and fearful, but suddenly she spotted a white heron resting on a nest close to the tall tree. Sylvia nearly burst into cries. She knew she would soon get rich. However, thinking that the beautiful bird would soon be stuffed, she hesitated on her way back home.

Seeing Sylvia back in dust, Grandma and the young man were surprised. “Where have you gone?” The old grandmother scolded her in an annoyed voice. And the young man looked straight in her eyes eagerly, waiting for an answer. Yet, she bit her lip tightly. Though knowing he would keep his promise, she still kept silent. On the way back, she had made up her mind not to let out any secret about the white heron. However much she was paid, nothing was more valuable than the life in nature.